Preface

The Handbook of Laboratory Animal Science, Second Edition: Animal Models, Volume II is dedicated to the use of laboratory animals as models for humans. This book explains in great detail the comparative considerations underlying the choice of animal species and strains in different research disciplines. Volume II consists of chapters written by experts in their respective fields and covers a range of scientific areas in which animals play a crucial role as models for humans. Unlike many other publications, this book is not exclusively restricted to laboratory animal models for the study of human diseases. It takes a wider approach, which is in accordance with modern interpretation of the animal model concept.

Most of our knowledge of human biology is derived from animal studies, and fortunately, the conservative nature of animal evolution often renders reliable extrapolation of findings between species the rule rather than the exception. However, we found that there is a great need for a handbook on the choice of animal species and strains, and on the development and application of models in different areas of biomedical research. The book consequently focuses on the relevant comparative aspects in the many different contexts in which animals are used as well as on the spontaneous genetic mutants and the genetically modified animal models available within different research areas.

The authors have strived to include the most recent information available as well as generally recognized facts to make the book relevant, practical, and attractive to other specialists. Reporting from the cutting edge of a scientific discipline involves including some, but obviously not all, of the most recently reported findings. This selection will invariably make some scientists feel that their results have been neglected, and for this we apologize. We welcome comments from readers and colleagues that may assist us in keeping the text up-to-date and in correcting errors.

Both Volumes I and II of the Handbook of Laboratory Animal Science are, in many ways, very technical books. We hope that our readers will find them useful, whether they be postgraduate students who are not familiar with laboratory animals and their use as research tools, veterinarians who specialize in laboratory animal science and welfare, or experienced scientists who are looking for an overview and reference text of the large and heterogeneous field that is laboratory animal science.

Jann Hau
Uppsala University
Uppsala, Sweden

Gerald Van Hoosier
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington
Jann Hau is Professor of Comparative Medicine at the University of Uppsala in Sweden. Dr. Hau graduated in experimental biology from University of Odense in Denmark after medical and biology studies in 1977, and specialized in laboratory animal science. Following research fellowships at University of Odense, he did his doctorate (Dr. Med.) at this university. In 1983, he joined the Department of Pathology at The Royal Veterinary and Agricultural University (RVAU) in Copenhagen as Associate Professor and Head of the Laboratory Animal Science Unit. He was later Head of the Department of Pathology and Dean of the Faculty of Animal Husbandry and Veterinary Science at the RVAU.

In 1991, he moved to the Royal Veterinary College (RVC) in London as Professor in the London University Chair in Laboratory Animal Science and Welfare. At the RVC, he was responsible for the undergraduate and postgraduate teaching in laboratory animal science and welfare, which included a specialist Master of Science course in Laboratory Animal Science that attracted a number of postgraduate students from many parts of the world.

In 1996, Dr. Hau was appointed Professor in Comparative Medicine in Uppsala and Head of a new Department of Comparative Medicine. Following amalgamations of departments at the medical faculty, Comparative Medicine is presently integrated with the Department of Physiology, of which Dr. Hau is presently Head. In Uppsala, he has established a number of courses for undergraduate and postgraduate students, including specialist education programs.

Dr. Hau has organized several international meetings and courses on laboratory animal science. He is the editor-in-chief of the Scandinavian Journal of Laboratory Animal Science and editor of the laboratory animals’ section of the UFAW journal Animal Welfare. He is a member of a number of laboratory animal science organizations and former president of the Scandinavian Society of Laboratory Animal Science and the Federation of European Laboratory Animal Science Associations.

Dr. Hau has supervised many postgraduate Master’s and Ph.D. students and published several hundred scientific papers and chapters in books. Together with Dr. P. Svendsen, he wrote the first Danish textbook on laboratory animals and animal experiments published in 1981, 1985, and 1989, and they co-edited the first edition of the CRC Handbook of Laboratory Animal Science, published in 1994.

Dr. Hau’s current research interests include development of refined laboratory animal models for studies of biological mechanisms in reproductive biology and infections as well as development of methods to assess stress and welfare in animals. His research activities also include projects focused on ways to replace, reduce, and refine the use of animals in antibody production.

Gerald L. Van Hoosier, Jr., is Professor of Comparative Medicine in the School of Medicine at the University of Washington in Seattle, Washington. Dr. Van Hoosier graduated from the College of Veterinary Medicine at Texas A&M University at College Station, Texas, in 1957 and subsequently obtained postdoctoral training in virology and epidemiology at Berkeley, California, and in pathology at Baylor College of Medicine in Houston, Texas. From 1957 to 1962, he served as a Commissioned Officer in the U.S. Public Health Service assigned to the biologics program at the National Institutes of Health in Bethesda, Maryland, where he focused on the development and safety evaluation of poliomyelitis and measles vaccines. Following 5 years in the Public Health Service, Dr. Van Hoosier joined the faculty of the Division of Experimental Biology at Baylor College of Medicine in Houston, Texas, and did research on the role of viruses in the etiology of cancer. In 1969, he moved to Pullman, Washington, where he was a faculty member in the Department of Veterinary Pathology in the School of Veterinary Medicine and Director of Laboratory Animal Resources at Washington State University. He introduced a course on laboratory animals into the third year of the veterinary school curriculum, taught a graduate course on the pathology of laboratory animals, and began the development of a series of audio tutorials in
collaboration with the American College of Laboratory Animal Medicine. In 1975, Dr. Van Hoosier was invited to develop an experimental animal program at the University of Washington. He obtained a training grant for veterinarians from the National Institutes of Health and established the Department of Comparative Medicine, which offers a Master’s degree. He served as the department chairman and Attending Veterinarian until 1995.

After becoming a Diplomate of the American College of Laboratory Animal Medicine in 1968, he served as President in 1977–1978. Other professional activities have included serving as Chairman of the Board of Trustees of the American Association for Accreditation of Laboratory Animal Care in 1981–1982, President of the American Association of Laboratory Animal Science in 1992, and a member of the Governing Board of the International Council for Laboratory Animal Science from 1995 to 1999. In addition to approximately 100 scientific papers, Dr. Van Hoosier was a co-editor of *Laboratory Hamsters*, one of a series of texts by the American College of Laboratory Animal Medicine and served as editor of *Laboratory Animal Science* from 1995 to 1999. He is currently a member of the Editorial Council of the *Baltic Journal of Laboratory Animal Science* and *Animales de Experimentacion*.

He is the recipient of the Griffin Award from the American Association of Laboratory Animal Science and a Distinguished Alumni Award from the College of Veterinary Medicine at Texas A&M University.
Contributors

Abbas Ardehali
Division of Cardiothoracic Surgery
UCLA Medical Center
School of Medicine
Los Angeles, California

Karsten Buschard
Bartholin Institute
Copenhagen, Denmark

Anthony M. Carter
Department of Physiology and Pharmacology
University of Southern Denmark
Odense, Denmark

Christi M. Cavaliere
Section of Plastic Surgery
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, Michigan

Ryan P. Frank
Department of Orthopedic Surgery
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, Michigan

Cynthia E. Glover
Department of Comparative Medicine
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington

Kurt D. Hankenson
Departments of Orthopedic Surgery and the Unit for Laboratory Animal Medicine
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, Michigan

Jann Hau
University of Uppsala
Uppsala, Sweden

Henrik Elvang Jensen
Laboratory of Veterinary Pathology
Royal Veterinary and Agricultural University
Frederiksberg, Denmark

Jörgen Jönsson
Institute of Odontology
Huddinge University Hospital
Karolinska Institute
Stockholm, Sweden

Björn Klinge
Institute of Odontology
Huddinge University Hospital
Karolinska Institute
Stockholm, Sweden

Otto Meyer
Danish Veterinary and Food Administration
Soborg, Denmark

Jesper Mogensen
Cognitive Neuroscience
Department of Psychology
University of Copenhagen
Copenhagen, Denmark

Robert Murison
Department of Biological and Medical Psychology
University of Bergen
Bergen, Norway

Jørgen Rygaard
Bartholin Institute
Copenhagen, Denmark

Ove Svendsen
Department of Pharmacology and Pathobiology
Royal Veterinary and Agricultural University
Frederiksberg, Denmark

Rikke Thon
Taconic M & B
Lille Skensved, Denmark

Gerald L. Van Hoosier, Jr.
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington

David Whiting
Division of Cardiothoracic Surgery
UCLA Medical Center
School of Medicine
Los Angeles, California
Table of Contents

Chapter 1
Animal Models...................................................................................................................................1
Jann Hau

Chapter 2
Animal Models in Pharmacology and Toxicology........................................................................11
Otto Meyer and Ove Svendsen

Chapter 3
Animal Models in Fetal Growth and Development........................................................................41
Anthony M. Carter

Chapter 4
Animal Models of Nephrological Disorders...................................................................................55
Cynthia E. Glover

Chapter 5
Animal Models for Xenotransplantation.........................................................................................81
David Whiting and Abbas Ardehali

Chapter 6
Animal Models in Neuroscience .....................................................................................................95
Jesper Mogensen

Chapter 7
Animal Models for Psychological Disorders................................................................................111
Robert Murison

Chapter 8
Animal Models in Mycology.........................................................................................................125
Henrik Elvang Jensen

Chapter 9
Diabetic Animal Models.................................................................................................................153
Karsten Buschard and Rikke Thon

Chapter 10
Animal Models of Skeletal Disease ..............................................................................................183
Kurt D. Hankenson, Christi M. Cavaliere, and Ryan P. Frank

Chapter 11
Animal Models in Cancer Research..............................................................................................225
Jørgen Rygaard

Chapter 12
Animal Models in Oral Health Sciences........................................................................................237
Björn Klinge and Jørgen Jönsson

Index ..............................................................................................................................................263
CHAPTER 1

Animal Models

Jann Hau

CONTENTS

Introduction ........................................................................................................................................1
The Concept of Animal Models .........................................................................................................2
Classification of Animal Models ....................................................................................................2
Classification of Disease Models ...................................................................................................3
Induced (Experimental) Disease Models .........................................................................................3
Spontaneous Animal Disease Models ............................................................................................4
Transgenic Disease Models ............................................................................................................4
Negative Animal Models ...............................................................................................................5
Orphan Animal Models ..................................................................................................................5
Extrapolation from Animals to Humans ...........................................................................................5
Model Body Size and Scaling .........................................................................................................6
Conclusion ........................................................................................................................................7
References .........................................................................................................................................8

INTRODUCTION

Most of our basic knowledge of human biochemistry, physiology, endocrinology, and pharma-
cology has been derived from initial studies of mechanisms in animal models. Throughout history,
scientists have performed experiments on animals with the aim of obtaining knowledge of animal
and human biological structure and function (see, e.g., Held; Loew). Often such studies have not
been and are not possible in the human. This may be due to ethical or religious considerations, but
often practical, economic, and scientific reasons make initial studies in animals the best solution
to studies of a biological phenomenon.

Laboratory animal science may be defined as the study of the scientific, ethical, and legal use
of animals in biomedical research, that is, a multidisciplinary field encompassing biological and
pathobiological specialties for the optimal scientific use of animals as models for humans or other
species.

Basic laboratory animal science is concerned with the quality of animals as sentient tools in
biomedical research. It encompasses comparative biology of laboratory animals, technical aspects
of breeding, housing and husbandry, anesthesia, euthanasia, and experimental techniques. Laboratory
animal medicine is a veterinary specialty, focusing on the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of diseases in animals used as subjects in biomedical activities. High-quality animals and animal care ensure the highest possible health and welfare status of the animals and are prerequisites for good science and public acceptance of the use of animals in research.

Volume I of this handbook is an introduction to basic laboratory animal science, whereas the present volume focuses on applied laboratory animal science, which is the use of animals as models for humans — or in some instances as models for other species.

THE CONCEPT OF ANIMAL MODELS

A model is an object of imitation, something that accurately resembles something else, a person or thing that is the likeness or image of another. 

An animal model is thus an animated object of imitation in the image of humans (or other species), used to investigate biological or pathobiological phenomena.

A laboratory animal model describes a biological phenomenon that the species has in common with the target species. A more accurate definition has been given by Held on the basis of Wessler’s original definition: “a living organism in which normative biology or behavior can be studied, or in which a spontaneous or induced pathological process can be investigated, and in which the phenomenon in one or more respects resembles the same phenomenon in humans or other species of animal.” What is generally understood by the term “animal model” is modeling of humans. It is not the image of the used animal that is the focus of research but the analogy of the physiological behavior of this animal to our own (or another) species. It would thus be more correct to refer to animals as “human models” in this context. Laboratory animal science, comparative medicine, and animal experiments are indeed much more about humans than about any other animal species.

The significance and validity with respect to usefulness in terms of “extrapolatability” of results generated in an animal model depend on the selection of a suitable animal model. A good knowledge of comparative anatomy and physiology is an obvious advantage when developing an animal model. Animal models may be found throughout the animal kingdom, and knowledge about human physiology has been achieved in species far removed from the human in terms of evolutionary development. A good example is the importance of the fruit fly for the original studies of basic genetics. Animal models are used in virtually every field of biomedical research, as reflected in the chapters of this book.

CLASSIFICATION OF ANIMAL MODELS

A plethora of animal models has been used and is being used and developed for studies of biological structure and function in the human. The models may be exploratory, aiming to understand a biological mechanism, whether this is a mechanism operative in fundamental normal biology or a mechanism associated with an abnormal biological function. Models may also be developed and applied as so-called explanatory models, aiming to understand a more or less complex biological problem. Explanatory models need not necessarily be reliant on the use of animals but may also be physical or mathematical model systems developed to unravel complex mechanisms. A third important group of animal models is employed as predictive models. These models are used with the aim of discovering and quantifying the impact of a treatment, whether this is to cure a disease or to assess toxicity of a chemical compound. The anatomy or morphology of the model structure of relevance to the studies may be of importance in all three of these model systems. The extent of resemblance of the biological structure in the animal with the corresponding structure in humans
has been termed fidelity. A high-fidelity model with close resemblance to the human case may seem an obvious advantage when developing certain models. What is often more important, however, is the discriminating ability of the models, in particular the predictive models. When using models, for instance to assess the carcinogenicity of a substance, it is of the essence that at least one of the model species chosen responds in a manner that is predictive of the human response to this substance. Thus the similarity between humans and model species with respect to relevant biological mechanism is often more important than the fidelity of the model. Often the two go hand in hand, and high-fidelity models offer the best opportunity to study a particular biological function.

An animal model may be considered homologous if the symptoms shown by the animal and the course of the condition are identical to those of humans. Models fulfilling these requirements are relatively few, but an example is well-defined lesion syndromes in, for instance, neuroscience. An animal model is considered isomorphic if the animal symptoms are similar but the cause of the symptoms differs between human and model. However, most models are neither homologous nor isomorphic but may rather be termed “partial.” These models do not mimic the entire human disease but may be used to study certain aspects or treatments of the human disease.

CLASSIFICATION OF DISEASE MODELS

The majority of laboratory animal models are developed and used to study the cause, nature, and cure of human disorders. They may conveniently be categorized in one of the following five groups, of which the three first are the most important, as given in numerical order:

1. Induced (experimental) disease models
2. Spontaneous (genetic) disease models
3. Transgenic disease models
4. Negative disease models
5. Orphan disease models

Induced (Experimental) Disease Models

As the name implies, induced models are healthy animals in which the condition to be investigated is experimentally induced, for instance, the induction of diabetes mellitus with encephalomyocarditis virus, allergy against cow’s milk through immunization with minute doses of protein, or partial hepatectomy to study liver regeneration. The induced-model group is the only category that theoretically allows a free choice of species. Although one might be tempted to presume that extrapolation from an animal species to the human is the better the closer this species resembles humans (high fidelity), phylogenetic closeness, as fulfilled by primate models, is not a guarantee for validity of extrapolation, as the unsuccessful chimpanzee models in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) research have demonstrated. It is just as decisive that the pathology and outcome of an induced disease or disorder in the model species resembles the respective lesions of the target species. Feline immunodeficiency virus infection in cats may therefore for many studies be a better model for human AIDS than is human immunodeficiency virus infection in simians. Although mice and rats have many biological characteristics in common, they do not necessarily serve equally well as models of human disease. For example, schistosomiasis (mansonii) infection may be studied in experimentally infected mice but not in rats, whose immune system is able to fight the infection effectively.

Most induced models are partial or isomorphic because the etiology of a disease experimentally induced in an animal is often different from that of the corresponding disease in the human. Few induced models completely mimic the etiology, course, and pathology of the target disease in the human.
Spontaneous Animal Disease Models

These models of human disease use naturally occurring genetic variants (mutants). Many hundreds of strains and stocks with inherited disorders modeling similar conditions in humans have been characterized and conserved (see, e.g., http://www.jax.org). A famous example of a spontaneous mutant model is the nude mouse, which was a turning point in the study of heterotransplanted tumors and, for instance, enabled the first description of natural killer cells. Other famous spontaneous models include Snell’s dwarf mice, without a functional pituitary, and the curly-tail mouse, in which fetuses develop a whole range of neural-tube defects. Many of the mutants are available in inbred strains, with corresponding coisogenic or congenic strains. This is very useful because the influence of just one affected gene or locus may then be studied against a reference strain with similar genetic background as the mutant (see also Volume I, Chapter 9).

An extensive literature is available on spontaneous models, and the majority of these are mice and rat models, although a wide range of mutants in many different species has been described. A good example of the amount of information available is the publication of Migaki, which references >200 diseases in animals exclusively caused by inborn errors of metabolism.

The spontaneous models are often isomorphic, displaying phenotypic similarity between the disease in the animal and the corresponding disease in the human — this is called face validity; for instance, type I diabetes in humans and insulin-requiring diabetes in the BB rat. This phenotypic similarity often extends to similar reactions to treatment in the model animal and the human patient, and spontaneous models have been important in the development of treatment regimens for human diseases.

However, if the object of a project is to study the genetic causes and etiology of a particular disease, then comparable genomic segments involved in the etiology of the disorder — construct validity — is normally a requirement. It should be remembered, however, that an impaired gene or sequence of genes very often results in activation of other genes and mobilization of compensating metabolic processes. These compensatory mechanisms may of course differ between humans and the animal model species.

Transgenic Disease Models

The rapid developments in genetic engineering and embryo manipulation technology during the past decade have made transgenic disease models perhaps the most important category of animal disease models. A multitude of animal models for important diseases have been developed since this technology became available, and the number of models seems to be increasing quickly. Mice are by far the most important animals for transgenic research purposes, but farm animals and fish are also receiving considerable interest.

Many physiological functions are polygenic and controlled by more than one gene, and it will require considerable research activities to identify the contribution of multiple genes to normal as well as abnormal biological mechanisms. The insertion of DNA into the genome of animals or the deletion of specific genes gives rise to sometimes unpredictable outcomes in terms of scientific results as well as in terms of animal well-being in the first generations of animals produced. Thereafter, transgenic lines can be selected and bred or cloned to avoid or select for a specific genotype. It is not an accurate science, although the methodology is constantly improving with the aim of eliminating unwanted effects. The embryo manipulation procedures themselves do not appear to affect the welfare of offspring in the mouse, and the large-offspring syndrome observed in farm animals has so far not been reported in rodents (see Volume I, Chapter 18 for welfare aspects associated with transgenic animals).

Mutations induced by the use of mutagens such as ethyl-nitroso-urea represent another approach to the generation of new mutants, which may serve as models of human disorders. In many aspects, these mutants may be similar to spontaneous mutants and to the ones generated by transgenic
embryo manipulation. The maintenance of a line raises similar issues for chemically induced genetic mutants as for animals that have been genetically modified through embryo manipulation.

The recent completion of the maps of the genomes of mouse and human will increase the research activities in genomics and proteomics; and using high-density microarray DNA chip technology in human patients as well as in animals, it will be possible to investigate which genes are switched on or off in different diseases.\(^{21}\)

With both the human and the mouse genome maps available, this new technology is expected to rapidly increase knowledge on the genetic background and etiology of important diseases. This paves the way for a range of new homologous animal models with homology between animal and human (construct validity) for genotype as well as for phenotype. This development may result in a change in animal use from models for the identification of causative genes to models for studying the effects of changes in genetic pathways, gene–gene interactions and gene–environment interactions.\(^{22}\)

**Negative Animal Models**

 _Negative model _is the term used for species, strains, or breeds in which a certain disease does not develop, for instance, gonococcal infection in rabbits after an experimental treatment that induces the disease in other animals. Models of infectious diseases are often restricted to a limited number of susceptible species, and the remaining unresponsive species may be regarded as negative models for this particular human pathogenic organism. Negative models thus include animals that demonstrate a lack of reactivity to a particular stimulus. Their main application is in studies on the mechanism of resistance that seek to gain insight into its physiological basis.

**Orphan Animal Models**

 _Orphan model disease _is the term that has been used to describe a functional disorder that occurs naturally in a non-human species but has not yet been described in humans and that is recognized when a similar human disease is later identified. Examples include Marek’s disease, Papillomatosis, bovine spongiform encephalopathy, Visna virus in sheep, and feline leukemia virus. When humans are discovered to suffer from a disease similar to one that has already been described in animals, the literature already generated in veterinary medicine may be very useful.

**EXTRAPOLATION FROM ANIMALS TO HUMANS**

When experimental results have been generated in an animal model, they have to be validated with respect to their applicability to the target species, which normally is the human. The term “extrapolation” is often used to describe how data obtained from animal studies reliably can be used to apply to the human. However, extrapolation is generally not performed in its mathematical sense, in which data fit a certain function that may be described graphically and the graph extends beyond the highest or lowest sets of data to describe a situation outside the window of observation. Establishing toxicity data in animals and using these to determine safe levels of exposure for people is perhaps what comes closest to mathematical extrapolation in animal studies. However, most studies of animal structure and function are never extrapolated to be applicable for describing the corresponding features in the human; this is not relevant. What laboratory animal experimentation is about is very similar to other types of experiments. Scientists aim to obtain answers to specific questions. Hypotheses are tested, and the answers are obtained, analyzed, and published. As an example of this, one might question the possible health hazards of a new synthetic steroid and ask a number of relevant questions to be answered in animal studies before deciding on the substance’s potential usefulness as a human hormonal contraceptive. For instance, does it exist in the same
form in humans and animals? How does it affect the estrus cycle in rodents? How does it affect endogenous hormone levels in rodents and other species? How soon after withdrawal do the animals revert to normal cyclicity? Does it interfere with pregnancy in rodents and primates? Does it affect fetal development in rodents and primates? Is the frequency of fetal malformations in mice affected? Are puberty, the ovarian cycle, and pregnancy in rodent and dog offspring of mothers treated with the substance affected? And so on. Analyzing the data from experiments of this nature would give information on the potential of the new synthetic steroid as a hormonal contraceptive in the human.

A recent survey by a large multinational pharmaceutical company analyzed data compiled from 150 compounds for the concordance between adverse findings in human clinical data and data that had been generated in the preclinical tests in animals. The concordance rate was found to be 71% for rodent and non-rodent species, with non-rodents alone being predictive for 63% of human toxicity (HT), and rodents alone, for 43%. High concordance rates were found, such as for cardiovascular HTs (80%), hematological HTs (91%), and gastrointestinal HTs (85%). Lower concordance rates were observed, such as for the neurological group, because it is difficult to identify symptoms like headache and dizziness in the animals studied. The only gastrointestinal HT that did not correlate with animal studies was, not surprisingly, nausea. One of the conclusions reached in this study was that the choice of species used might be subject to more thoughtful consideration. By tradition, studies are often carried out using rats and dogs, without an open-minded consideration of whether alternative species might be more appropriate for testing a specific compound.

Although the predictive value of animal studies may seem high if they are conducted thoroughly and have included several species, uncritical reliance on the results of animal tests can be dangerously misleading and has resulted in damages to human health in several cases, including those of some drugs developed by large pharmaceutical companies. What is noxious or ineffective in non-human species can be innoxious or effective in humans and vice versa; for instance, penicillin is fatal for guinea pigs but generally well tolerated by humans; and aspirin is teratogenic in cats, dogs, guinea pigs, rats, mice, and monkeys but obviously not in pregnant women, despite frequent consumption.

Thalidomide, which crippled 10,000 children, does not cause birth defects in rats but does so in primates. A close phylogenetical relationship or anatomical similarity is not a guarantee of identical biochemical mechanisms and parallel physiological response, although such is the case in many instances.

The validity of extrapolation may be further complicated by the question, “To which humans?” As desirable as it often is to obtain results from a genetically defined and uniform animal model, the humans to whom the results are extrapolated are genetically highly variable, with cultural, dietary, and environmental differences. This may be of minor importance for many disease models but can become significant for pharmacological and toxicological models.

It is not possible to give reliable general rules for the validity of extrapolation from one species to another. This has to be assessed individually for each experiment and can often only be verified after first trials in the target species. An extensive and useful overview on the problem of predictive anthropomorphization, especially in the field of toxicology research, is Principles of Animal Extrapolation by Calabrese. The rationale behind extrapolating results to other species is based on the extensive homology and evolutionary similarity between morphological structures and physiological processes among different animal species and between animals and humans.
expressed as percentage of body weight. Take the heart for instance, which often constitutes 5 or 6 g per kilogram of body weight; or blood, which is often approximately 7% of total body weight. It is well known that the metabolic rate of small animals is much higher than that of large animals. It has also been demonstrated that capillary density in animals smaller than rabbits increases dramatically with decreasing body weight. However, considering that most animals are similar in having heart weights just above 0.5% of their body weight and a blood volume corresponding to 7% of the body weight, it becomes obvious that to supply the tissues of small animals with sufficient oxygen for their high metabolic rate, it is not sufficient to increase the stroke volume. The stroke volume is limited by the size of the heart, and heart frequency is the only parameter to increase, which results in heart rates well over 500 per minute in the smallest mammals. Other physiological variables, like respiration and food intake, are similarly affected by the high metabolic rate of small mammals.

This means that scaling must be an object for some consideration when one calculates dosages of drugs and other compounds administered to animals in experiments. If the object is to achieve equal concentrations of a substance in the body fluids of animals of different body size, then the doses should be calculated in simple proportion to the animals’ body weights. If the object is to achieve a given concentration in a particular organ over a certain time period, the calculation of dosage becomes more complicated, and other factors, including the physicochemical properties of the drug, become important. Drugs and toxins exert their effect on an organism not per se but because of the way that they are metabolized, the way that they and their metabolites are distributed and bound in the body tissues, and how and when they are finally excreted.

However, metabolism or detoxification and excretion of a drug are not directly correlated with body size but, more accurately, to metabolic rate of the animal (see Schmidt-Nielsen for more details). Kleiber in 1932 was the first to demonstrate that in a log–log plot of mammalian body weight to metabolism, the graph forms a straight line with a slope of 0.75.

The metabolic rate of an animal as expressed by oxygen consumption per gram body weight per hour is related to body weight in the following manner:

\[ M = 3.8 \times BW^{-0.25} \]

where \( M \) is the metabolic rate (oxygen consumption in milliliters per gram of body weight per hour) and \( BW \) is body weight in grams. This equation may be used to calculate dosages for animals of different body weights if the dose for one animal (or human) is known:

\[ \frac{Dose_1}{Dose_2} = \frac{BW_1^{-0.25}}{BW_2^{-0.25}} \]

\[ Dose_1 = Dose_2 \times \frac{BW_1^{-0.25}}{BW_2^{-0.25}} \]

The equations should be considered as assistance for calculating dosages, but caution should be exerted with respect to too broad a generalization of their use, and the 0.50 power of body weight should be employed when dealing with animals with body weights of <100 g. Some species react with particular sensitivity toward certain drugs, and marked variations in the reaction of animals within a species occur with respect to strain, pigmentation, nutritional state, time of day, stress level, type of bedding, ambient temperature, and so on.

**CONCLUSION**

The choice or selection of animal model depends on a number of factors relating to the hypothesis to be tested but also on more practical aspects associated with the project and with project staff and experimental facilities. The usefulness of a laboratory animal model should be
judged on how well it answers the specific questions it is being used to answer, rather than on how well it mimics the human disease.\textsuperscript{34}

Often, a number of different models may advantageously be used to scrutinize a biological phenomenon; and for major human diseases, like diabetes, a whole range of well-described induced models is available, as are spontaneous models in both mouse and rat strains.

Most of the regulating authorities require two species in toxicology screening, one of which has to be non-rodent. This does not imply that excessive numbers of animals will be used, because an uncritical use of one-species models may mean that experimental data retrospectively turn out to be invalid for extrapolation, representing a waste of animals. The appropriateness of any laboratory animal model will eventually be judged by its capacity to explain and predict the observed effects in the target species.\textsuperscript{35}

The free choice of species when developing animal models is more or less restricted to the induced models making use of clinically healthy animals, in which a condition deviating from normality is experimentally induced. Although all laboratory animal species are in principle available for model development, it has been a clear trend during the past 30 years that the most popular species, the house mouse and the Norwegian rat, are increasing in popularity at the expense of farm animal species and pet species.\textsuperscript{36} The completion of the map of the mouse genome and the dominating position of mice in transgenic research seem to indicate that the dominance of the mouse as the most popular model for humans will increase further in the future.

REFERENCES

CHAPTER 2

Animal Models in Pharmacology and Toxicology

Otto Meyer and Ove Svendsen

CONTENTS

Introduction ......................................................................................................................................12
Animal Models in Pharmacology ..................................................................................................12
    Animal Models in Pharmacodynamic Primary Effect...........................................................13
    Drugs to Treat Infections .......................................................................................................13
    Drugs to Treat Mental Disorders .........................................................................................13
    Drugs to Treat Neurodegenerative Diseases .........................................................................15
    Drugs to Treat Endocrine Diseases .....................................................................................15
    Drugs to Treat Neurogenic Inflammation (Rheumatoid Arthritis) ......................................16
    Drugs to Treat Pain ..............................................................................................................16

Animal Models in Pharmacodynamic Secondary Effect ..........................................................16
Animal Models in Pharmacokinetics ............................................................................................17
Animal Models in Toxicology .....................................................................................................17
Extrapolation ................................................................................................................................18
Ethical Considerations ................................................................................................................19
Choice of Animal Species ..........................................................................................................20
Physiology and Experimental Conditions, Including Microbiological Status and Diet and Feeding Conditions ..................................................................................................................21
Toxicity Tests ................................................................................................................................22
    Tests for Acute Toxicity .........................................................................................................22
    Eye Irritation ..........................................................................................................................24
    Skin Irritation ........................................................................................................................24
    Skin Sensitization ..................................................................................................................25
    Repeated Dose Toxicity: 28 Days, 90 Days (Subchronic), and 1 Year (Chronic) ....................25
    Carcinogenicity Studies .......................................................................................................27
    Reproductive Toxicity Tests ...................................................................................................28
    One-, Two-, and Multigeneration Studies ..............................................................................29
    Developmental Neurotoxicity Studies ..................................................................................32
    Screening Tests for Reproductive and Developmental Toxicity ............................................33
    Neurotoxicity Study ..............................................................................................................34
    Genetic Toxicology Testing .....................................................................................................34
    Future Trends in the Use of Laboratory Animals in Regulatory Toxicology .........................35
INTRODUCTION

Current knowledge in the disciplines of pharmacology and toxicology has been achieved largely by using experimental animals. In recent years, new knowledge in pharmacology has accumulated from strong interfaces between molecular pharmacology, receptor pharmacology, and in vivo pharmacology, including experimental studies in laboratory animals and humans. A similar strong interface can be seen between in vitro and in vivo toxicology. Over the years, the animal models in pharmacology and toxicology have become increasingly sophisticated because of continuous changes in endpoints. Many relatively simple animal models that were very important in the past have become redundant and have been replaced by non-animal methodologies with the same or even more specific endpoint.

With the present laboratory technologies, many issues in pharmacology and toxicology can be studied by in vitro methods. However, in both disciplines, an understanding of the complex interaction in different physiological or pathophysiological systems requires studies in intact organisms, allowing all relevant events to take place.

The attitude toward animal experimentation in pharmacology and toxicology has changed considerably during recent decades and is under strong public observation. In particular, within the past 10 years, there has been an ever-increasing focus on the 3Rs (reduction, refinement, and replacement) and on humane endpoints in animal experimentation. This is particularly important in the disciplines of pharmacology and toxicology, in which much experimentation in laboratory animals takes place in conscious animals. However, in recent years, focus on humane endpoints and the developments in usage of analgesics and anesthetics have, to a great extent, reduced the burden on the animals.

In contrast to many other disciplines that use laboratory animals, the developments in animal models in pharmacology and toxicology are derived from universities, research institutes, and pharmaceutical and other chemical industries. The development of new pharmaceuticals relies almost exclusively on animal models in those two disciplines. Thus, the regulatory acceptance of any new chemical product, irrespective of its usage, is based on toxicological studies in laboratory animals.

This chapter reviews animal models in pharmacology and toxicology. Animal models in pharmacology are divided into animal models in pharmacodynamics (primary and secondary effects) and pharmacokinetics. Animal models in toxicology mainly include those used for regulatory purposes.

ANIMAL MODELS IN PHARMACOLOGY

Pharmacology is the discipline covering the broad knowledge of how drugs interact with body constituents to produce therapeutic effect, as well as the events of the drug in the body and its ultimate elimination. Pharmacology covers the spectrum from molecular-level effects to the action of the drug on the whole body and relies heavily on knowledge of biochemistry, physiology, pathophysiology, molecular biology, and organic chemistry. The elucidation of molecular mechanisms of drug action, the development of new drugs, and the formulation of clinical guidelines for safe and effective use of drugs in therapy or prevention of disease states and in relief of symptoms are all part of pharmacology. Animal models have for decades been an integral part of this elucidation.
As a consequence of developments in biology and developments in techniques, the majority of animal models in pharmacology today are rather sophisticated in order to describe the endpoints of interest for the scientist. In many models, complicated behaviors have to be learned. In others, combined treatments with other drugs have to take place to describe the endpoint and interpret the results obtained. In addition, different complicated instrumentation of the animals has to take place to apply substances or collect body fluids for analysis. An example is triple microdialysis, with one microdialysis probe in one structure of the brain for determination of monoamine and metabolite levels, another microdialysis probe in the contralateral part of the brain for determination of drug and drug metabolite concentrations in exactly the same structure, and a third microdialysis probe in the jugular vein for determination of drug and drug metabolite concentrations.

Animal models in pharmacology can be divided into two subdisciplines: animal models in pharmacodynamics and animals models in pharmacokinetics. Animal models in pharmacodynamics can further be divided into models for illustration of the primary effect of drugs and models for description of secondary effects (side effects). The latter category also includes animal models in safety pharmacology. From a regulatory point of view, primary and secondary pharmacodynamic and safety pharmacology are defined in CPMP/ICH/539/00, adopted November 2000, available at www.ich.org.

Animal models in pharmacodynamic primary effect are so broad that a complete review would go beyond the scope of this chapter. Animal models have been developed and are available for almost any therapeutic area in human and veterinary medicine. Within recent years, hundreds of new models have been developed using gene technologies, mainly by knockout of specific genes in mice. In addition, new strains of laboratory animals such as the minipig have been introduced as models in diabetes research. This section is limited to models in the following few selected therapeutic areas: infections, mental disorders, neurodegenerative diseases, endocrine diseases, noninfectious inflammation, and pain. A search in MEDLINE via PubMed covering the years 1966 to 2001 with the search words animal models in pharmacology resulted in a list of 8400 references. For animal models in infectious disease, there were 1597 references; for mental disorders, 956 references; and for diabetes, 1012 references. This illustrates the enormous amount of literature available on this topic.

In in vivo pharmacology, many factors with an impact on biological variation, reproducibility, and predictability have been identified. They can be related to the animal, the environment, and the experimental procedure. It is crucial that scientists using experimental animals for their research have deep insight into these factors. Otherwise, data obtained from animal experimentation may be of no use, and animal lives would be spent unnecessarily. Most of those factors have been described in detail by Claassen and summarized by Svendsen and Hansen.

Animal Models in Pharmacodynamic Primary Effect

Drugs to Treat Infections

This area includes bacterial, mycotic, parasitic, and viral infection models. Bacterial models include the following: peritonitis and sepsis models, syphilis models, tuberculosis, keratitis, urinary tract infections, arthritis, and endocarditis. Parasitic models include Leishmaniasis models and Echinococcosis models. Mycotic and viral models include models relevant for human immunodeficiency virus infections.

Drugs to Treat Mental Disorders

For mental disorders, no direct animal models exist. Animal models of mental disorders are mostly indirect models that express only a limited and select part of the pathophysiology of the
disease. In many cases, models are based on correlation with aspects of the disease rather than on evidence of pathophysiological mechanisms or on the actual theoretical pathophysiological mechanism.

Animal models for schizophrenia can be divided into screening models and simulation models. The screening models are based on pharmacological tools (i.e., usage of drugs to produce elements of the disease, such as dopaminergic hyperactivity), whereas simulation models are based on psychological aspects expressed as certain behaviors in animals.\textsuperscript{16}

The models that have been used in the discovery of the second generation of antischizophrenic drugs include mechanistic receptor models and symptom models of antipsychotic activity and extrapyramidal symptoms.\textsuperscript{17} The mechanistic receptor models include relative \textit{in vivo} effects on neurotransmitter receptors obtained by administration of specific agonists or antagonists for the receptor in question; and drug discrimination, in which animals are trained to discriminate in two sets of drinking water between a stimulus drug with selectivity for a given neurotransmitter function and substances without this particular activity. The symptom models include (1) inhibition of conditioned avoidance response, in which rats are trained to escape an electric foot shock in a shuttle box; (2) inhibition of dopamine agonist-induced hypermotility or stereotypy and induction of cataleptogenic activity caused by dopamine receptor antagonists; (3) measurement of drug-induced electrophysiological effects on dopamine neurones in ventral tegmental area and substantia nigra, pars compacta; (4) drug-induced dystonia in non-human primates; and (5) cognitive function determined as the effect on spatial learning and memory in the Morris’ water maze. These models are detailed below.

Relative \textit{in vivo} effects on neurotransmitter receptors can be described by selecting \textit{in vivo} effects, preferentially those CNS mediated, that are as specific as possible for the receptor in question, most often by using a selective agonist as a tool. In this way, dopamine D\textsubscript{2} antagonism can be measured by inhibition of pergolide-induced circling behavior in 6-hydroxy-dopamine-lesioned rats, and 5-HT\textsubscript{2} antagonism can be measured by inhibition of head twitches induced by a 5-HT\textsubscript{2} agonist or by the 5-HT precursor, 1-5-HTP.\textsuperscript{17}

In drug discrimination, two principles have been used: (1) use of a stimulus drug with selectivity for a given neurotransmitter function or (2) use of a stimulus drug with mixed effect on a variety of receptors. D-amphetamine has been used extensively as a stimulus drug selective for dopamine receptors in the limbic dopamine system.

Selective inhibition of conditioned avoidance response vs. unconditioned escape response is an old but still useful test for the characterization of antipsychotic drugs.

Hypermotility, stereotypy, and catalepsy models are often used in the \textit{in vivo} screening of putative antipsychotic drugs. There is strong evidence that hypermotility induced by dopamine agonists is mediated by the limbic dopaminergic system, whereas stereotyped behavior and catalepsy are associated with increased and decreased striatal dopaminergic function, respectively.

The advantage of the electrophysiological model in measuring effects on dopamine neurones in the ventral tegmental area and substantia nigra, pars compacta is that it models the time course of antipsychotic treatment and that the limbic vs. striatal selectivity ratio of the drug can be evaluated in the same group of animals.

Dystonia in non-human primates is considered the most predictive model of the severe extrapyramidal side effects in humans that are induced by some of the older antipsychotic drugs.

Because schizophrenic patients show impairment of cognitive function, improvement of this deficit has become a target in antipsychotic drug development. The effect on spatial learning and memory in Morris’ water maze is the preferred model.

Other simulation models for schizophrenia include models for anhedonia, social withdrawal, latent inhibition, and prepulse inhibition. These models have been reviewed by Ellenbroek et al.\textsuperscript{18} More detail is beyond the scope of this chapter but may be found in Chapter 7, “Animal Models for Psychological Disorders.”
Drugs to Treat Neurodegenerative Diseases

Under this heading, animal models in cerebral ischemia (stroke models) and Parkinson’s disease are highlighted. The ischemia models can be divided into global ischemia and focal ischemia models. Global ischemia models are differentiated into total-body ischemia, global cerebral ischemia, and forebrain ischemia. Total-body ischemia models include (1) decapitation with studies on the isolated brain; (2) cardiac arrest and resuscitation, excluding possible remaining collateral circulation into the brain; and (3) profound systemic hypotension induced by pharmacological agents.

Global cerebral ischemia models include increased cerebral pressure obtained by cisternal injection of artificial cerebrospinal fluid, asphyxia or cervical compression obtained by simultaneous occlusion of cervical blood vessels by tourniquet and systemic hypotension, and, finally, combination of surgical occlusion of the major arteries. Forebrain ischemia models include four models, all based on artery occlusion: (1) bilateral common carotid occlusion in Mongolian gerbils, (2) four-vessel occlusion in the rat (Pulsinelli’s model), (3) bilateral common carotid artery occlusion with hypotension (Smith’s model), and (4) bilateral common carotid artery occlusion in spontaneous hypertensive rats.

The most important focal ischemia models in rats include five models: (1) proximal main carotid artery occlusion (Tamura model), (2) intravascular thread (Koizumi model), (3) distal main carotid artery occlusion with bilateral common carotid artery (CCA) occlusion (Chen model), (4) tandem occlusion (Brint model), and (5) photothrombosis (Watson model).

This illustrates the great variety of models within a certain area in which endpoints can be very different. The outcome of these models is highly dependent on temperature, glucose level, blood pressure, and the age and sex of animals.

Parkinson’s disease is a manifestation of nigrostriatal dopamine neurone degeneration. The majority of animal models in Parkinson’s disease include administration of pharmacological agents or neurotoxins. Reserpine and alpha-methyl-tyrosine cause, by two different mechanisms, depletion of catecholamines in the brain. 6-Hydroxydopamine administered by intracerebral or intraventricular injection causes specific damage to the dopaminergic system via oxidative stress to dopaminergic neurones. Systemic administration of the compound 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP) results in depletion of striatal dopamine and nigrostriatal cell death in a wide variety of animal species, including mice, cats, dogs, sheep, minipigs, and non-human primates. Selective uptake of an MPTP metabolite into dopaminergic neurones via the dopamine transporter leads to its accumulation and accounts for its toxic specificity. Administration of methamphetamine to rats results in long-term depletion of striatal dopamine. The action of this toxin differs from that of MPTP in that dopamine is depleted at the level of dopaminergic terminals, not cell bodies.

Drugs to Treat Endocrine Diseases

The number of animal models in endocrinology is so overwhelming that this section is limited to animal models in diabetes. Diabetes is classified on the basis of clinical symptoms in type 1 diabetes (insulin deficiency) and type 2 diabetes (insulin resistance). Animal models featuring physiological and pathological changes characteristic of each diabetes subtype are available. Specific etiological factors or genetic backgrounds have been selected and combined to produce a particular type of experimental diabetes.

Animal models in type 1 diabetes include genetic, viral, and chemical models. In genetic models (NOD mouse and BB diabetic rat), diabetes occurs spontaneously with a total dependency on exogenous insulin. Chemical agents used in chemical models include agents that specifically damage pancreatic beta cells, cause a temporary reduction in insulin production and secretion, or diminish the metabolic efficacy of insulin in target tissue. Streptozotocin and alloxan are the most widely used substances for destruction of pancreatic beta cells.
Animal models in type 2 diabetes include genetic, chemical, and surgical models. The genetic models are produced through selective breeding, spontaneous mutations, or genetic engineering. Some examples include the db/db mouse, ob/ob mouse, KK mouse, NZO mouse, fa/fa Zucker rat, and fa/fa diabetic Zucker rat. Chemical models are obtained through injection of streptozotocin in low doses, in standard doses together with a protecting agent, or in a single dose to neonatal rats. Recently, minipigs have been included in this type of model.1

Drugs to Treat Neurogenic Inflammation (Rheumatoid Arthritis)

The study of joint inflammation and pain has been greatly facilitated by use of various animal models that mimic inflammatory stages in humans.23–25 The models are generally divided into those that cause acute (e.g., carrageenan, urate crystals, kaolin, latex beads, Freund’s complete adjuvant (FCA), interleukin-1) or chronic inflammation (FCA)26 and others that cause neuropathic pain (e.g., sectioning or partial compression of a nerve trunk) when administered to animals, usually rats.

Rheumatoid arthritis is a chronic immune-mediated disease of unknown etiology and pathogenesis. Nevertheless, it is generally considered a disease of autoimmune origin. Most of the experiments leading to the discovery of neurogenic inflammation and its possible involvement in rheumatoid arthritis have been carried out in rodents with experimentally induced arthritis. One of the most valuable and widely used animal models is adjuvant-induced arthritis in rats.27

Drugs to Treat Pain

Over the years, many tests of nociception and pain in animals have been developed. The species most frequently used in pain research are mice and rats. There are two main types of tests. In the first, the response to the stimulation is fixed, and stimulation intensity increases until a defined standard response occurs. Examples include the tail-flick and hot-plate tests. In the second type, the stimulus is standardized, and the strength or duration of the response is measured. Examples include the formalin and writhing tests.

According to Tjølsen and Hole,28 animal models of nociception and pain can be divided into two classes. The first class includes direct measurement of pain by behavioral responses to (1) acute stimulation of nociceptors, (2) intrathecal injection of nociceptive neurotransmitters, (3) long-term peripheral stimulation, (4) models of neuropathic pain, and (5) models of central pain. The second class is based on physiological correlates of pain and nociception after a noxious stimulus and includes electrophysiological methods and biochemical and histochemical methods.

The acute stimulation of nociceptors can be divided into methods based on reflex response measurements (tail-flick tests, paw-pressure test, tail-pin test, and shock-titration test) and those based on behavior coordinated at higher levels (hot-plate test, formalin test, chemically induced writhing test, and colonic-distension test for visceral pain).

Long-term peripheral stimulation tests include subcutaneous injection of carrageenan to cause localized inflammation, monoarthritis inflammation, general adjuvant-induced arthritis, and surgical trauma.

Surgical trauma in pigs and rats has been used to create nociceptive models29,30 with either behavior or neuronal expression of the immediate-early gene c-fos as a marker. Other surgical models have been described by Brennan et al.,31 Brennan,32 Lascelles et al.,33 and Slingsby and Waterman-Pearson.34

Animal Models in Pharmacodynamic Secondary Effect

The animal models used for identification of secondary effects are models in intact animals that may be instrumented for the purpose of identifying drug-induced changes of normal physiological parameters such as rate of respiration, respiratory tidal volume, heart rate, electrocardiogram,
cardiac output, pulmonary arterial blood pressure and blood flow, renal perfusion, digestive system function, smooth-muscle activity, autonomic and central nervous system activity, and several other critical body functions.

The term “safety pharmacology” has become an integrated activity in the development of new drugs. There is no official definition of the term. However, it is the systematic approach of investigating a new drug for efficacy to potentiate or inhibit activities of physiological or pharmacological responses or interaction with other drugs, whether in vitro or in vivo.

Safety pharmacological studies are strongly focused and designed to assess the potential adverse effects of a compound on the physiological function of one or more organs or organ systems in either intact or acutely prepared animal models that have proven relevance to humans, whether healthy or sick. Adverse effects of a compound on body function can be a consequence of either primary or secondary pharmacological properties.

Further details can be obtained from “Note for Guidance of Non Clinical Safety Studies for the Conduct of Human Clinical Trials for Pharmaceuticals” (FPMP/ICH/286/1995); “Note for Guidance on the Investigation of Drug Interactions” (CPMP/EWP/560/95, approved Dec. 1997); and “Standard Guidance: ICH Topic S7A CPMP/ICH/539/00.”

ANIMAL MODELS IN PHARMACOKINETICS

In pharmacokinetics, healthy animals are used to study absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion of drugs. For drugs intended for human use, mice, rats, and dogs are generally used. In certain cases, non-human primates or minipigs are used. For veterinary drugs, pharmacokinetic studies are generally conducted in healthy animals of the actual target species, such as cattle, small ruminants, horses, pigs, dogs, or cats.

In the past, animal models were extensively used for pharmacokinetic studies in drug development. Today, developments in in vitro techniques have greatly supplanted such studies. Instead, pharmacokinetics in animal models is strongly integrated in the safety evaluation of new drugs with the aim of describing the actual drug exposure achieved in the safety studies (i.e., toxicokinetics). The most essential pharmacokinetic parameters are studied in the animal species used for toxicity studies: (1) mice or rats for acute toxicity testing; (2) rats, dogs, minipigs, or non-human primates for subchronic toxicity testing; (3) mice, rats, rabbits, minipigs, or non-human primates for teratogenicity testing; and (4) rats for reproduction testing. The main goal is to document the level of drug exposure during the conduct of the toxicity studies to make interpretations from studies in animals to exposure levels in humans.

Pharmacokinetic studies in pharmacodynamic animal models have not been integrated to the same extent because pharmacokinetic studies in animal models are used for safety testing. Even in veterinary medicine, where drugs are given to sick animals, the pharmacokinetic data are generally obtained using healthy animals. However, in recent years, a number of clinically relevant animal models have been developed for different purposes, and some are used to study pharmacokinetic parameters under conditions of actual diseases.

ANIMAL MODELS IN TOXICOLOGY

Toxicology is the discipline used to predict undesirable biological or adverse effects in the living organisms as a consequence of exposure to, for instance, chemicals in our environment, both man-made as well as naturally occurring. A practical definition of an adverse change is the following: any treatment-related alteration from baseline that diminishes an organism’s ability to survive, reproduce, or adapt to the environment. The discipline forms part of the administration of chemicals in our society, such as medicines, food additives, pesticides, and industrial and
household chemicals. In addition, the data from toxicological investigations constitute the essential part of the health evaluation of the use in society of gene-manipulated organisms (GMOs) and products made from GMOs, such as biological pesticides and so on. Thus, the main role of toxicological testing is to identify the hazards in humans as a consequence of exposure to, for instance, chemical substances and, in addition, to establish a dose relationship for the toxic effect to identify the toxic dose.

Toxicological data can come from studies on humans, from \textit{in vitro} studies, or from studies in laboratory animals.

Toxicological data derived from humans will be the most reliable in predicting the potential consequence of human exposure. However, in most cases, reliable human data will not be available for evaluation. First of all, no data on human exposure to a chemical substance exist before the chemical has been introduced in the society, maybe apart from limited data from those persons who were exposed during the synthesis of the chemical.

Real toxicological studies in humans that are conducted to identify the possible adverse effects of chemical substances are only allowed in very few cases for restricted purposes. The prevailing human data come from epidemiological studies. However, such studies are very complicated to perform and resource demanding, and the data are often difficult to interpret, for instance, to identify the cause of an observed or recorded effect. Nevertheless, data from epidemiological studies play an increasing role in the toxicological evaluation of chemical substances as the development of electronic data technology makes it possible to handle huge sets of data from sufficiently large groups of individuals to achieve acceptable sensitivity of the study. Furthermore, the development of sensitivity of analytical methods and the use of biological markers will increase the applicability of human data.

\textit{In vitro} methods using cells, tissue, or isolated organs, including those employing cells of non-mammalian origin, are used to some extent in toxicological testing of chemicals, such as in testing for genotoxicity. These tests are under constant development. However, such studies are limited by the fact that they cannot reflect the reaction of the intact organism. Many resources are invested in the development of new \textit{in vitro} methods and the refinement of existing methods. Consequently, in the near future, \textit{in vitro} studies will play an increasing although still relatively limited role in the toxicological evaluation of chemicals.

The prevailing amount of toxicological data used in the health assessment of human exposure to, for instance, chemicals will derive from studies in laboratory animals.

\textbf{EXTRAPOLATION}

It has been stated that the ultimate proof that a substance is a human teratogen can come only from information on the consequences of human exposure.\textsuperscript{40} This statement is valid regarding toxicological effects in general. The difficulty is then overcome of differences between human and animal species in, for instance, absorption, metabolism, excretion, and sensitivity on the cellular level. However, comparing both data from human exposure and data from dosing experimental animals in the database established over decades has given considerable comfort in addressing, for instance, both cancer and developmental toxicity. Thus, with the exception of a few chemicals, such as the coumarin anticoagulant drugs, those agents well accepted as human teratogens have been shown to be teratogenic in one or more laboratory animal species. Likewise, of the relatively few substances known to cause cancer in humans, several were first demonstrated in laboratory animals, and there are several instances in which a substance that was carcinogenic in animal tests was later related to a particular human cancer found in people exposed to the particular substance. In addition, the biological resemblance or similarity between laboratory animal species and humans (that is, that the cellular structure and biochemistry are remarkably alike across species, starting with the lipoprotein cell membrane, which affects the absorption of xenobiotics into the cell, to
metabolic processes like glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and numerous other aspects of intermediary 
metabolism) serves as the basis on which data and knowledge can be extrapolated or functions 
inferring from one species to another. Even though the assumption is valid that one may use data 
from studies in laboratory animals to predict the outcome in humans, it is always crucial in the 
evaluation of data to consider the inherent species differences in a pattern of biological reactions 
to an exposure of substances.

Several biological parameters, including those for absorption and excretion of chemical sub-
stances (toxicokinetics), are dependent on the body weight, both in humans and in laboratory 
animals. Thus, it would be desirable to have data on the toxicokinetics, including data on bioacti-
vation and cytotoxicity in the actual tissue that constitutes the target organ both in the laboratory 
animal used and in the human. Such data would make it possible to compare the effect in the two 
species and would constitute the basis for the assessment of the dose–response relationship. 
However, such data are not available in most cases, and as a consequence of that, the regulatory 
toxicological evaluation operates with a so-called uncertainty factor to compensate for the lack of 
knowledge about differential sensitivity among species. Such a factor, called the no observed 
adverse effect level (NOAEL), is applied to the highest dose in studies in laboratory animals that 
did not result in observed toxicological effect in order to establish a figure for exposure in humans 
that maintains an acceptable level of safety. A UF size of 100 has traditionally been used. Originally, 
this factor was empirically based. However, scientific evaluation of the established database over 
the years has shown that a factor of 100 gives the desired margin of safety for humans.

The dose in studies in laboratory animals are often expressed as milligrams per kilogram of 
body weight, but other (more recent?) data indicate that the dose expressed in milligrams per square 
meter of body surface constitutes a better basis for comparing the sensitivity for the exposure to 
chemicals between animals and humans. Thus, a difference of up to 10 times can be the result 
when an acceptable figure for exposure to humans is based on the NOAEL for mice, depending 
on whether the dose is expressed as milligrams per kilogram of body weight or as milligrams per 
square meter of the body surface; in other words, in some cases, the margin of safety is 10 times 
lower when establishing an ADI based on the dose, expressed in relation to body surface.

In conclusion, the laboratory animal model is valid to a high degree for prediction of the human 
situation. However, the evaluation of the data as to consequences in humans should always be done 
carefully, considering the species differences.

ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS

The use of laboratory animals for experimental purposes inevitably raises concern for animal 
welfare. Many, if not all, toxicological tests or test procedures inflict some distress or pain and 
anxiety on laboratory animals. However, at the same time, laboratory animal experiments give 
valuable information of vital importance for both humans and, to some extent, animals. Thus, 
toxicological testing becomes an ethical dilemma, about which societal opinion ranges from extreme 
anti-laboratory animal experimentation attitudes to beliefs that animals can be used whenever 
considered relevant. The prevailing opinion is that use of laboratory animals should only take place 
when necessary to answer particular questions and that the animal’s pain and distress must be 
minimized. This opinion is respected in national and international regulations. For toxicological 
test methods (test guidelines, TG) implying use of laboratory animals, the following criteria should 
apply. The results obtained using TGs should provide the scientific information needed for evalu-
ation and sufficient basis for regulatory authorities to make decisions. Finally, the recommended 
procedure should minimize the suffering of the laboratory animals involved and, where possible 
and practical, reduce the number of animals used or even replace them. The European Organisation 
for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD) has recently published “Guidance Docu-
ment on Recognition, Assessment, and Use of Clinical Signs as Humane Endpoints for Experimental
Animals in Safety Evaluation” with the purpose of applying the principles of the “3 Rs” to use of animals in regulatory toxicity tests.

**CHOICE OF ANIMAL SPECIES**

No ideal animal model exists covering toxicological testing in general. The toxicological databases indicate that the more animal species used, the better the predictive value of the data for the human situation. The choice of suitable laboratory animal species is done on a case-by-case basis, based on the available data and other relevant information.

In principle, all animals can serve as laboratory animals, but only a limited number of species are in use because of practical factors such as size of the animal, required breeding conditions, and economy. In addition, the obtained knowledge of certain animal species traditionally used for years has led to or will determine the choice of animal model.

Laboratory animals are often divided into groups as rodents or non-rodents. In the former group, the mouse and rat are the most used species. Also, guinea pig and hamster are used quite often. In general, rodents have a relatively short lifetime (a few years, with the exception of guinea pigs, which can obtain an age of approximately 8 years), they are easy to breed, have high fecundity, and are easy to house in sufficient quantities of individuals. The dog has traditionally been the most used species within the group of non-rodents. However, the use of pigs has increased in recent years, concurrent with the development of the minipig into a reliable and applicable laboratory animal and because of the fact that the dog is also a very popular pet animal. Monkeys are used only in very limited numbers and only for specific purposes for which a primate species is the only choice. Rabbits are frequently used for specific purposes, including eye irritation and skin irritation. In developmental toxicity studies, the rabbit is used as a representative of the group of non-rodents. However, it is constantly debated whether it is correct from a biological point of view to separate the group to which the rabbit belongs, Lagomorpha, from that of the rodents, Rodentia.

The choice of the most relevant species is dependent on data already obtained and on the available information on the chemical in question. However, a few general examples on specific features of the different species should be mentioned. Dogs and rats are the most efficient species concerning bile excretion. The common types of experimental animals, like mice and rats, used in studies for developmental toxicity have, unlike humans, a yolk sac placenta, which plays a significant role during the organogenesis. Many commonly used animal models such as the rat are obligate nose breathers, whereas many humans breathe via the mouth, thus bypassing the nasopharyngeal area. Concerning dermal absorption, human skin is less permeable than that of most laboratory animals. Finally, concerning metabolism, the cat has a low capacity for glucoronic acid conjugation, the dog has a similar reduced capacity for acetylation of chemical substances, and the pig exhibits a reduced ability for sulfate conjugation.

Within species exist a number of strains and stocks with specific characteristics that determine their applicability to the different toxicological test methods. The individual strains and stocks represent different genetic backgrounds. In addition, the introduction of gene technology has resulted in the development of several new strains, the transgenic animals.

The laboratory animals are often characterized as either inbred or outbred, the latter bred for the purpose of obtaining genetic heterogenicity. Concerning the latter, a large breeding colony is necessary to avoid some degree of inbreeding that leads to a shift in the genetic constitution of the stock. In addition to a drift toward inbreeding, the different stocks can undergo changes as a consequence of individual selection of animals for breeding to obtain a more profitable production. It has been speculated that this practice is the foundation for the increase in litter size in some Wistar-derived rats over the past 20 years and that, together with dietary changes, it has resulted in more heavy animals with a higher spontaneous incidence of diseases and consequently shorter life span (e.g., some Sprague Dawley and Wistar rats).
Inbreeding results in a high level of homozygosity, which results in more homogeneity and consequently less variance within some relevant parameters. However, such breeding practice also has drawbacks in leading to an inbreeding depression that results, for instance, in a decrease in fecundity and litter size.

Both inbred and outbred animals are used in toxicology testing. The choice of one or the other has been debated and, among others, has led to a proposal to use a normal group size, albeit one composed of two or three strains, in safety testing of chemicals. The general principles for choice of animals in regulatory toxicology testing do not answer whether one is more relevant than another. The choice is most often based on tradition and experience within the laboratory. Thus, the inbred rat strain F344 has been used in National Toxicology Program studies in the United States, whereas outbred stocks like Wistar and Sprague Dawley rats are frequently used in many laboratories in Europe.

PHYSIOLOGY AND EXPERIMENTAL CONDITIONS, INCLUDING MICROBIOLOGICAL STATUS AND DIET AND FEEDING CONDITIONS

Many factors are known to influence the outcome of toxicity tests in laboratory animals, some of which are species and strain and stock of animals (already mentioned); body weight; health; stress; husbandry (temperature, light, relative humidity, etc.); diet; dose; vehicle; volume; time and duration of dosing; and so on. Apart from a short comment on the choice of diet, a review of these factors is not a subject for this chapter, and more detailed information may be found in Volume I of this Handbook. The type of diet and its feeding is an important factor in toxicity testing that sometimes has more influence on the parameters measured in the laboratory animals than that of the exposure itself.

The diet of laboratory animals in toxicological tests should fulfill the nutritional requirements for the specific species and be free from contaminants of chemical as well as microbial origin. The dietary composition is, in addition to the nutritional conditions and impact on health of contamination, of importance for the physiological status of the animal. For instance, a high content of dietary fiber in rat diets shortens the food’s transit time in the gut, and the dietary composition can influence bile secretion and the intestinal flora as well.

Three main types of diets are used in toxicological tests in rodents. First, there is the so-called chow diet, composed of natural ingredients like cereals and skimmed milk powder with vitamins and minerals added. Second, there is the semisynthetic or semipurified diet, containing defined constituents like casein, soybean oil, and carbohydrates including starches, minerals, vitamins, and sometimes cellulose. The main advantages of the chow diet are good nutritional value and low price. However, the chow diet can vary in quality because the nutritional value of mainly the cereal part of the diet changes depending on harvest condition and control of contaminants. In contrast to the case of the chow diet, the semisynthetic diet is expensive to produce and consequently often has a price on the order of approximately 10 times that of the chow diet. However, the obvious advantage of using the semisynthetic diet is more quality control because of its composition of well-defined constituents and the fact that single ingredients can be interchanged without changing the nutritional value of the diet. This is of importance when testing substances with a nutritional component such as a protein, a carbohydrate, or fat in that a possible toxic effect can be distinguished from the effect of nutrition or malnutrition.

The third type of diet is the synthetic diet. In contrast to the case of the semisynthetic diet, all the ingredients in this diet are composed of chemically well-defined components. Thus, the protein, such as casein, in the semisynthetic diet is replaced by the corresponding amino acids. This type of diet is only used in very few cases, for specific purposes.

The high energy content of the diet, resulting in heavy rats with higher incidence of diseases and decreased survival, has been a problem for long-term toxicity studies in recent years. If the
caloric value of the diet is lowered, for instance, by replacing the content of highly digestible carbohydrates in semisynthetic diets with the less digestible starches and in addition increasing the amount of the almost nondigestible cellulose and reducing the fat as well, the rat will simply compensate by eating more. This ability to compensate for the caloric value of the diet is also seen when using a diet with a very high digestible energy content; in other words, the rat consequently will eat less. For long-term toxicity studies, especially of carcinogenicity, it has been proposed that the feeding regimen be changed by introducing dietary restriction (DR), in which the animals are only offered a measured amount of diet, resulting in less intake than under the condition of an ad libitum feeding regimen. This feeding practice has been used successfully in some studies in which the incidence of diseases in rats, including cancer, was decreased or, more correctly, delayed in occurrence and the longevity of the animals was simultaneously improved. However, it will probably take years to introduce DR into national and international test guidelines for toxicity testing because of concern that the delayed occurrence of, for example, cancer reflects a decrease in the sensitivity of the test in detecting the carcinogenic potential of a tested chemical and because the considerable database on historical control data is based on data from ad libitum feeding studies.

**TOXICITY TESTS**

The three main tasks of toxicity testing are to elucidate the following: (1) spectrum of toxicity, that is, detection of adverse effects of chemicals in selected laboratory species and description of dose–effect relationships over a broad range of doses; (2) extrapolation, that is, prediction of adverse effects in other species, particularly humans; and (3) safety, the prediction of safe levels of exposure in other species, particularly humans.

The toxicity testing includes in general the following tests:

- Acute toxicity
- Acute eye irritation or corrosion
- Acute dermal irritation or corrosion
- Skin sensitization
- Repeated-dose toxicity
- Carcinogenicity
- Reproductive toxicity
- Neurotoxicity
- Genetic toxicity

In addition, specific studies to elucidate the absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion (toxicokinetics), characteristics and studies to demonstrate a possible mode of action and mechanism (toxicodynamics) are important elements in testing for the health assessment of chemicals.

A short review of the *in vivo* toxicity tests will be given, including a description of general conditions such as design of the tests; dose selection; and, when relevant, choice of common species.


**Tests for Acute Toxicity**

Acute toxicity comprises any adverse effect occurring within a short period of time, most often within 14 d, after exposure to a single dose of a chemical, or sometimes after several doses within 24 h. The administration of the test substance can be oral, dermal, or via inhalation. For many years, acute toxicity data have been used to satisfy hazard classification and labeling requirements. Thus, the provision of either a point estimate of the median lethal dose, the dose LD$_{50}$,
the lethal dose for 50% of the test animals; or a range estimate of the LD$_{50}$ generally meets the acute toxicity data requirements for classification for regulatory authorities in the areas of industrial chemicals, consumer products, pesticides, etc.

For acute toxicity by inhalation, the LC$_{50}$ is used, expressing the median lethal concentration parallel to that of the LD$_{50}$. The LC$_{50}$ is normally expressed as milligrams per liter of the ambient air under standard conditions.

LD$_{50}$ or LC$_{50}$ is only one of several parameters used to express acute toxicity. The calculated LD$_{50}$ or LC$_{50}$ parameter does not constitute an absolute figure, as there are great variations among tests for a single chemical, both within the same laboratory and between different laboratories, because of factors such as species or strain and stock of the laboratory animals and their age or test conditions in general.

In recent years, there has been an increasing awareness that the use of death as an endpoint in toxicological testing inflicts unacceptable suffering on laboratory animals. Furthermore, the use of LD$_{50}$ or LC$_{50}$ in general is based more on practical reasons, for deriving a figure for regulatory use, than on science as such, and this has resulted in development of new, alternative tests in which more ethically acceptable procedures for acute toxicity are used. Thus, three new OECD test guidelines for oral acute toxicity have recently been introduced: the Fixed-Dose Procedure (OECD TG 420), the Acute Toxic Class Method (OECD TG 423), and the Up-and-Down Method (OECD TG 425). Over time, the existence of these should lead to a deletion of the traditional acute oral toxicity test (OECD TG 401). All the guidelines involve the administration of a single bolus of test substance to fasted healthy adult rodents by oral gavage, observation up to 14 d after dosing, and recording of body weight and necropsy of all animals. However, the three new, alternative tests provide significant improvements in the number of animals used as compared with that for the traditional test. In addition, they all contain requirements that the OECD Guidance Document on Humane Endpoints should be followed, which should reduce the overall suffering of the animals used. Furthermore, the Fixed-Dose Procedure has an endpoint of toxicity rather than mortality and uses a sighting study to minimize the number of animals required; and the Up-and-Down Method has a stopping rule, which limits the number of animals in the test.

The data from acute toxicity tests are used for regulatory purposes, that is, to establish rules for handling chemical substances in society. In addition, the data from these tests can be used in planning further toxicological testing, including the choice of dose levels. For pharmaceuticals, among others, the data from acute toxicity testing can form the basis for the evaluation of the interval between a therapeutic dose and a toxic one.

In the acute toxicity test, most often, groups of animals of each sex are exposed to several doses of the test substance, either at the same time or one at a time, sequentially, awaiting a possible effect or no effect of the first administered dose. Rats and mice are most commonly chosen for acute toxicity studies. For some chemicals for which high acute toxicity is not expected, the guideline for the traditional acute toxicity test is open to the possibility of a limit test that includes only one fixed dose.

In a sighting study (preliminary or dose range finding) performed to get information on the dose–toxicity relationship, including an estimate of the minimum lethal dose, females will normally be the preferred sex unless information indicates that males are more sensitive.

In the acute toxicity test, a clinical examination and mortality check are made shortly after dosing at frequent intervals and at least once daily thereafter. Cage-side observations include those of any changes in the skin, fur, eyes, mucous membranes, circulatory system, autonomic and central nervous systems, somatomotor activities, behavior, etc. Any pharmacotoxic signs such as tremor, convulsions, salivation, diarrhea, lethargy, sleepiness, morbidity, fasciculation, mydriasis, miosis, droppings, discharges, or hypotonia are recorded. Necropsies are performed on animals that are moribund, those found dead, and those killed at the conclusion of the study. All changes in the size, color, or consistency of any organ are recorded.
Microscopic examination of a lesion may be essential. Therefore, tissues from such lesions must be preserved in an appropriate fixative.

**Eye Irritation**

This test was developed in 1944 by Draize et al.\textsuperscript{41} to study eye irritation in rabbits and is used to identify human eye irritants. The test is easy to conduct and requires no special instruments. Simplicity is probably the main reason for the popularity of the test. However, it is also the limitation of the test. The Draize test can identify most moderate-to-severe human eye irritants, but the test may fail to detect mild or subtle ocular irritation. The result from the Draize test is a criterion for classifying and labeling chemicals.

In the original test, 0.1 ml or 0.1 g test substance is applied to the eye conjunctival sac of albino rabbits. The degree or extent of opacity of the cornea, the redness of the iris, and the chemosis and discharge of the conjunctiva are scored subjectively according to an arbitrary scale at preselected intervals after exposure. Scoring is based on the degree of effects caused by the testing substance. More emphasis is placed on the opacity of the cornea, whereas emphasis is considerably less on other effects, such as conjunctival changes and iritis.

The eye irritation test will inevitably lead to often-severe suffering of laboratory animals, and consequently, to address this concern, the testing procedure has been modified over the years. Thus, the number of animals in the test has been reduced; and if the test chemical is suspected to cause eye irritation, the test allows the initial use of one animal and cessation of further testing if eye irritation clearly is observed. In addition, the introduction to the OECD Test Guideline for eye irritation presents some initial considerations before testing. Thus, it is stated that it is not necessary to test chemicals with an acidity of pH < 2 or chemicals that are strong bases, with a pH > 11. Furthermore, the data from skin irritation tests and from well-validated and accepted \textit{in vitro} tests should be evaluated before the initiation of testing.

Humane concern about using animals in eye irritation tests has prompted many investigators to turn to alternative methods. The development of alternatives is still in its infancy. Recent research has focused on validation of methods, most of which are \textit{in vitro}. However, it is generally agreed that \textit{in vitro} techniques will replace animal testing in the near future only to some extent, so the immediate concern is to further reduce the number of animals used and minimize the pain inflicted on animals during the study. It is the experience of one of the authors that less than 5% of the animals used for this test show any reaction to the treatment.

**Skin Irritation**

The albino rabbit is the preferred animal species when testing for skin irritation because of its high skin sensitivity and light skin, on which even slight skin irritant effects of a substance usually can be detected.

In general, substances or products are tested for skin irritation using a test design first proposed by Draize et al. in 1944.\textsuperscript{41} The substance to be tested is applied in a single dose on a small area (approximately 6 cm\textsuperscript{2}) of the skin of three rabbits and covered with a gauze patch, which is held in place with nonirritating tape. At the end of the exposure period, normally 4 h, any residual test substance is removed. Each animal serves as its own control. The possible skin reactions of erythema and edema are described and graded according to a classification system on each of the following days. The duration of the study should be sufficient for a full evaluation of the reversibility of the possible effects observed.

Dermal irritation is the production of reversible changes, whereas dermal corrosion is the production of irreversible changes (scar formation) in the skin. If it is suspected that the test substance might produce severe irritancy or corrosion, the OECD test guideline prescribes that a single animal test should be employed. As in the case of the eye irritation test, alternative \textit{in vitro}
tests are under development. Thus, a recent OECD draft proposal for *in vitro* skin corrosion tests (the Rat Skin Transcutaneous Electrical Resistance assay and the Human Skin Model Assay) has been introduced.

**Skin Sensitization**

Allergic contact dermatitis (type IV sensitization) is an immunologically mediated reaction. This is in contrast to the case of irritant contact dermatitis, which is a skin reaction caused by a primary and direct effect of the substance on the skin. In humans, the responses to both types of dermatitis are very similar, characterized by pruritis, erythema, edema, papules, vesicles, bullae, or combinations of these. In animals, the reactions may differ, and only erythema and edema may be seen. Allergic contact dermatitis is a T-cell-mediated cutaneous reaction to a substance, characterized by a delayed response (24–96 h) to a patch test with a nonirritating concentration of the substance.

The guinea pig has been the animal of choice for predictive sensitization tests for several decades. Two types of tests have been developed: (1) adjuvant tests, in which sensitization is potentiated by the injection of Freund’s complete adjuvant, and (2) nonadjuvant tests. The test animals are initially exposed to nontoxic doses of the test substance by either or both intradermal injection or epidermal application (induction exposure). After a rest period of 10 to 14 d (induction period), during which an immune response may develop, the animals are exposed to a challenge dose. The extent and degree of skin reaction to the challenge exposure in the test animals are compared with that demonstrated by control animals that undergo sham treatment during induction and receive the challenge exposure. In the OECD Test Guideline, the minimal required number of animals for the adjuvant test, the Guinea Pig Maximization Test, is 10 test animals and five control animals, whereas the minimum for the nonadjuvant test, the Buehler Test, is 20 test animals and 10 control animals. Male or female (nulliparous and nonpregnant) young adult animals can be used.

Mouse models for assessing sensitization potential, such as the Mouse Ear Swelling Test and the Local Lymph Node Assay, have been developed and offer the advantages of an endpoint that is measured objectively, a short duration, and minimal animal treatment. Recently, the OECD has introduced a draft guideline for the Local Lymph Node Assay.

**Repeated-Dose Toxicity: 28 Days, 90 Days (Subchronic), and 1 Year (Chronic)**

These toxicity studies are designed to examine the adverse effects resulting from repeated exposure over a limited period of time, up to a certain part of the average life span of experimental animals. The dosing can be oral, dermal, or via inhalation. The data from these studies provide valuable information on the cumulative exposure on target organs and on general health hazards likely to occur as a consequence of repeated low-dose exposure to a chemical. As these studies are aimed at detecting any systemic toxic effect, a wide variety of parameters are monitored, such as clinical appearance including ophthalmological examination, body weight, body weight gain, and food consumption; and sometimes water intake, hematology, clinical biochemistry, and pathology including histopathology.

The 90-d exposure was originally chosen because this period generally covers 10% of the life span of the laboratory rat, whereas the 1-year exposure is supposed to cover a major part of the life of laboratory animals. The more recent guideline for the 28-d repeated toxicity study is designed as a first-tier test or screening test to detect the entire spectrum of systemic adverse effects of repeated exposure to the test chemical, including possible neurotoxic effects, immunotoxicity, or effects on the sexual organs. On the basis of the data from the latter study, the dose regimen can be selected for follow-up studies, including more prolonged exposure for the test chemical to further study the observed toxic effect.
All laboratory animals can be used in repeated dose toxicity studies, including rodents (most often rats and mice) and non-rodents, of which the minipig and the dog are the preferred species. The 28-d, 90-d, and 1-year repeated dose toxicity studies are very similar to each other and differ only in the number of animals required (the minimum required numbers are 5, 10, and 20 of each sex for the respective studies, for rodents, and 4 of each sex, for non-rodents, in all the studies) and in the extent of the parameters included. All routes of exposure, that is, oral, dermal, intravenous, or inhalation, can be employed. The oral administration of a test substance can be carried out by gavage, in capsules, or in the diet or drinking water. Dietary administration is a very common route of dosing.

The animals are divided into four groups. One group serves as a control group. The other three groups are given the chemical in increasing doses. The dose levels can be based on data from previous studies, including studies on toxicokinetics, among others. In general, the highest dose should result in toxic effects but not produce an incidence of fatalities, which would prevent a meaningful evaluation. The lowest dose level should not produce any evidence of toxicity. Where there is usable estimation of human exposure, the lowest level should not exceed this. Ideally, the intermediate dose levels should produce minimal observable toxic effects. If more than one intermediate dose is used, those dose levels should be spaced to produce a gradation of toxic effects. Twofold to fourfold intervals are frequently optimal for setting the descending dose levels.

The control group shall be an untreated group or a vehicle-control group, in cases using a vehicle to administer the test substance.

The OECD guidelines for the repeated dose toxicity are as follows: 28-d and 90-d studies include a limit test procedure for chemicals. If a test at one dose level, equivalent to at least 1000 mg/kg body weight per day, produces no observed adverse effects and if toxicity would not be expected based on data from structurally related compounds, then a full study using three dose levels may not be considered necessary. The limit test applies except when human exposure indicates the need for a higher dose level to be used.

Basically, the toxic effects of the test substance can be defined by physical examination, daily observations, ophthalmological examination, determination of diet and water consumption, body and organ weights, hematology, clinical chemistry, urinalysis, and pathology studies. In dogs and minipigs, electrocardiography may be included. When possible, these parameters are evaluated before initiation of the study to obtain baseline information on the animals. Detailed observations of each animal are made at least once and preferably twice daily for the duration of the study. If recovery groups are included in the study, these animals are observed for a period of weeks after withdrawal of treatment.

Daily observations include close scrutiny for changes in the fur, skin, eyes, mucous membranes, and orifices; the respiratory, circulatory, autonomic, and central nervous systems; somatomotor activities; and behavior. Special attention is given to any palpable mass that may be related to tumor incidence. All signs are recorded. If deaths occur during the study, the animals are necropsied within a short period of time and the tissues placed in fixative. Severely moribund animals are killed and necropsied to prevent loss of valuable tissues to autolysis. At the end of a test period, all animals except those in the recovery groups are killed. The recovery groups are observed during the recovery period, bled for hematology and clinical chemistry, and then killed for pathological studies.

Hematological analysis includes hematocrit, hemoglobin concentration, red blood cell count, white blood cell count (total and differential count), morphology of the red blood cells, and a measure of clotting ability such as prothrombin and thromboplastin time or platelet count.

Biochemical measurements comprise electrolyte balance, carbohydrate and protein metabolism, and organ function tests. This information can be important in the establishment of target organ toxicity. The analyses include most if not all of the following parameters: calcium, phosphate, sodium, potassium, chloride, fasting glucose, serum aspartate aminotransferase (AST, SGOT) and alanine aminotransferase (ALT, SGPT), alkaline phosphatase, ornithine carbamyltransferase,
gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase, blood urea nitrogen, total protein, albumin, globulin, total bilirubin, blood creatinine, cholesterol, acid–base balance, lipids, cholinesterase (plasma, red blood cell, or brain), and any other biochemical parameters that may facilitate the definition of adverse effects. The number of biochemical parameters examined is based on the class of chemicals and the expected toxicity. For example, cholinesterase activities should be considered if the test substance is an organophosphate or a carbamate, which are expected to be inhibitors of the enzyme.

Urinalysis is generally conducted at the same time as hematology and clinical chemistry. The following parameters are usually determined: specific gravity, osmolarity, or both; acidity; protein; glucose; ketones; bilirubin; epithelial cells; urobilinogen and stones; etc.

All animals are subjected to a gross pathology examination. All tissues from the high-dose group and control animals and any tissues with lesions in other groups are further examined microscopically. These examinations should be extended to animals of all other dosage groups if treatment-related changes are observed in the high-dose group. The different test guidelines include lists of the minimal number of tissues recommended for histopathological examination. However, the clinical and other findings may suggest the need to examine additional tissues. Also, any organs considered likely to be target organs based on the known properties of the test substance should be preserved for histopathological examination.

Carcinogenicity Studies

The objective of long-term carcinogenicity studies is to observe test animals for a major portion of their life span for the development of neoplastic lesions during or after exposure to various doses of a test substance by an appropriate route of administration. Such an assay requires careful planning and documentation of the experimental design, a high standard of pathology, and unbiased statistical analysis. These requirements are well known and have not undergone any significant changes during the past several years. However, in recent years, some development of a testing strategy has taken place in which information about chemical structure and data from short-term in vitro and in vivo studies for, say, genotoxic effects have been considered for regulatory purposes to decide whether a long-term, resource-demanding carcinogenicity study should be required at all.

The preferred animal species for long-term carcinogenicity studies are rats, mice, and to some extent, hamsters, mainly because these species have a relatively short life span and can be housed in sufficient numbers in the laboratory. In addition, most of the data from other toxicology studies comes from rodents as well. It is very important to know the normal life span of the strain or stock used in these studies because of the long exposure period employed. Furthermore, data on the background tumor incidence are crucial. Thus, a Fischer rat, F344, will not be the most appropriate choice of strain when testing a chemical suspected to cause tumors in the testes because this strain is known to have a rather high spontaneous incidence of interstitial (Leydig cell) tumors that could mask a possible effect of the test chemical.

Both rats and mice are commonly used in risk assessment for humans. There is an ongoing discussion in the scientific community about whether the use of both rodent species is necessary. It has been stated, based on a survey of databases covering studies with pharmaceuticals, that, in general, the rat is more sensitive than the mouse. Use of the male rat and the female mouse has been suggested as an alternative to a standard two-species, two-sex bioassay. Carcinogenic risk assessment on the basis of a life-span study in a single rodent species in combination with short-term genotoxicity and mechanistic information tests, including short- or medium-term in vivo rodent tests, such as the model of initiation–promotion or the carcinogenesis model using neonatal or transgenic mice, has also been suggested. Until there is international consensus on newer approaches for carcinogenic risk assessment, both sexes of rats and mice are normally used for testing chemicals such as food additives and pesticides, unless specific considerations suggest otherwise.

All routes of exposure can be applied. The chemicals are normally administered orally and to some extent by dermal application or via inhalation for a period of not less than 24 months for
rats, or 18 months for mice and hamsters. Groups employed in the test include a minimum of 50 animals of each sex, with one control group and three test groups of rodents that are no more than 6 weeks of age at the start of the dosing period. The required minimal survival rate of the test animals to ensure sufficient time for development of tumors is 50% at 24 months and 18 months, respectively, for rats and for mice and hamsters. Animals that die during the study shall shortly thereafter be subjected to necropsy to fulfill the requirement that not more than 10% of the animals are unsuitable for histopathological analysis because of autolysis, which will occur quite quickly at room temperature and consequently further necessitate that the animals in the study be observed frequently.

The highest dose level should be sufficiently high to elicit signs of minimal toxicity without substantially altering the normal life span because of effects other than tumors. The highest dose level is often referred to as the *maximum tolerated dose*, or MTD. The criteria for setting that dose have been heavily discussed among toxicologists. In the OECD guideline for carcinogenicity studies, the criteria used are those signs of toxicity that may be indicated by alterations in certain serum enzyme levels seen in previous studies or by slight depression of body weight gain (<10%).

For diet mixture, the highest concentration should not exceed 5%, with the exception of nutrients, to avoid interference with the dietary requirement.

The lowest dose should in general not be lower than 10% of the high dose and should not interfere with normal growth, development, and longevity of the animals or otherwise cause any indication of toxicity. The intermediate doses should be established mid-range between the high and low doses.

The carcinogenicity studies include biological parameters such as clinical appearance, body weight and body weight gain, food consumption, clinically detectable tumors, and hematology. The main focus is on the pathological examinations that include necropsy and on histopathology of tissues and organs. Tumors found in the different tissues or organs will be classified, for example, as benign or malignant. The number of tumor-bearing animals can be subdivided according to specific tumor sites or types, as well as by time to tumor occurrence. The evaluation of a possible carcinogenic effect of the chemical is based on the comparison of these parameters between the dosed and control animals.

**Reproductive Toxicity Tests**

The reproductive toxicity tests constitute an important part of the toxicological testing program in the health assessment of chemicals. Tests for reproductive toxicity should ideally be able to identify one or more of the following effects on reproduction:

- Impairment of male (and female) reproductive functions or capacity, such as adverse effects on libido, sexual behavior, any aspect of spermatogenesis (or oogenesis), or any hormonal activity or physiological response that would interfere with the capacity to fertilize, the fertilization itself, or the development of the fertilized ovum up to and including implantation.
- Induction of noninheritable harmful effects on the progeny, that is, in the widest sense, any effect interfering with normal development, both before and after birth up to puberty, should be included. Both morphological malformations and functional disturbances (e.g., hormonal, neurological) should be evaluated.

Many different experimental methods for investigating toxic effects of chemicals on reproduction and development are in use. Several tests are standardized, and guidelines have been issued by various governmental agencies and international organizations; others are still undergoing scientific evaluation. The following sections focus mainly on standardized and regulatory accepted methods, some of which are presented in Table 2.1. Tests other than those included in Table 2.1 can reveal effects that indicate a chemical’s potential to interfere with normal reproduction, such
as the dominant lethal test, fertility assessment by continuous breeding, and repeated dose toxicity testing, in which the gonads are subjected to pathological examination. More recently, new test guidelines for detecting hormonal disruption have been under validation, such as the Rodent Uterotrophic Screening Assay and the Rodent Hershberger Screening Assay for the screening of chemicals that may interact in vivo with the estrogen receptor or with the androgen receptor, respectively.

In recent years, many in vitro test systems have been proposed as alternatives to animal testing for developmental toxicity. These tests may be useful for screening closely related chemicals and for elucidating the mechanisms underlying the effects, but they cannot replace animal testing in the risk assessment of chemicals.

### One-, Two-, and Multigeneration Studies

Various international organizations and countries have drafted guidelines for carrying out one-, two-, and multigeneration studies; these organizations include the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the OECD.

The purpose of generation studies is to examine successive generations to identify possible effects of a substance on fertility of male and female animals; pre-, peri-, and postnatal effects on the ovum, fetus, and progeny, including teratogenic and mutagenic effects; and peri- and postnatal effects on the mother.

These guidelines have a number of common requirements. The preferred species are the rat and the mouse. Other species may be used if relevant (e.g., in case of differences in toxicokinetics between the preferred species and humans, to clarify ambiguous results or further study observed effects). The test substances are administered by the relevant route to groups of animals (the number of animals per group must be sufficient to yield about 20 pregnant animals at or near term). The chemical is administered over at least one spermatogenic cycle and during the last stages of oocyte maturation before the parent generation animals are mated. The exposure of the females is continued throughout the mating period and gestation, up to weaning of the last generation. At least three treatment groups and a control group (that is, untreated or treated with vehicle in the highest dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Exposure Period</th>
<th>Endpoints in Offspring</th>
<th>Animal Species Normally Used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One-, two-, or multigeneration studies</td>
<td>Continuously over one, two, or several generations</td>
<td>Growth, development, and viability Histopathology of sex organs, brain, and target organs Fertility Proposal: estrus cyclicity and sperm quality</td>
<td>Rat and mouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prenatal developmental toxicity study (teratogenicity study)</td>
<td>Usually during organogenesis Proposal: from implantation to the day before birth</td>
<td>Resorptions Fetal growth Morphological variations and malformations</td>
<td>Rat, mouse, and rabbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Developmental neurotoxicity study (behavioral teratology studies)</td>
<td>During pregnancy and lactation</td>
<td>Birth and pregnancy length Physical and functional maturation Behavioral changes caused by central and peripheral nervous system effects Brain weights and neuropathology</td>
<td>Rat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reproductive or developmental toxicity screening test</td>
<td>At least three dose levels from 2 weeks before mating until day 4 postnatally</td>
<td>Fertility Pregnancy length and birth Fetal and pup growth and survival until day 3</td>
<td>Rat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
used) should be used. Ideally, unless limited by the physicochemical nature or biological effects of the test substance, the highest dose level should induce toxicity but not mortality in the parental animals. The low dose should ideally not induce any observable adverse effects on the parents or offspring.

The animals are observed daily for clinical changes. Body weight is recorded weekly for the parent animals and for offspring; offspring weight is normally recorded at birth, on days 4, 7, and 14 after birth, at weaning, and every week thereafter. Pregnancy rate, duration of pregnancy, number of pups per litter, number of live and dead pups, number of pups with anomalies, and, if necessary, histological examinations of dead or killed animals. The numbers of live pups on day 4 and at weaning are recorded, and the following indices are often calculated:

- Mating index: copulation/estrus cycles required
- Fecundity index: pregnancies/copulations
- Male fertility index: males impregnating females/males exposed to fertile nonpregnant females
- Female fertility index: females conceiving/females exposed to fertile males
- Incidence of parturition: parturitions/pregnancies
- Live birth index: viable pups born/pups born
- Survival index for 24 h, 4 d, 12 d, and 21 d

The number of litters per female per generation varies in the different guidelines from one to two.

Birth weight and postnatal growth are recorded but it is important in the evaluation of the data to consider variations due to different litter sizes or different sex distribution in the litters. A change in offspring body weight is a sensitive indicator of developmental toxicity, in part because it is a continuous variable. In some cases, weight reduction in offspring may be the only indicator of developmental toxicity in a generation study. Although there is always a question remaining as to whether weight reduction is a permanent or transitory effect, little is known about the long-term consequences of short-term fetal or neonatal weight changes. Therefore, weight reduction should be used to establish the NOAEL.

In the recently adopted test guideline for a two-generation reproductive toxicity study, the assessment of effects on sperm quality and estrus cyclicity in offspring has been included in the guideline. In addition, the assessment of the offspring has been improved compared with the case in the earlier version. For example, the recent guideline includes the recording of developmental milestones, including some behavioral parameters and the histopathology of sex organs, brain, and identified target organs.

The one-generation study, and especially the two- and multigeneration studies, include exposure of both sexes during all stages of reproduction, and in that sense these studies are unique. The two- and multigeneration studies are, together with the Test for Developmental Neurotoxicity, the only toxicological tests for rodents that cover the early period of the development of the individual, from the time of weaning up to about the age of 5 to 6 weeks, at which time exposure in repeated toxicity tests normally starts. Thus, these tests allow the assessment of all endpoints, provided that the parameters used are sufficiently sensitive. However, these tests are labor intensive, and there are many in the field who claim that the guidelines for these tests demand too many parameters, which could interfere with the validity of the data. Others claim that there should be more parameters. Altogether, the guidelines for these reproductive tests still have to undergo some revision, such as introduction of new parameters and refinement or replacement of some of those already in. Endpoints such as neonatal death and malformations constitute a specific problem because the commonly used laboratory animals may eat dead or seriously malformed pups immediately after birth. An effect may, therefore, only be indicated indirectly, by a smaller litter size. If only a few pups were malformed or dead, the reduction in litter size will be small compared with the normal variation in litter size and may therefore go undetected or not reach statistical significance. Preimplantation
losses and resorptions are indicated in an indirect way in the form of a decreased litter size, and the sensitivity for these effects may be rather low.

Fertility assessment by continuous breeding has been used to study the depletion of oocytes from the ovary in mice exposed to procarbazine. In this study, prenatally treated mice were continuously housed with untreated male mice, and the cumulative number of offspring was measured by removing the female when it was noticeably pregnant and then returning the female to the male’s cage immediately after delivery to establish a pattern of forced repetitive breeding.

The teratology study is the in vivo method for studying embryo–fetal toxicity as a consequence of exposure during pregnancy (e.g., growth retardation, anatomical variations, teratogenicity, and lethality). Various international organizations and countries have drafted guidelines for these tests. These guidelines have a number of common requirements. The preferred species include rodents (e.g., the rat and mouse) and non-rodents (e.g., the rabbit). Other species may be used if relevant (e.g., in case of differences in toxicokinetics between the preferred species and humans, in order to clarify ambiguous results or further study observed effects).

Young mature virgin females are artificially inseminated or mated with males. The time of mating is established by observation of the mating (e.g., in rabbits), by identification of a plug (mixture of sperm and cellular material from the vagina in rats and mice), by analysis of a vaginal smear (in rats), or by noting the time of insemination (e.g., in pigs and rabbits). Normally, three dose levels and a control group (untreated or vehicle control; the group size is 20 pregnant animals for rats and mice and 12 for the rabbit) are used to establish a dose–effect relationship. The pregnant female rats are exposed at least during the period of organogenesis, that is, between day 6, when implantation occurs, and day 15. (The corresponding periods for mice and rabbits are days 6–15 and days 6–18, respectively). This period has been found to be the most sensitive to the induction of structural, anatomical malformations (the corresponding sensitive period for humans is between the 18th and 60th day of pregnancy). Days 6 through 15 are the indicated dosing period for pregnant rats. However, this may vary, depending on the substance administered or on whether the effect on a specific organ is to be studied.

The animals are observed daily for clinical changes. Body weight is recorded, and food consumption is recorded throughout the gestation. The uterus is removed by cesarian section, and the uterus and the fetuses are examined the day before anticipated birth. (The dam is examined macroscopically for any structural abnormalities or pathological changes that may have influenced the pregnancy). If dosing is initiated before or at the time of implantation, the preimplantation loss (i.e., the number of embryos lost before implantation) is evaluated.

The total number of implantations, including living embryos, dead embryos, and resorption (embryos that die early and are reassimilated, corresponding to early abortions in humans) is noted. The degree of resorption (i.e., the extent to which the embryo has been resorbed) is recorded to establish the time of death of the embryo during the pregnancy.

The fetuses are sexed, weighed, and examined for gross malformations. Retarded growth and effects on visceral and skeletal development are evaluated, including the degree of ossification of the bones.

The teratology test was designed to detect malformations. In the past, there was a tendency to consider only malformations, or malformations and death as relevant endpoints in teratology studies. Today it is assumed that all four manifestations of developmental toxicity (death, structural abnormalities, growth alterations, and functional deficits) are of concern. As a consequence, the name of the test in the recently adopted version has been changed to “Prenatal Developmental Toxicity Study” and the exposure period has been extended to the day before birth.

The sensitivity of the test for detection of rare events such as malformations is limited because of the relatively small number of animals used. With the normal group sizes of 20 pregnant rats, it is not possible to identify any increase in major malformations unless high dose levels are administered or the substance studied is highly toxic to the embryo or fetus. To assess the developmental toxicity of a chemical, it is therefore important to include information on other
developmental effects such as minor anomalies, variations, and fetal death and growth. In addition, malformations of organs developing after the period of major organogenesis, such as the sex organs and the brain, may at present not be detected in the teratology study. An example is the suspected endocrine disrupter dibutylphthalate, for which exposure during the period of male sexual differentiation resulted in major disturbances in the morphological and functional development of the male reproductive system. Consequently, in the updated OECD Guideline, the dosing period has been extended to cover at least the period from implantation to 1 d before the day of scheduled kill, which is 1 d before the expected day of delivery. In the paragraph of the Guideline titled “Principle of the Test,” it is stated that, if appropriate, the dosing period should cover the entire period of gestation to the day of scheduled kill, to include the examination of effects from the preimplantation period.

Teratology studies are very suitable for the demonstration of intrauterine death after implantation (resorptions). In studies in which dosing starts before implantation, preimplantation loss may also be assessed.

Fetal weight can be assessed rather exactly in a teratology study, but it is important to include variations due to different litter sizes or sex distribution in control vs. exposed groups in the analysis.

**Developmental Neurotoxicity Studies**

Prenatal exposure to chemicals may lead to a range of functional disturbances in the offspring. A number of chemicals are known to produce developmentally neurotoxic effects in humans and other species. For example, lead and methylmercury affect brain development, but effects on fertility, the immune system, metabolism of foreign substances, and development as a whole have also been observed.

A guideline for developmental neurotoxicity studies was issued by the U.S. EPA in 1991, and a revised U.S. guideline was proposed in 1995. During recent years, a proposal for OECD TG 426 Developmental Neurotoxicity Study has been developed based on the U.S. guideline.

Developmental neurotoxicity studies are designed to develop data on the potential functional and morphological hazards to the nervous system arising in the offspring from exposure of the mother during pregnancy and lactation. These studies identify changes in behavior caused by effects on the central nervous system and the peripheral nervous system. As behavior is affected by the function of other organs such as the liver, kidneys, and endocrine system, toxic effects on these organs in offspring may also be reflected in general changes in behavior. No single test is able to reflect the entire complex and intricate function of behavior. For testing behavior, therefore, a range of parameters, a test battery, is used to identify changes in individual functions.

The most-used animal species are the rat and the mouse. The early guidelines generally recommend groups of 20 animals, with dosing from day 15 of gestation to day 21 after gestation; that is, spanning fetogenesis and the entire lactation period. However, the recommended dosing period does not cover all events because the central nervous system is also susceptible to abnormal development during the period of organogenesis. Consequently, dosing is often started earlier, for example on day 1 or day 6 of the pregnancy. In the “Proposal for a New OECD Guideline 426,” the dosing period includes the entire gestation and lactation period. After birth, the number of progeny is recorded, and the litters are adjusted so that each contains the same number of pups. To determine whether the chemical substance tested affects the offspring directly (via the mother’s milk) or indirectly (either via a change in milk production or as a result of a change in the behavior of the exposed mothers), cross-fostering may be employed. Cross-fostering is a method in which litters from exposed mothers are reared by control mothers and vice versa.

Studies that intend to identify abnormal development are conducted on individual animals over short or long periods. In the rat, studies last until weaning, although this period does not cover the entire period of brain development because the brain does not attain an approximate adult stage until the age of 6 weeks, corresponding to 12 to 15 years of age in humans.
The evaluation of offspring consists of observations to detect gross neurological and behavioral abnormalities; assess physical development, reflex ontogeny, motor activity, motor and sensory function, and learning and memory; and evaluate brain weights and neuropathology during postnatal development and adulthood.

The methodology employed in behavioral teratology is described in several reviews. Behavioral teratology tests may generally be grouped into tests of physical development, simple reflexes, motor function, development of the senses, spontaneous activity, learning and memory, and functions of the neurotransmitter systems.

The “Proposal for a New OECD Guideline 426” is designed to be performed as a separate study. However, the observations and measurements can also be incorporated into, for example, a two-generation study.

The limitations mentioned in the section on generation studies concerning endpoints such as neonatal death, malformations, preimplantation loss, and resorptions also apply to developmental neurotoxicity studies.

The behavioral functions assessed cover many important aspects of the nervous system; however, some functions of relevance (e.g., endocrine disruption such as social interaction and mating behavior) are not included in the guidelines at present.

Other potentially relevant postnatal endpoints, such as kidney function, liver function, and immunotoxicity, are not included in these guidelines.

Screening Tests for Reproductive and Developmental Toxicity

Because the capacity for toxicity testing cannot keep up with the number of chemicals in modern society, there is an increasing demand for new toxicological tests of shorter duration, using fewer resources. Especially for “old” chemicals, for which the patent rights no longer exist, or for chemicals introduced into the market years ago, when no or only few toxicity data were required, it is essential to develop tools for obtaining data for safety assessment. In recent years, such new screening tests for reproductive and developmental toxicity have been developed. By definition, a screening test is limited in scope compared with a conventional test. Data from a screening test indicating possible toxic potential of a substance identify the substance as one of high priority for further evaluation.

Recently, the OECD introduced guidelines for screening tests for reproductive toxic effects, that is, the Reproduction/Developmental Toxicity Screening Tests, as part of the Screening Information Data Sets for high-production-volume chemicals: (1) the Reproduction/Developmental Toxicity Screening Test for initial information on the possible effect of a chemical on reproduction or development, and (2) the Combined Repeated Dose Toxicity Study with the Reproduction/Developmental Toxicity Screening Test, which is a combination of a 28-d toxicity study and Reproduction/Developmental Toxicity Screening Test (OECD TG 421 and OECD TG 422, respectively). Both test guidelines are designed for use with rats.

The general purpose of these tests is to generate preliminary information concerning the effects of a test substance on male and female reproductive performance such as gonadal function, mating behavior, conception, development of conceptus, and parturition. They are not suggested as alternatives to or replacements for the existing test guidelines for generation and teratology studies.

The dosing of the animals is initiated at least 2 weeks before mating and continued until the end of the study on postnatal day 4. The number of animals per group recommended is at least 10 of each sex, and this is expected to provide at least eight pregnant females per group. Effects on fertility and birth are registered. Live pups are counted and sexed, and litters are weighed on days 1 and 4 postpartum. The parameters include, among others, a detailed histological examination of the ovaries, testes, and epididymides of at least the highest-dosed and the control animals.
The test does not provide complete information on all aspects of reproduction and development. In particular, it offers only limited means of detecting postnatal manifestations of prenatal exposure or effect induced during postnatal exposure.

The value of a negative study is more limited than that of data from generation and teratology studies because of the lower number of animals per group, the shorter period of exposure, as well as the limited number of endpoints measured.

Another screening test, the in vivo Teratology Screening Test, has been proposed in which pregnant mice or rats are exposed to a test substance from day 8 to day 12 of pregnancy and the progeny are examined after birth. This test was introduced as an alternative method to the above-mentioned teratogenicity tests. The hypothesis underlying this test is that most prenatal effects do not just produce specific defects but also are manifested in the postnatal period as a lack of viability and reduced growth.

In the in vivo Teratology Screening Test, pregnant mice (rats can also be used) are exposed to a test substance from day 8 to day 12 of the pregnancy. One dose level is employed (the minimum toxic dose for the mother animal), together with a control group. The mother animals are weighed during the period of exposure. After birth, the litter is weighed on days 1 and 3. Stillborn young and young that die after birth are dissected and examined for defects. The test focuses on malformations as the endpoints of concern. Results from a validation study have shown that effects on offspring viability or body weight indicate a potential for teratogenic effects, that is, malformations. A test guideline for this test has not been established.

Neurotoxicity Study

Neurotoxicity studies are very complex in design because the nervous system constitutes the essential basis for several functions in the organism, and chemicals can affect the nervous system in many different ways. Consequently, as no single test can encompass all aspects of neurotoxicity, many individual tests exist, each developed to test for different specific functional deficits. Toxic effects on the nervous system will most often result in behavioral changes that can be detected with behavioral tests in laboratory animals. However, such changes in behavior could also be a consequence of systemic toxicity. Thus, it is crucial that evaluations of studies on neurotoxicity take into consideration the results of other toxicity studies. Furthermore, histopathological and hematological examinations as well as the analysis of biochemistry will add to one’s ability to differentiate whether the observed neurotoxicity is caused by a primary, direct effect on the nervous system or is a consequence of an indirect, secondary effect on the nervous system. Within the OECD program on guidelines for testing health effects of chemicals, the Neurotoxicity Study in Rodents has recently been adopted. In addition, as mentioned previously, both the developmental neurotoxicity studies and the repeated dose toxicity studies include parameters on neurotoxicity.

Genetic Toxicology Testing

The objective of genetic toxicology testing is to identify chemicals that induce mutations and conceivably may affect the incidence of heritable disease in humans. A mutation is a change in the information content of the genetic material that is propagated through subsequent generations of cells or individuals. Subsequently, it has been confirmed that many chemicals that produce cancer have mutagenic activity; and consequently, many of the tests are used to investigate chemicals for both mutagenic and possible carcinogenic activity. Genotoxic chemicals are those that exert their adverse effects through interaction with the genetic material of the cells (i.e., deoxyribonucleic acid [DNA]) by altering its structure, function, or both.

Many tests exist, including in vitro test systems, using both mammalian cells as well as bacterial and fungal cells. The test systems are subdivided into two major groups according to whether they
test for point or gene mutations or chromosomal aberrations (either structural or numerical), either in somatic or germ cells. Within the OECD program on guidelines for testing health effects of chemicals, there exists a third group of tests for DNA effects.

The *in vivo* tests constitute the essential basis for the classification and labeling of chemical substances for genotoxicity. In addition, the *in vivo* tests for genotoxicity are essential in the testing strategy for carcinogenicity because the prevailing number of substances that have an inherent potential to cause mutations *in vivo* also cause cancer in laboratory animals.

Chromosomal aberrations can be studied in bone marrow cells of rodents dosed with the test chemical, either by counting micronuclei in maturing erythrocytes (micronucleus test) or by analyzing chromosomes in metaphase cells from various tissues, that is, bone marrow, gonads, or peripheral lymphocytes.

Chromosomal aberrations can also be studied in the dominant lethal test by measuring changes in offspring from treated males. In the OECD test guideline Rodent Dominant Lethal Test, male animals are exposed to the test substance and mated with untreated virgin females. The various germ cell stages can be tested separately by the use of sequential mating intervals. The induction of dominant lethal effects causing embryonic or fetal death is evaluated. Dominant lethals are generally accepted to be the result of chromosomal aberrations (structural and numerical anomalies), but gene mutations and toxic effects cannot be excluded. The heritable translocation test (i.e., the Mouse Heritable Translocation Assay) is another example of a test for chromosomal aberrations (structural and numerical) in mammalian germ cells as recovered in the first-generation progeny.

Finally, the Mouse Spot Test should be mentioned. This test detects presumed somatic mutations in fetal cells after transplacental absorption of the chemical substance.

**Future Trends in the Use of Laboratory Animals in Regulatory Toxicology**

The use of laboratory animals in regulatory toxicology constitutes an essential part of the administration of chemical substances in society. Thus, data from these tests are required as a part of the law to identify toxic chemicals; in other words, to obtain information about the hazard as a consequence of exposure and the dose at which the effect occurs. Concerning information on mode of action, the required regulatory toxicity tests in general have some limitations. More information about mechanism of action causing the toxic effect will improve the interpretation of the data and, consequently, the evaluation of the implication of human exposure. Up until now, the testing for toxicity has predominantly focused on identifying an effect and determining a possible NOAEL. However, the recognition of the importance of the information on mode of action in the health assessment of human exposure to chemicals will gradually change the present, rather descriptive toxicological testing methodology toward a test program that includes more test methods on toxicodynamics. This development will imply the need for the development of new, more specific, more sophisticated test methods that use well-defined laboratory animal models. Such development will change the testing strategy and could eventually lead to a reduction in the use of laboratory animals in regulatory toxicology.

**REFERENCES**


35. Agersø, H., Pharmacokinetics and Tissue Penetration of Amoxycillin in Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae and Salmonella typhimurium Infected Pigs, Ph.D. thesis, Royal Veterinary and Agricultural University, Copenhagen, Denmark, 1996.
43. Mylchrest, E., Sar, M., Catley, R.C., and Foster, P.M.D., Disruption of androgen-related reproductive development by di(n-butyl)phthalate during late gestation in rats is different from flutamide, Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol., 156, 81, 1999.
RECOMMENDED READING


ICH, Harmonized Tripartite Guidelines: S5A: Detection of Toxicity to Reproduction for Medicinal Products; S5B: Reproductive Toxicology: Male Fertility Studies.


Recio, L., Transgenic animal models and their application in mechanistically based toxicology research, CIIT Activities, Chemical Industry Institute of Toxicology, 15, 1, 1995.


CHAPTER 3

Animal Models in Fetal Growth and Development

Anthony M. Carter

CONTENTS

Introduction ......................................................................................................................................42
Gene Expression during Development ............................................................................................42
  Gene Targeting and Transgenic Animals .................................................................................42
  Uniparental Disomy ..................................................................................................................43
  Conditional Gene Targeting .................................................................................................43
  Conditional Transgene Expression ..........................................................................................43
  Microarray Technology ........................................................................................................45
The Sheep as an Experimental Animal ........................................................................................45
  Breeding ..................................................................................................................................45
  Anesthesia ...............................................................................................................................45
  Surgery ....................................................................................................................................46
  Postoperative Care ................................................................................................................47
    Postoperative Feeding ........................................................................................................47
    Antibiotic Treatment .........................................................................................................47
    Checking and Handling of Catheters ..................................................................................47
  Zoonoses .................................................................................................................................48
  Instrumentation .......................................................................................................................48
  Catheters ................................................................................................................................48
    Umbilical Blood Vessels .......................................................................................................48
    Lower Body Blood Vessels .................................................................................................48
    Upper Body Blood Vessels .................................................................................................48
    Amniotic Cavity ..................................................................................................................48
    Maternal Blood Vessels .......................................................................................................49
  Electrodes ................................................................................................................................49
  Flow Probes ............................................................................................................................49
Models of Fetal Programming for Adult Disease .........................................................................49
  Fetal Growth Restriction in Sheep ..........................................................................................49
    Carunclectomy ....................................................................................................................49
    Hyperthermia ........................................................................................................................50
    Embolization of the Umbilical Circulation .........................................................................50
INTRODUCTION

Current research on fetal growth and development is focused on two lines of enquiry requiring quite different models. The first of these is the genetic control of growth. Research on this topic has been greatly advanced by gene targeting and transgene expression in the mouse, methods that are described elsewhere in this volume. This chapter focuses on two new tools: conditional gene targeting and expression and microarray technology.

The second focus of research is fetal programming of adult disease. It is now recognized that the developmental alterations associated with fetal growth restriction can have long-term consequences. Low weight at birth has been linked to an increased risk for adult-onset diseases, including hypertension, ischemic heart disease, and non-insulin-dependent diabetes. Much of the current work on the mechanisms underlying this process, termed fetal programming, is done in sheep. Indeed, since the pioneering work of Barcroft, Dawes, and others, the chronically instrumented, unstressed sheep fetus has been the model of choice in fetal physiology. Therefore, it will be described in some detail. Rodent models of intrauterine growth restriction are also useful in research on fetal programming, although there is a lack of consensus on the most appropriate models to supplement work in the sheep.

GENE EXPRESSION DURING DEVELOPMENT

With the advent of transgenic and gene-targeting methodologies to determine the biological roles of genes during development, the mouse has become an important experimental model.

Gene Targeting and Transgenic Animals

Conventional gene targeting results in knockout of the gene of interest and the resultant absence of the normal gene product. In brief, the procedures followed are as follows: construction of a gene-targeting vector, containing a mutation in the target gene; introduction of the targeting vector into embryonic stem cells; selection of cell clones that have undergone homologous recombination with the targeting vector; and production of embryonic stem cell–mouse chimeras. Finally, a breeding program is established to yield a transgenic line homozygous for the targeted gene.

The opposite and complementary approach is to cause overexpression of a native gene or expression of a foreign gene. Briefly, this requires construction of a transgene with a promoter and a reporter gene. After microinjection of the construct into an oocyte, the two-cell embryo is transferred to the uterus of a pseudopregnant mouse. A breeding and screening program then yields a transgenic line expressing the transgene under the chosen promoter. In general, the choice of promoters for transgenes has not favored studies of prenatal growth. As an example, expression of a human insulin-like growth factor (IGF) binding protein-1 under the mouse metallothionein promoter first occurs late in gestation. Therefore, models are required in which transgenes are expressed during fetal and placental development.
An intriguing finding from work with knockout and transgenic mice is that many genes are required for development, but only a small number control the rate of growth. Efstratiadis\(^7\) identified 20 growth control genes in mice, half of which were important for fetal growth. These included the genes coding for insulin, IGFs, their receptors, and the receptor substrates. The pathways controlling development of organ systems are presently being mapped. Examples are the genes controlling placental development\(^8\) and left–right patterning of the heart.\(^9\)

**Uniparental Disomy**

As many as 10% of all genes are subjected to parental imprinting, including several that are critical for fetal development. Thus, for the IGF-II gene (\(Igf2\)), the phenotype of the offspring is determined by the paternal allele, but the receptor phenotype (\(Igf2r\)) is determined by the maternal allele.\(^7\) Recently, another set of imprinted genes needed for normal development was found on mouse chromosome 12.\(^10\) The techniques required to investigate imprinted genes include the generation of embryos in which both chromosome sets are inherited from one parent,\(^11\) or of chromosomally balanced conceptuses in which specific chromosomes are derived from the same parent.\(^12\)

**Conditional Gene Targeting**

Global gene knockout frequently leads to severe abnormalities that cause the embryo to die. This curtails the experiment and precludes further study of the gene. A more useful approach is to block expression of the gene in a single tissue. Tissue-specific gene activation and inactivation is now possible using the Cre recombinase-lox P (Cre-loxP) system.\(^13\)

Cre recombinase is an enzyme of bacteriophage origin that catalyzes recombination between two of its recognition sites, called loxP. Insertion of loxP sites into a gene can usually, although not inevitably, be achieved without affecting gene expression. Excision of the region flanked by the loxP sites (floxed) will occur only upon expression of Cre recombinase, which can be driven by a tissue-specific promoter. This is called *conditional knockout*.

The simplest strategy is to cross a loxP provider and a Cre-expressing transgenic line (Figure 3.1). One set of procedures is needed to make the floxed gene and to establish a transgenic line homozygous for the gene. Another series of procedures establishes a Cre recombinase driven by a promoter expressed in the tissue of interest. For studies of fetal development,\(^1\) promoters might include the \(\alpha\)-fetoprotein promoter for fetal liver; the \(tie-1\) promoter for fetal vessel endothelium; or the \(4311\) promoter for placental spongiotrophoblast. Here, too, a breeding and screening program is needed to establish a transgenic line expressing Cre recombinase under the chosen promoter. Only then is it possible to do the experiment properly, by crossing the floxed-targeted line with the transgenic line expressing Cre recombinase under the desired promoter. The result should be tissue-specific knockout of the gene in question. Each of these procedures demands considerable time and resources. For some applications, it might be possible to use established Cre transgenic lines (listed at http://www.mshri.on.ca/nagy/Cre-pub.html). An excellent survey of the techniques for producing floxed genes, further applications of the Cre-loxP system, and details of the complementary Flp recombinase system are given by Nagy.\(^13\)

**Conditional Transgene Expression**

A complementary technology allows the reversible overexpression of a transgene. As with the Cre-loxP system, it requires the generation of two transgenic strains. In one strain, the transgene of interest is under the control of the tetO-CMV promoter. The other strain expresses a hybrid molecule, termed the *tetracycline transcriptional activator*, under a promoter that confers tissue specificity. Crossing the two lines generates some progeny with both transgenes. In these, the gene
Figure 3.1  Strategy for conditional knockout of a target gene in fetal or placental tissues. Left: An essential exon of the wild-type gene (exon 2) is flanked with loxP sites by gene replacement. A neomycin resistance cassette (Neo) equipped with a third loxP site is co-introduced. The construct is then inserted into embryonic stem cells by electroporation. Stem cells with homologous recombination are selected and grown. These cells are transfected with a weak Cre recombinase, with three possible results: total excision of exon 2 and the Neo cassette; excision of exon 2; and excision of the Neo cassette. The latter cells are aggregated with a blastocyst, which is transferred to the uterus of a pseudopregnant mouse. Finally, a breeding program to establish germ line transmission yields a transgenic line homozygous for the floxed gene. Tissue-specific deletion of exon 2 can then be achieved by crossing with a transgenic line expressing Cre recombinase under the chosen promoter. Right: The Cre recombinase gene is linked to a promoter, for example, α-fetoprotein promoter for fetal liver; the tie-1 promoter for fetal vessel endothelium; or the 4311 promoter for spongiotrophoblast. After microinjection of the construct into an oocyte, the two-cell embryo is transferred to the uterus of a pseudopregnant mouse. A breeding and screening program yields a transgenic line expressing Cre recombinase under the chosen promoter. (From Han, V.K.M. and Carter, A.M., Curr. Opin. Pharmacol., 1, 632, 2001. With permission.)
of interest can be turned off and on by administration or withdrawal of tetracycline analogs such as doxycycline.\textsuperscript{14}

**Microarray Technology**

As part of the spin-off from the human genome project, there are now sophisticated tools that allow examination of a large number of genes in a single sample. An example is a study that identified more than 15,000 genes expressed during mouse development.\textsuperscript{15} The authors constructed a microarray with cDNA sequences for all 15,000 genes, spotted onto nylon membranes. They then applied the technique to compare differences in expression profiles by the mouse embryo and mouse placenta at embryonic day 12.5. In this way, they were able to identify 289 genes that were more highly expressed in the placenta than in the embryo and 61 genes that were placenta specific. In this one experiment, the number of genes highly expressed in placenta was increased fivefold over those previously known. Potential applications of microarray technology include detecting genes that change expression during embryonic or placental development and identifying downstream target genes in transgenic and targeted mice.

**THE SHEEP AS AN EXPERIMENTAL ANIMAL**

The sheep is the most widely accepted model in fetal physiology. Much of the pioneering work was done with the ewe anesthetized and the fetus exteriorized.\textsuperscript{3,4} However, study of the chronically instrumented sheep fetus is now the norm. It is possible to perform sophisticated experiments in the unstressed fetus, as exemplified by studies of left ventricular function (Figure 3.2).

**Breeding**

Fetal physiologists are dependent on a steady supply of time-dated pregnant sheep, and most maintain their own flock or make arrangements with a local farm. There are several excellent texts on sheep husbandry\textsuperscript{16} and the management of experimental sheep.\textsuperscript{17} To ensure a constant supply of pregnant sheep throughout the spring, ewes are introduced to the ram from late September (Northern hemisphere) and for the next 3 to 4 months. A harness containing a colored crayon is strapped to the ram’s chest, so that when a ewe is tupped, her fleece is marked. The flock is inspected once a day to note which ewes have been freshly tupped.\textsuperscript{4} The estrous cycle is 16 to 17 d in sheep, so most ewes will be tupped during the first 2 weeks after they have been introduced to the ram. Vaginal sponges impregnated with medroxyprogesterone acetate are often used to synchronize estrus. They are kept in for 2 weeks, and mating occurs about 40 h after the sponge has been removed.\textsuperscript{17} Some sheep have a second, shorter breeding season that enables work to be resumed in the autumn. To obtain pregnancies out of season, hormone treatment is necessary, possibly in conjunction with artificial alteration of the daylight pattern.\textsuperscript{18}

**Anesthesia**

Animals should be shorn and acclimatized to the laboratory environment for several days before surgery. The ewe must be fasted for 24 h to avoid rumen distention during surgery (bloat), but the animal should not be deprived of water. General anesthesia of the ewe and fetus can be maintained with 1 to 2% halothane in 40% N\textsubscript{2}O and 60% O\textsubscript{2} (v/v). A respirator should be coupled to the anesthetic system to assist and control ventilation. To enable insertion of an endotracheal tube, anesthesia can be induced with intravenous sodium thiopental. Some authors favor the use of halothane alone and induce anesthesia with halothane administered by mask.\textsuperscript{19} Alternatively, surgery can be performed under epidural anesthesia with 1% (w/v) tetracaine hydrochloride, supplemented
with intravenous ketamine for sedation and a local anesthetic for fetal skin incisions. Dissociative anesthesia induced and maintained by a continuous intravenous infusion of ketamine is a further possibility.

**Surgery**

A complete surgical scrub of the animal should be done, and all surgical procedures should be carried out under stringent aseptic conditions. The abdomen is opened by midline incision. A trochar is introduced to make a stab wound through the flank, and catheters and leads are threaded through the trochar sheath. Electrocautery is recommended for incisions in the uterus and fetal
skin. The myometrium and endometrium are incised in an area free of cotyledons. The membranes are then cut, and the cut edges are fixed to the uterine wall with Babcock clamps. If the procedure requires delivery of the fetal head or trunk for surgery, an assistant should suspend the uterus by the clamps to minimize loss of amniotic fluid. The Babcock clamps can then be adjusted to attach the uterus and membranes to the fetal skin. Once surgery has been completed, the hysterotomy is closed with a continuous overlay, taking care to pick up the chorionic and amniotic membranes. This is followed by a continuous Lembert suture to appose the serosal tissue and ensure strong healing without adhesion. The abdominal wall is closed with a continuous suture, followed by single sutures to provide additional support. The skin is closed with single sutures or wound clips, and the stab wound with a purse-string suture through the skin. Maternal catheters may be tunneled subcutaneously to exit through this or a separate stab wound.

**Postoperative Care**

Animals should be housed individually, and we favor using the recovery period to accustom the ewe to the metabolic cage or cart in which the studies will be performed. Four points deserve attention when maintaining the chronically instrumented fetus: 19 (1) the encouragement of proper postoperative feeding and provision of excellent animal care; (2) antibiotic treatment; (3) daily checking and flushing of catheters; and (4) sterile handling of catheters, stopcocks, and flushing solutions.

**Postoperative Feeding**

To lessen the risk of maternal ketoacidosis, the ewe should be encouraged to stand and eat as soon as possible after surgery. Most animals start to eat before they can stand. A careful record should be kept to ascertain that the ewe continues to eat, drink, urinate, and defecate. Animals that refuse food may be in pain and should be given an analgesic such as flunixin. If feeding is discontinued for more than 24 h, sodium propionate can be given by mouth to counteract the development of ketoacidosis and atonia of the rumen. Failure to defecate may indicate painful postsurgical complications, such as torsion of the small intestine, and immediate euthanasia should be considered in such cases.

**Antibiotic Treatment**

Antibiotic coverage should be given on the day of surgery and for the next 3 d. We give a combination of streptomycin and penicillin to the ewe as an intramuscular injection and administer an antibiotic to the fetus through the amniotic and venous lines. Many investigators consider it unnecessary to give antibiotics by the intravenous route, as the fetus ingests amniotic fluid and can absorb antibiotics through the gut. If fetuses are lost because of infection, the organisms responsible should be identified to ensure the adequacy of the current antibiotic treatment.

**Checking and Handling of Catheters**

The exteriorized end of the catheters can be closed with sterile plastic stopcocks and stored in plastic bags or in a cloth pouch stitched to the flank of the ewe. Alternatively, the tip of each catheter can be sealed with a metal pin during storage. Sterile handling of catheters and stopcocks is essential. Catheters should be flushed daily with heparinized saline solution. It is advisable first to withdraw blood from the catheter, thereby removing any clots that it may contain. Blood samples should be taken from maternal and fetal arterial catheters to assess blood gas status and acid–base balance. Values should be corrected to body temperature, normally 39°C for the ewe and 39.5°C for the fetus.
Maternal and fetal blood gases, pH, arterial blood pressure, and heart rate are usually stable within 48 h of surgery. However, other physiological functions take longer to stabilize, and a recovery period of at least 5 d is recommended.

**Zoonoses**

Animal care personnel should be acquainted with the common symptoms of disease, and all personnel should be aware of the risk of zoonotic infection. Several outbreaks of Q fever have been associated with the use of sheep in perinatal research. The birth fluids and placentas of infected sheep contain enormous amounts of *Coxiella burnetii*, and there is massive contamination of the environment at the time of parturition.

**Instrumentation**

**Catheters**

The most common catheter materials are polyvinyl and silastic tubing. To avoid kinking, a composite catheter is often used, in which the inner polyvinyl catheter is protected for most of its length by an outer catheter of polyvinyl or polyethylene. Catheters should be color coded to facilitate identification.

**Umbilical Blood Vessels**

The umbilical vessels send branches across the chorioallantoic sac to supply 40 to 100 discrete cotyledons. To catheterize them, a small incision is made in the uterus, chorion, and amnion and the membranes pulled out until umbilical vessels of about 1 mm diameter are encountered. A fine catheter is inserted into the vessel and advanced into the main umbilical artery or vein. To ensure that the catheter is threaded in the right direction, it is advisable first to search for a sizeable vessel, then to find a tributary and catheterize that.

**Lower Body Blood Vessels**

The descending aorta and inferior vena cava can be accessed from the corresponding femoral vessels. A useful alternative, requiring less exposure of the fetus, is to insert the catheters through the pedal artery and vein. The vein should be approached from the outside of the foot, where it is quite superficial. The artery lies deeper, close to the bone, and is accompanied by one or two veins. The length of catheter required for the tip to reside in the descending aorta or caudal vena cava equals the length of the foot at all gestational ages.

**Upper Body Blood Vessels**

Preaductal aortic blood can be obtained from a catheter advanced from a radial artery into the brachiocephalic artery or ascending aorta, and a catheter can be advanced from a forelimb vein into the superior vena cava. The carotid artery and jugular vein may be catheterized after exposure of the head and neck. However, they can be accessed through a small uterine incision made directly above the vessels of the fetal neck.

**Amniotic Cavity**

An amniotic catheter is a useful route for administration of antibiotics. Moreover, registration of amniotic fluid pressure provides an essential reference for fetal arterial blood pressure, especially
when measured by an external transducer, because the posture of the ewe is constantly changing. To ensure patency of this catheter, it should be provided with multiple side holes, and the tip should be protected by a length of outer tubing with side holes.

**Maternal Blood Vessels**

Catheters can be placed in the femoral vessels or in a pedal artery and vein\(^27\) and advanced to the maternal descending aorta and inferior vena cava.

**Electrodes**

The leads for recording or stimulating electrodes are usually made from Teflon-coated stainless steel wire, which conducts current between points at which the coating has been scraped away. Sets of leads, two for recording and one for reference, can usefully be assembled in a length of polyvinyl tubing. Leads may be sewn to the fetal sternum, nuchal muscle, and uterine wall, respectively, to record fetal electrocardiogram, muscle tone, and uterine electromyogram. To record the fetal electrocorticogram, electrodes are implanted biparietally on the dura through burr holes made with a dental drill. Electro-ocular recordings are obtained from electrodes implanted through the orbital ridge of the zygomatic bone.\(^{30}\)

**Flow Probes**

To measure ventricular output, a cuff-type electromagnetic flow transducer can be placed around the main pulmonary trunk, ascending aorta, or both vessels. These procedures require thoracotomy, which is performed in the third intercostal space.\(^{31}\) Electromagnetic flow transducers may also be applied to the inferior and superior venae cavae and the intra-abdominal portion of the umbilical vein.\(^{32}\) A transit-time ultrasonic flow probe has been used to measure blood flow in the umbilical artery of the sheep fetus.\(^{33}\)

**MODELS OF FETAL PROGRAMMING FOR ADULT DISEASE**

Low weight at birth has been linked to an increased risk for adult-onset diseases, including hypertension, ischemic heart disease, and non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. The pioneering work in this field was epidemiological.\(^2\) It led to the concept of fetal programming for adult disease — the idea that fetal development has important implications for adult health.

The mechanisms whereby fetal adaptations to a poor intrauterine environment predispose to adult hypertension and diabetes are as yet unknown. Therefore, much current research is aimed at understanding the link between fetal responses to hypoxia and poor nutrition and the subsequent development of high blood pressure and impaired glucose tolerance. There are several animal models of fetal growth restriction\(^34\) that may prove useful in exploring these relationships.

**Fetal Growth Restriction in Sheep**

**Carunclectomy**

The sheep placenta is comprised of 40 to 100 discrete cotyledons; the fetal villi develop in apposition to the endometrial caruncles, which are present in the uterus of the nonpregnant ewe. The number of cotyledons formed can be reduced by excising most of the caruncles before tupping. This procedure (carunclectomy) results in the birth of small lambs\(^35\) and has been used recently to study endocrine responses of growth-restricted fetuses.\(^36\)
Hyperthermia

Maintenance of ewes in a hyperthermic environment (40°C for 12 h and 35°C for 12 h) during the period of maximal placental growth caused a reduction in fetal weight at midgestation. This was linked to placental insufficiency, reflected in reduced concentrations of progesterone and ovine placental lactogen in maternal blood. Control ewes were kept in a thermoneutral environment and fed the same amount as that consumed by the hyperthermic animals. It is important to take loss of appetite into account in any experiment that exposes the animal to stress.

Embolization of the Umbilical Circulation

Techniques that restrict fetal growth late in gestation may be more relevant to studies of type 2 human fetal growth restriction. One such model depends on reducing fetal placental blood flow by embolization. It is possible to cause a 33% reduction in fetal placental blood flow by repeated injection of large numbers of microspheres into the umbilical circulation. Over a period of 9 d, this can cause a 20% reduction in fetal weight. An attractive feature of this model is the increase in placental resistance and resultant alteration in the umbilical artery flow velocity profile, which is an early feature of human fetal growth restriction. This model has been used to explore the cardiovascular and endocrine responses of the growth-restricted fetus.

Dietary Restriction

Maternal undernutrition during pregnancy commonly leads to low birth weight, whether the restriction is of calories or protein, or both. However, some organs are more susceptible to dietary restriction early in gestation, and others, at later stages. To explore the interaction of undernutrition and gestational age, at least four groups of animals are needed. Using this approach, it was shown that periconceptual undernutrition could reprogram the fetal IGF axis, with the result that the responses of IGF-1 and the IGF-binding proteins to undernutrition in late gestation were markedly altered.

A recent study using an adolescent sheep model demonstrated that nutrient partitioning between mother and fetus can be dramatically altered in young growing females. Thus, overnutrition of the adolescent dams promoted rapid maternal growth throughout pregnancy but resulted in a major restriction in placental mass and led to a significant decrease in birth weight relative to moderately fed adolescents of equivalent age.

It is worth noting that a moderate reduction (15%) in maternal nutritional intake over the first 70 d of gestation was sufficient to alter fetal cardiovascular development, lowering the blood pressure of the fetus and resetting its baroreflex control mechanisms. Fetal size was not affected. The inference is that fetal programming can occur without a change in growth rate.

Glucocorticoid Exposure

Many physiologists believe that glucocorticoids play a pivotal role in fetal programming. In sheep, fetal exposure to dexamethasone for 2 d, very early in gestation, was sufficient to trigger hypertension in the lambs. They continued to have high blood pressure after they had grown into adults, up to at least 5 years of age. These animals did not develop insulin resistance, suggesting different timing for the programming of hypertension and altered sensitivity to insulin.

Some of the programming effects of prenatal glucocorticoid exposure may be independent of a reduction in fetal growth. In another carefully controlled study, fetal growth restriction occurred when betamethasone was given to the mother but not when betamethasone was given directly to the fetus. However, glucose homeostasis in the lambs was affected by betamethasone administration both to the mother and to the fetus.
To fully understand the link between low birth weight and adult-onset diseases, account must be taken of both the factors that control fetal growth and those that impact on organ systems critical to blood pressure control and glucose homeostasis. Thus, even if glucocorticoids do play a central role in fetal programming, there must necessarily be interaction with the IGF system. Indeed, the IGF system and the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis likely are equally important in this context.¹

**Fetal Growth Restriction in Rodents**

**Dietary Restriction**

There are several rodent models of fetal growth restriction based on dietary restriction during pregnancy. As an example, when pregnant rats were fed a diet containing only 6% protein, compared with 20% in the controls, the newborn pups had a low birth weight. They did show catch-up growth postnatally. However, the number of glomeruli in the kidney was reduced in male and female rats examined at 8 weeks of age. These rats became hypertensive by 8 weeks of age, and their blood pressure continued to rise in the succeeding months.⁴⁸ It seemed as if this reflected hemodynamic adaptations to maintain renal function despite reduced nephrogenesis.

A dietary restriction model has been validated for the guinea pig in which females are fed 70% of the ad libitum intake of a control group from 4 weeks before conception until day 34 of gestation, then 90% until day 60 (term is 67 d).⁴⁹

**Uterine Artery Ligation**

In rodents, the placentae of each uterine horn are supplied from an arterial arcade formed by the uterine and ovarian arteries. If the uterine artery is ligated during gestation, the ovarian artery is able to maintain a viable pregnancy. However, placental blood flow is reduced, resulting in fetal growth restriction. This was first demonstrated for the rat⁵⁰ and later applied to the guinea pig.⁵¹ Fetal body weight is reduced by about 40% in guinea pigs, but with brain sparing and an increase in the ratio of brain weight to liver weight. This model has been well characterized in terms of fetal endocrine and cardiovascular responses.⁵²

**Hypoxic Hypoxia**

Approximately 140 million people live at high altitude (>2500 m), most of them in developing countries. These populations have an increased incidence of fetal growth restriction and preeclampsia, resulting in a high maternal and infant mortality that poses a major public health problem.⁵³ Therefore, the link between hypoxic hypoxia and poor fetal growth at high altitude needs to be explored. High-altitude hypoxia can be simulated in guinea pigs by keeping them in a hypobaric chamber from day 6 of gestation onwards.⁵⁴

**PERSPECTIVES**

We are on the verge of understanding the sequence of genes and gene products that direct fetal development in the mouse. This knowledge will provide a basis for interpreting human data and may be especially useful in human stem cell research. With time, it may prove possible to integrate information on temporal and spatial patterns of expression at the mRNA and protein level from molecular studies. Currently, such studies often implicate a protein or group of proteins in a developmental process without furthering our understanding of their precise role.
The mouse is an unsatisfactory model for functional, physiological studies and will remain so even if advances in nanotechnology make it possible to study the mouse fetus in utero. This is because many events in human fetal development take place postnatally in rats and mice. In this respect, the sheep remains a better model. To bridge the gap between mouse, sheep, and human, however, it is worth considering the hystricomorph rodents as alternative models for fetal research. These animals, which include the guinea pig, give birth to precocial young with open eyes, a coat of fur, and full dentition. Some of the lesser-known South American species have large fetuses that should be easy to catheterize. Among these, the paca (Agouti paca), which weighs 5 to 10 kg and carries a single fetus with a birth weight of 640 to 900 g, deserves particular attention as a potential model of fetal growth and development.

REFERENCES


INTRODUCTION

A model, by definition, is a simplified representation of a complex system. Renal pathology and physiology are very complex systems, with complex interactions between major organ systems including the hematopoietic system, the skeletal system, and the cardiovascular system. Animal studies of kidney diseases provide simplified models of a large number of diseases and development, permitting examination of particular variables to better understand the pathogenesis of the disease in question and to evaluate potential treatment options. Animal models permit studies to be...
conducted in vivo under controlled conditions so that specific aspects of disease mechanisms and responses to treatment can be evaluated.²

The animal model can only be devised and applied to the level of understanding of the disease in question.³ As understanding of the system increases, new problems and potential mechanisms of action are recognized. Researchers need to explore and understand these actions to further refine their impressions of the pathogenesis and potential therapies. Therefore, models need to be refined and new applications created for extant models as the comprehension of mechanisms and treatment options grows. No model exactly replicates the human disease for which it is intended to mimic, and renal models are no different in this regard. The advantages and disadvantages of the model need to be considered when interpreting results.

Select models for several major renal diseases are discussed in this survey. Because of the complexity of this system, many models have been omitted; several other disease states have not even been considered. However, this chapter gives the reader an overview of potential modeling systems currently in use and briefly reviews some classic models.

MODELS OF GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

Chronic glomerulonephritis is one of the major causes of chronic renal failure in humans. Glomerular disease can be divided into primary and secondary glomerulonephritis. In primary glomerulonephritis, such as immunoglobin A (IgA) nephropathy, the kidney is the primary organ involved. In secondary glomerulonephritis, systemic disease such as diabetes mellitus or systemic lupus erythematosus involves the kidney as well as other organs.

A major mechanism of glomerular injury involves the deposition of antigen–antibody complexes, either in situ against the glomerular basement membrane or due to trapping of circulating immune complexes. These mechanisms are frequently exploited in studies using animal models to investigate glomerulonephritis.

Models of Primary Glomerulonephritis: IgA Nephropathy

IgA nephropathy (also known as Berger’s disease)⁴ is the most common form of glomerulonephritis in human patients. Patients have a wide spectrum of lesions, from minimal immune complex deposition in the mesangial matrix to terminal renal failure in up to 25% within 10 years.⁵ Chronic mesangial glomerulonephritis lesions are characterized by granular, electrodense deposits of IgA, along with C3, in the glomerular mesangium. Similar glomerular changes are seen in secondary glomerulonephropathies in Henoch–Schönlein purpura, cirrhotic liver diseases, and chronic inflammatory diseases of the lungs. Fifty to sixty percent of patients also have either or both IgG or IgM deposition, or both. Clinically, patients experience recurrent episodes of hematuria, particularly in association with infections of the upper or lower respiratory tract or other mucosa. In about half of patients, there is a microscopic hematuria that progresses to proteinuria.

IgA nephropathy is related to an abnormality of IgA production that is induced by antigenic stimulation of the mucosal immune system. Repeated or persistent antigenic stimulation then leads to overproduction of IgA; nephropathy results when there is extensive overproduction of IgA antibodies or there is a defect of clearance of IgA immune complexes by the mononuclear phagocytic system. Circulating immune complexes are trapped and deposited by the mesangial matrix or are formed in situ.

Because mild IgA deposits are found in the glomeruli of both humans and rodents without causing dysfunction,⁶⁷ it is reasoned that the deposits in glomerulonephritis cases have some nephritogenic properties. The deposition of complement C3 in these lesions may activate the membrane attack complex, resulting in glomerular disease.⁴⁸ Other research⁹ implicates secretory, or polymeric, IgA, as opposed to monomeric IgA, as being critical in the pathogenesis.
Rifai developed the first experimental animal model of IgA nephropathy in 1979. BALB/c mice were preimmunized with anti-dinitrophenol (DNP) IgA, then dosed with DNP-conjugated bovine serum albumin (DNP-BSA). Treated mice developed mesangial deposits of IgA, C3, and DNP-BSA, with focal areas of mesangial thickening. This model demonstrated the development of mesangial deposits from circulating immune complexes. The model mimics the condition seen in human patients, in whom there is an increase in the serum IgA and mesangial IgA deposits in a granular pattern, as well as IgA deposits in blood vessels of the muscles and skin.

A second model, developed by Isaacs et al. and Isaacs and Miller, used active immunization of CD1 and Swiss-Webster mice with bacterial-derived dextran to induce IgA immune complex formation. These mice developed mesangial granular IgA deposits, with C3 deposition in about half. In a related experiment, Lewis rats on a prolonged intravenous bacterial polysaccharide immunization protocol developed dose-dependent proteinuria and hematuria, without glomerular IgA deposition. These rats consistently recovered within 40 d after ceasing the polysaccharide administration.

Emancipator et al. demonstrated the role of mucosal IgA production in IgA nephropathy. BALB/c mice were orally immunized with ovalbumin, bovine gamma globulin, or horse spleen ferritin in drinking water over a 14-week period. An 8- to 16-fold increase in specific IgA antibody was detected in immunized mice, along with specific IgA antibody and antigen deposition in the glomerular mesangium. In other chronic oral immunization studies, rats were immunized over an 8-week period with bovine gamma globulin in the drinking water. In Wistar and Lewis rats, an IgA response is seen along with IgG (whereas in Sprague-Dawley and Fischer rats, the effect is in IgG only). Glomerular IgA and IgG deposits are proportional to the levels seen in the serum. Lewis rats display IgA/IgG along with C3, similar to the case of human patients with IgA nephropathy, as well as to the case of mice treated with a similar protocol. The treated Lewis rats have microhematuria but negligible azotemia or proteinuria. The glomeruli have more thromboxane and less prostaglandin E2 than is the case in controls, with a proportional decrease in glomerular filtration rate and renal plasma flow. Angiotensin antagonist treatment, an antagonist of glomerular contraction, increases the glomerular filtration rate. The clinical correlation between diminished glomerular filtration rate and the progression to glomerulosclerosis suggests that glomerular contraction plays an important role in the development of chronic renal failure in IgA nephropathy.

Alimentary antigens in the form of diet may play a role in influencing circulating IgA immune complement in IgA nephropathy patients. Gliadin is a component of gluten, and anti-gliadin IgA has been found in human patients. Patients on a gluten-free diet decreased circulating IgA immune complex but experienced further progression of renal failure. BALB/c mice fed gluten-containing diets, including standard chows, developed detectable levels of serum and glomerular anti-gliaden IgA. Mice given oral immunization with ovalbumin or gliadin developed a more intense IgA deposition. The role of environmental microbial contamination in susceptible patients was demonstrated by orally administering vomitoxin (a mycotoxin found in cereal grains contaminated with the fungus Fusarium graminearum) in food for 12 weeks to BALB/c and B6C3F1 mice. Vomitoxin in mice induces high serum IgA, IgA immune complex formation, and glomerular IgA deposition. Analogous to male predisposition to IgA nephropathy in humans, male B6C3F1 mice were more sensitive to the development of vomitoxin-induced nephropathy, demonstrating higher serum IgA, hematuria, and mesangial IgA and C3 deposition than female mice at similar doses. Mice injected with IgA antibodies induced by vomitoxin exposure also developed nephropathy.

A spontaneous model of IgA nephropathy is the Japanese ddY mouse. Mesangial proliferative glomerulonephritis, with deposition of IgA and C3, develops by 40 weeks of age. Increased levels of interleukin (IL)-6, either exogenous or overexpressed as a transgene, results in increased IgA synthesis and mesangial proliferative glomerulonephritis late in life. The antigen has an affinity for binding to mesangial structures, promoting immune complex deposition. There is a correlation...
between the degree of polymeric IgA and the severity of the lesions, as seen on histology. Selective breeding of ddY mice for high serum IgA has led to a strain (designated HIGA) with earlier onset of glomerular IgA deposition, by about 25 weeks of age.\textsuperscript{20,21} The RF/J strain, first reported in 1960 by Gude and Lupton,\textsuperscript{22} similarly develops glomerulonephritis at 8 to 12 months of age and likewise shows a correlation between the serum polymeric IgA and the development of glomerulosclerosis, as well as up-regulation of TGF-\(\beta\) in mesangial lesions.\textsuperscript{23}

A model described by Stad et al.\textsuperscript{6,24} allows insight into antigen-mediated targeting of the immune deposits to the mesangium in rats. Mesangial cells express Thy-1; a hapten-conjugated anti-Thy 1 monoclonal antibody thus binds to the mesangium. Injection of a hapten-specific polymeric IgA (p-IgA) in male Wistar rats results in glomerulonephritis with IgA and C3 deposition, as well as proteinuria. The proteinuria correlates with the amount of C3 expressed, implying a nephritogenic role for C3.

**Models of Primary Glomerulonephritis: Miscellaneous Models**

Preimmunization schemes, as well as administration of nephrotoxic agents, have been used to evaluate the role of oxidative stress in induced glomerular disease. Rodents preimmunized with bovine gamma globulin develop an immune complex glomerulonephritis,\textsuperscript{6,10,14,25} as described above. Rats injected with sheep anti-rat glomerular basement membrane (GBM) IgG likewise developed an anti-GBM nephritis;\textsuperscript{8,25} proteinuria was decreased when the rats were pretreated with catalase. Ito et al.\textsuperscript{26} produced a crescentic glomerulonephritis resembling rapidly progressing glomerulonephritis in humans using rabbit anti-rat GBM serum and rabbit gamma globulin in Freund’s Complete Adjuvant.

Puromycin aminonucleoside (PA) has been used for several years for production of experimental glomerulonephritis, due in part to its role in the production of oxygen free radicals. A single intravenous injection into Wistar and Sprague-Dawley rats produces proteinuria in 3 to 5 d.\textsuperscript{27–29} Histologic examination shows visible hyaline droplets in the glomeruli and proximal tubules, loss of the interdigitating foot processes, and focal and segmental glomerulosclerosis. Diamond et al.\textsuperscript{30} demonstrated the role of oxidative injury in this model by inducing nephrosis and administering oxygen free-radical scavengers to observe their protective effects.

A progressive glomerular injury model produces chronic aminonucleoside nephrosis analogous to minimal-change nephrotic syndrome.\textsuperscript{25} Sprague-Dawley rats are given intravenous injections of PA. Rats have a nephrotic syndrome for 2 to 3 weeks, then a period of remission. By 8 weeks after injection, the treated rats have a recurrent proteinuria, with glomerulosclerosis development by 18 weeks after injection. In a second model,\textsuperscript{25} weanling rats are placed for 4 weeks on a diet deficient in selenium and vitamin E. This produces a decrease in glutathione peroxidase activity, resulting in increased ammonia production and hypertrophy of the glomeruli and tubules.

Sheep have been shown to develop spontaneous glomerulonephritis. In the 1960s, 90% of sheep at an abattoir displayed an age-related proliferative glomerular nephritis with generalized or focal mesangial thickening, scarring of the glomerulus, and IgG and complement deposition on the glomerular capillary wall.\textsuperscript{31–33} Similar to the case of many human patients, these sheep were asymptomatic; many human cases are detected when proteinuria is found on urinalysis that is run for other reasons. In a flock of Finnish Landrace sheep, lambs born in successive lambings developed a rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis as well as central nervous system disease resembling human mesangiocapillary glomerulonephritis.\textsuperscript{32,34,35} Macroscopically, the kidneys were pale and enlarged. On microscopy, kidneys from affected lambs had membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis with crescent formation, with diffusely thickened capillary basement membranes and proliferation of mesangial cells. These lambs were found to be deficient in the C’3 component of complement. Renal failure occurred by 6 to 8 weeks of age.
Models of Secondary Glomerulonephritis: Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) is an autoimmune disease that induces B- and T-cell autoreactivity and dysfunction in multiple organ systems. Clinical complications of glomerulonephritis develop in 50 to 80% of SLE patients; 10 to 20% of patients suffer end-stage renal failure as a result of this disease. The spectrum of renal involvement runs the gamut from no lesions at all to proliferative and crescentic glomerulonephritis. Most patients develop proteinuria, Ig and complement in glomeruli, and immune aggregates in the mesangium, subendothelium, and glomerular capillary walls. Immune complex deposition may result from trapping of circulating immunoglobulins, binding of autoantibodies with antigens in the glomerulus, or direct binding of autoantibodies to intrinsic glomerular antigens.\(^2,36\) Animal models of SLE are used to study abnormalities in immunoregulation and to carry out prospective studies of glomerular changes. For instance, an increased glomerular procoagulant activator, or factor X activator, has been observed in mouse strains used as models of lupus nephritis (BXSB, MLR/lpr, and NZBxWF\(_1\)) but not in control mice (BALB/c) without disease.\(^37\) The factor X activator is localized to the glomerular mesangium and capillary walls, and is theorized to play a role in the pathogenesis of lupus nephritis. Because the factor X activator is only found in areas with glomerular disease, a hypothesis is that inflammatory cells within the lesions release cytokines that induce glomerular X factor expression.

New Zealand Black (NZB) and New Zealand Black × New Zealand White (NZB/NZW) F1 mice develop a spontaneous disease resembling human autoimmune hemolytic anemia and SLE with glomerulonephritis.\(^31,36\) Anti-erythrocyte autoantibodies are produced early in life; later, a membranous or proliferative glomerulonephritis, without renal function impairment, develops. (NZB/NZW) F1 mice tend to develop a pronounced, chronic glomerular disease with progressive renal failure, with mesangial proliferation, glomerulosclerosis, tubular atrophy, and interstitial inflammation. Signs of illness in female mice begin at approximately 6 months of age, and such mice typically die of end-stage renal failure. Fifty percent mortality is seen at 8.5 months of age, and 90% mortality at just over 1 year.\(^38\) In males, illness begins at just over 1 year of age, with 50% mortality at 15 months. As in human SLE, glomerular lesions form because of the deposition of immune complexes and complement. Because of its resemblance to the human disease, this model is frequently used to evaluate potential therapeutic regimens.

Another classic spontaneous model of SLE is the MRL lpr/lpr mouse.\(^4,39–41\) Mice that are homozygous for the lymphoproliferative (lpr) trait, because of a defect in the \textit{fas} gene, produce lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, and hypergammaglobulinemia. By 6 months of age, they have developed severe immune complex glomerulonephritis, with mesangial and endothelial cell proliferation, crescent formation, and tubulointerstitial nephritis and vasculitis. IgG and C3 deposition is present in the glomeruli. Mice die of end-stage renal failure by 9 months of age. The mouse model, however, does not exactly mirror SLE in that neither the Fas antigen mutation nor lymphoproliferation is part of the human disease.\(^39\)

Additional spontaneous models include MRL/1 mice, BXSB mice, and SCJ/Kj mice. MRL/1 and BXSB mice develop an inherited, spontaneous autoimmunity that resembles SLE, with circulating immune complexes, glomerulonephritis with C3, IgG, and immune complex deposition, and decreased IL-2 production.\(^42\) The MRL/1 mouse was derived mainly from LG/J mice, with AKR/J, C57BL/6, and C3H contributions.\(^43\) MRL/1 mice develop lupus-like signs at 3 to 4 months of age, with 50% mortality at just over 5 months, and 90% mortality by 7 months in females and by 9 months in males. The glomerulonephritis in these mice is of a subacute, proliferative form with IgG and C3 deposition.\(^38\)

BXSB mice were derived from a C57BL/6 and SB/Le (satin-beige) F1 cross, which was bred for coat color and then found to have lupus-like characteristics.\(^40,41,43\) Males are affected earlier and to a greater extent than females, possibly because of the effect of the \textit{yaa} gene on the male chromosome.\(^44\) Fifty percent of males die at 5 months, and 90% by 8 months; females become ill
at about 1 year of age, with 50% mortality at 15 months and 90% at 2 years. Death is due to an acute, proliferative glomerulonephritis with deposition of immune complexes. The spontaneous crescentic glomerulonephritis-forming mouse/Kinjoh strain (SCG/Kj) is an inbred strain derived from a (BXSB × MRL-lpr/lpr) F1 hybrid, selectively bred from parents with a high frequency of crescentic glomerulonephritis. The SCG/Kj mice develop an early onset of rapidly progressing crescentic glomerulonephritis and a necrotizing vasculitis of the small arteries and arterioles that affects multiple organs including the spleen, heart, uterus, and ovaries. These mice succumb to renal failure by 120 to 135 d of age. Renal lesions include hypertrophy of the glomerular epithelium, extraglomerular hemorrhage, and crescentic proliferation in Bowman’s space. Fine granular deposits of IgG, IgM, and C3 are found within the glomeruli, with deposition of IgG along the GBM.

Induced models of SLE can be created by using chemical, metal ion, or pharmacological agents to induce a systemic autoimmune response, including the induction of membranous glomerulonephropathy. As in humans, administration of agents such as procainamid, hydralazine, gold salts, or D-penicillamine to Brown Norway rats can induce a systemic lupus-like syndrome, including glomerulonephritis in some cases. Pristane (2,6,10,14-tetramethylpentadecane) intraperitoneal injection has been shown to induce a lupus-like disease in SJL and BALB/c mice as well as in many other inbred mouse strains. Treated mice develop lipogranulomas, with macrophages producing IL-6 and IL-10. Signs of lupus-like disease in these mice include the presence of characteristic autoantibodies (anti-Su, anti-U1NRP, and anti-Sm) within 6 months of injection. Arthritis, severe diffuse or segmental glomerulonephritis with immune complex deposition, and proteinuria, analogous to SLE-associated glomerulonephritis, are also seen.

A model of pauci-immune, anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA)-associated crescentic glomerulonephritis can be induced in Brown Norway rats. ANCA in human glomerulonephritis is directed toward myeloperoxidase (MPO), as well as proteinase 3, in the GBM. Rats are immunized with human MPO in Complete Freund’s Adjuvant. Subsequent unilateral perfusion of one kidney with a lysosomal extract containing MPO, along with proteinase 3 and elastase with hydrogen peroxide, results in proteinuria within 24 h and in a proliferative, necrotizing glomerulonephritis in the perfused kidney within 10 d; the unperfused kidney serves as a control. IgG and C3 could be detected in lesions 24 h after perfusion but waned by 10 d after perfusion. Lack of IgG in the glomerular lesions resembled those of pauci-immune ANCA-associated crescentic glomerulonephritis in humans. Ischemia/reperfusion injury during the perfusion process also contributed to the glomerular lesions. Kobayashi et al. obtained similar results using rabbit anti-rat MPO serum followed by nephrotoxic serum injection in Wistar rats. This model demonstrates the pathogenic role of MPO-ANCA in vasculitis and subsequent renal pathology. A similar experiment in spontaneous hypertensive rats by Yang et al. suggests the contribution of hypertension in aggravating the lesion, although the pathogenesis of the glomerulonephritis was attributed to immune deposition rather than ANCA.

Chronic graft versus host disease is a common induced model, produced by injecting parental donor (DBA/2) lymphocytes into (C57BL/10 × DBA/2) F1 mice. The incompatibility between donor and recipient produces a lupus-like disease resembling SLE, with autoantibodies directed against laminin-1 binding along the GBM. Upregulation of CD54 (intercellular adhesion molecule-1) parallels that seen in human biopsy specimens. CD54 upregulation is followed by nephrotoxic serum injection in Wistar rats. This model demonstrates the pathogenic role of MPO-ANCA in vasculitis and subsequent renal pathology. A similar experiment in spontaneous hypertensive rats by Yang et al. suggests the contribution of hypertension in aggravating the lesion, although the pathogenesis of the glomerulonephritis was attributed to immune deposition rather than ANCA.

Murine monoclonal autoantibodies administered to recipient mice induce dense subendothelial deposits (“wire loop lesions”) similar to the lesions of human SLE-associated nephritis. These mice
also display leukocyte infiltrate of the kidney, intraluminal thrombi, mesangial deposition of PAS-positive material, and glomerular and extraglomerular vascular wall deposition of fine granular material.  

Models of Secondary Glomerulonephritis: Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetic nephropathy is a common sequel of type 2 diabetes. Approximately 30% of patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus for 10 years or more develop renal complications. One hypothesis for this tendency toward developing renal disease is that glucose sensitizes the kidney to have an increased response to a secondary insult. Several models involving inherited diabetes mellitus are extant. Inheritance patterns and chromosomal intervals contributing to type 2 diabetes have been mapped in animal models. These models do develop kidney disease analogous to their human counterparts.

Goto Kakizaki (GK) rats, a non-obese strain, are genetically susceptible to type 2 diabetes and secondary glomerulonephritis. This strain is useful for the study of the effects of non-insulin-dependent diabetes without confounding factors such as hyperlipidemia or hypertension. The Goto Kakizaki strain was produced by selective breeding of a colony of nondiabetic Wistar rats with glucose intolerance. Hyperglycemia results in thickening of the GBM, glomerular hypertrophy, and early podocyte damage, but without renal hypertrophy, proteinuria, glomerulosclerosis, or interstitial fibrosis.

Spontaneous hypertensive rats develop hypertension, obesity, insulin resistance, and increased triglyceride levels. Renal disease begins at an early age, with proteinuria, progressive glomerulopathy, and tubular damage leading to uremia. On histology, the mesangium is widened and hypercellular; there is focal necrosis, hyalinization and collagen deposition, and arteriolar nephrosclerosis. Vascular glomerular lesions progress to glomerulosclerosis, fibrosis of the interstitium, and tubular atrophy.

In KK mice, a polygenic inbred strain, glucose intolerance begins as early as 2 to 5 months of age, with a blood glucose level approximately twice that of normal. These mice display increased urine production and proteinuria, which increases with the duration of the disease. Histological examination of the kidney reveals an increase in the mesangial matrix as well as hypercellularity, with nodules or accumulations beginning at the hilus and expanding segmentally. There is mesangial deposition of IgG and C3. Later in the disease, splitting of the basement membrane of capillary walls and spike formation is seen, similar to membranous glomerulopathy in humans.

Db/db (homozygous diabetic) mice develop severe diabetes due to a mutational inactivation of the leptin receptor gene (lpr). The phenotype includes obesity, insulin resistance, and diabetes, with secondary derangement of renal function and morphological changes. Proteinuria begins early, before evidence of renal lesions, which include extracellular matrix expansion. The pathogenesis of renal lesions may include a renal sensitivity to insulin in the face of a hyperinsulinemic state.

To show that glomerular changes are due to the internal environment, a variety of experiments have been performed. Alloxan was given to an inbred strain of rats over a 6-month period to induce a diabetic state. Kidneys were then cross-transplanted with those from nontreated rats. Glomerular changes increased when untreated kidneys were placed in a diabetic rat but were reduced when diabetic kidneys were placed in an untreated rat. Streptozotocin can be given in a single intravenous injection to induce diabetes in rats. Rats become diabetic in 2 weeks. The distal tubules of the kidney show an accumulation of glycogen by 2 weeks after injection, becoming more marked with time. Glomerular lesions are seen after 4 to 6 weeks. Tubular degeneration and marked glomerulosclerosis develop beginning at 4 months. IgG and albumin are deposited in the GBM. Rats do not develop papillary necrosis or papillitis as do human diabetic patients. Renal neoplasms also form in a portion of streptozotocin-treated rats.
Models of Secondary Glomerulonephritis: Miscellaneous Models

Secondary glomerulonephritis may be seen spontaneously as a sequel of viral infection, as a result of deposition of antiviral antibody complex in the glomerulus. More than 75% of horses experimentally infected with equine infectious anemia, a persistent viral infection, showed cellular proliferation, increased mesangial matrix, neutrophil and mononuclear cell infiltration, basement membrane thickening, and granular deposits of gamma globulin and C3 in the GBM. With swine fever (chronic hog cholera), most animals die acutely, but survivors demonstrate glomerulonephritis with a lymphocytic/plasmacytic and neutrophilic infiltrate, mesangial cell proliferation and mesangial matrix increase, basement membrane thickening, and anti-host gamma-globulin deposition. The severity of the glomerular lesions has been shown experimentally to increase with the length of survival. Severe glomerular lesions are associated with tubular degeneration and lymphoid infiltration in the interstitium. The renal damage is apparently caused by a combination of direct viral damage to the glomerular and tubular epithelium, failure of the mesangium to adequately process macromolecular substances such as antigen–antibody complexes or fibrin, and the attraction of lymphocytes and neutrophils to the injured kidney.

An association between upper respiratory infections and clinical relapsing glomerulonephritis has been explored by orally immunizing BALB/c mice for 14 weeks with protein antigens of various sizes (using ovalbumin, bovine gamma globulins, and ferritin). Mice displayed a significant increase in specific IgA-producing plasma cells in the lamina propria of the bronchial and intestinal mucosae, along with circulating specific IgAs. Mice also demonstrated diffuse mesangial IgA deposition in the glomeruli, without C3 deposition. Immunogens were also found in the glomerular deposits, showing the pathogenicity of IgA immune complexes. Mice did not develop the proteinuria or hematuria seen in human patients.

Human IgA nephropathy patients experience hematuria with febrile influenza-type infections or pharyngitis. The transient viremia results in an acute IgA deposition in the kidneys. A model of viral infection with resultant IgA nephropathy is found in mink with Aleutian mink disease. This is a persistent parvoviral infection resulting in diffuse arteritis, chronic hepatitis, and glomerular and interstitial nephritis. The glomerulonephritis is characterized by mesangial cell proliferation, increased matrix, and gamma-globulin and C3 deposition in the capillaries and mesangium. Interstitial nephritis, with tubulorhexis and infiltration by monocytes, is also seen, although IgA deposition in the renal tubules is not demonstrated. An experimental reproduction of viral infection and renal sequelae was created in 129/J mice exposed to Sendai virus. In one experiment, naive mice were infected intranasally or by exposure to infected mice. Mesangial IgA in the mouse kidneys was seen, similar to the pattern in human IgA nephropathy. This demonstrated the validity of the model. In a later experiment in the same group, 129/J mice were immunized intranasally for Sendai virus, then challenged intravenously with live virus or viral envelope protein or challenged naturally by exposure to infected mice. Mesangial IgA was predominant, and viral antigens were also found in small amounts in some glomerular deposits. Hematuria developed in those mice exposed to intact virions but not in those exposed to viral envelope proteins only, inferring that the viral particle promotes some changes in glomerular function that are not fully understood.

Human patients with cirrhosis are often hypergammaglobulinemic and demonstrate concurrent mesangial IgA deposits. These patients also have a higher incidence of endotoxemia, with increases in serum IgA antibodies against bacterial antigens such as those from Escherichia coli, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, and Klebsiella pneumoniae. IgA eluates taken from the kidneys at autopsy contain IgA preferentially binding to these types of Gram-negative bacterial cell walls. Rats with liver cirrhosis induced by carbon tetrachloride intoxication also had increased serum IgA and glomerular IgA and C3 deposition. The glomeruli show thickened GBMs and increased mesangial matrix.

Alcoholic rats (Tsukamoto-French rat model) provide another model of this disease. The Tsukamoto-French model was developed to investigate ethanol-induced liver disease, but it also
adeptly illustrates IgA nephropathy secondary to chronic alcohol intoxication. Wistar rats are implanted with an intragastric cannula, through which liquid diets and alcohol can be infused for a 6-week period. Alcohol has the effect of increasing natural killer (NK) cell activity, hence increasing IgA synthesis by B lymphocytes. The result is an increase in IgA deposition in the kidney. Wistar rats receiving intragastric ethanol infusion for 42 d doubled the NK cell activity. Mesangial IgA deposition was seen in the treated rats but not in the controls. The liver is preferentially involved in IgA clearance, so a dysfunction in clearance, as in patients with alcoholic liver cirrhosis, may result in glomerular IgA deposition. Amore showed that Lewis rats receiving intragastric whiskey three times weekly demonstrated IgA localization in the mesangium and impairment of IgA clearance by the liver, even with minimal hepatic lesion formation.

ANIMAL MODELS OF ACUTE RENAL FAILURE

Acute renal failure is most commonly caused by acute tubular necrosis (ATN), which in turn may be caused by ischemia or nephrotoxicosis. Sepsis, burns, or circulatory collapse can produce ischemia sufficient for ATN. Lesions in humans are mild compared with most animal models of acute renal failure, and include patchy tubular necrosis in the proximal tubules and ascending limbs of Henle. Nephrotoxic ATN can show variable necrosis in the proximal tubules. A variety of pharmacological agents, ethylene glycol, mercury, lead, or other agents may be involved. Rhabdomyolysis resulting in massive myoglobinuria may also incite ATN. Mortality can vary, depending on the underlying cause, and may be as high as 50%.

In the rat, as well as the mouse, a reversible model of ischemic tubular damage is produced by occlusion of the renal artery, a model using warm ischemia-reflow to produce injury. Body temperature has been shown to be a determinant in the severity of renal injury in this model, which illustrates the need for temperature control in experiments to obtain consistent results. Hyperthermia exacerbates renal injury, whereas hypothermia is protective. Renal injury is most apparent after reflow, possibly because of an imbalance between the demand for oxygen in the reperfusion period and the supply available to tissues. The transient hypotension produced by the occlusion results in severe renal hypoperfusion, compromising renal oxygen delivery and depleting adenosine triphosphate (ATP) in the tubular cells. This energy depletion sets off a complex injury cascade, culminating in the lesions of ATN, including extensive necrosis of the proximal tubules, which varies with the duration of occlusion. The distal tubules are less affected. This model does mimic the decrease in glomerular filtration rate as seen in human cases of ATN. Both the rat model and human cases develop casts in the collecting ducts, which may cause obstruction leading to further renal injury and tubular leakage.

Cold ischemia-reflow models produce small, discrete lesions in the proximal tubules. Medullary and deep cortical blood flow is reduced, with continued glomerular filtration. This model resembles the changes observed in renal transplant cases. Rat kidneys, after 2, 4, and 16 h of cold ischemia, showed small areas of reversible injury in the proximal and distal tubules; 24 h after transplantation, there were small areas of necrosis in the proximal tubules and more widespread necrosis in the loops of Henle and collecting ducts. The functional and morphological impairment of the transplanted kidney may be due to tissue edema blocking blood flow through the vasa recta and altering blood flow to the medulla.

Nephrotoxic models of ATN are more difficult to produce. Administration of aminoglycosides, radiocontrast agents, and endotoxins do not reliably produce acute renal failure in the rat. Combinations of insults are required to produce consistent results. A distal nephron model in an isolated perfused rat kidney uses a combination of nitric oxide, prostaglandin inhibition, and radiocontrast administration to produce decreased medullary oxygen availability with retained glomerular filtration sufficient to produce renal failure with corresponding medullary ascending limb damage.
Another consistent model involves intramuscular glycerol injection, producing rhabdomyolysis and subsequent renal failure with extensive tubular necrosis and the production of tubular casts.3,60,88

ANIMAL MODELS OF PERITONEAL DIALYSIS

Peritoneal dialysis, including continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis, is a frequently used method of fluid replacement therapy for patients in chronic renal failure. However, long-term peritoneal dialysis carries with it its own host of dysfunctions, including fibrosis of the peritoneal membrane, loss of ultrafiltration, and infection.89-91 A study of chronic peritoneal dialysis that was performed in nonuremic rats twice daily for 4 weeks found a decrease in the permeability of the peritoneum to glucose and total protein, damage to the peritoneal membrane due to exposure to dialysis solutions, and thickening of the peritoneum.90

Rats and rabbits are the most common species used in vivo studies.89,90,92 Rats are easy to maintain, and there are good descriptions of rat models of renal failure. However, they have a large peritoneal surface area relative to their size, which makes recovery and analysis of infused dialysate difficult. Rabbits can tolerate peritoneal catheters for extended periods and are relatively resistant to peritonitis. Uremic models can be created using subtotal nephrectomy (5/6 nephrectomy).93 Rats can also be made uremic by 5/6 nephrectomy, either by unilateral nephrectomy and infarction, surgical ablation of the upper and lower thirds of the contralateral kidney,94 or electrocautery.95 A study of chronic peritoneal dialysis in uremic rats90 was accomplished by inserting a silicone catheter into the abdominal cavity of partially nephrectomized Wistar rats. Mortality over the first 4 weeks was similar between dialyzed and nondialyzed rats, but survival over the next 4 weeks was improved in the rats receiving dialysis. Other techniques involve performing an omentectomy before catheter placement to ensure catheter patency without omental occlusion.91 A further model of continuous ambulatory dialysis was produced in uremic rats by surgical insertion of a permanent silicon indwelling cannula with placement of a sterile catheter via the cannula for dialysis.96 The cannula remained patent, and intermittent dialysis was successfully accomplished over a 21-d evaluation period.

Peritoneal transport studies have been accomplished in nonuremic rats. In a model used in Stockholm, Sweden,90 anesthetized, normal Sprague-Dawley rats were infused for 4-h periods, with frequent sampling of blood and dialysate. Studies using various osmotic agents and additives in the dialysis solution were carried out. The study suggested that a higher net ultrafiltration was obtained using a 4% oligopeptide solution, similar to a 3.86% glucose solution but more effective than a 2.27% glucose solution. Additives to reduce peritoneal fluid absorption and hence improve the efficiency of peritoneal dialysis were examined. The addition of 0.01% hyaluronan improved efficiency significantly, as did atrial natriuretic peptide. Addition of amphotericin B to dialysate solution had been reported to increase ultrafiltration in rabbits97 but did not have the desired effect in rats. A biocompatibility study using dialysis fluid with 3.86% glucose in rats found a decrease in fluid removal and decreased small-solute clearance, suggesting functional peritoneal changes induced by exposure to the dialysis solution.

Implant-associated infections, including those associated with continuous peritoneal dialysis, are often associated with biofilm formation on the implant.98 These infections tend to be persistent and resistant to antibiotic treatment. A model of biofilm infection on a catheter was developed in New Zealand white rabbits.99 Tenckhoff catheters were surgically implanted in the peritoneal cavity of the rabbits. Biofilm production and spread was observed over a 3-week period. Peritoneal dialysis was also performed in one group over a 2-week period, and again bacterial growth could be evaluated. The colonization by skin bacteria, Staphylococcus epidermidis, produced peritoneal infection in dialyzed rabbits. Gagnon and Richards98 developed a model of biofilm infection in C57BL/6J mice. The mice were surgically implanted with a section of silastic peritoneal catheter completely within the peritoneal cavity; the implant was infected with S. epidermidis. This model
was used in the evaluation of treatment regimens as a demonstration of the usefulness of this relatively inexpensive model of implant-associated infections. A further complication in the problem of peritonitis stems from the immunosuppression that results in renal failure. Mice with induced renal failure showed delayed clearance and a decreased inflammatory response to intraperitoneal inoculations of *S. epidermidis*.100

**ANIMAL MODELS OF RENAL CELL CARCINOMA**

Renal cell carcinoma accounts for about 85% of renal tumors in humans, predominantly in males in their fifties and sixties. Thirty thousand new cases are diagnosed annually in the United States. Clear cell carcinomas, with clear or granular-appearing cytoplasm, make up 70 to 80% of renal cell carcinomas. Papillary carcinoma makes up 10 to 15%, and the remaining 5% are chromophobe renal carcinomas arising from the intercalated cells of the collecting ducts.81 Renal cell carcinomas tend to metastasize widely.

The ideal model, that most like the human disease, is a spontaneous neoplasm with histological characteristics of an adenocarcinoma, with predictable growth and metastasis rates. Animal models of neoplastic disease ideally have the following characteristics:1 (1) the lesions should be histologically similar to the human counterpart, (2) the lesion should occur in the same organ or tissue, and (3) the model should display similar growth and metastatic characteristics as the human neoplastic counterpart. Models used for preclinical studies should be slow growing, so that there is time to initiate treatment and evaluate its effects.101

Spontaneous renal neoplasia is rare in rodents; most models involve disease induced by chemicals, radiation, viruses, or hormones, although some rat and mouse strains that are susceptible to spontaneous tumorogenesis have been developed.

**Chemically Induced Tumor Models**

Chemical induction acts directly or by metabolic changes to produce mutagenic products, which cause altered DNA formation in the kidney.1 Most oncogenic agents produce similar types of tumors, and clear-cell tumors are common. Short-chain alkyl or alkenyl halides most frequently induce tubular adenomas or carcinomas. Amine compounds are more likely to be associated with either medullary or papillary lesions or with urinary bladder tumors. Nitrosamines, polycyclic hydrocarbons, mycotoxins, and heavy metals have also been used for tumorogenesis in animal models.102

Dimethylnitrosamine (DMN) treatment given to adult Swiss mice has successfully produced renal adenomas.102 Nephroblastomas were formed in rats dosed with DMN in the drinking water.102 In another model, young Wistar/Porton albino/Fischer 344/Nb rats were given a protein-deprived diet (glucose and sucrose diet). After injection with dimethylnitrosamines, 90 to 100% developed renal mesenchymal tumors, analogous to the human congenital mesoblastic nephroma of infancy.1,103 Porton rats given high doses of DMN in the feed for short periods developed both well-differentiated, expansile tumors of the renal epithelium and anaplastic kidney tumors, which metastasized to the lung in one case.104

Lead enhances other oncogens and impairs NK cell activity. Added to N-(4′-fluoro-4-biphenyl)acetamide, 1% lead acetate produces renal adenocarcinomas in 100% of treated rats.1,102 Rats induced with chronic lead intoxication1,102 develop solid and tubular tumors of the renal cortical tubules; tubular-type tumors regularly metastasize to the lungs, whereas solid forms metastasize via the lymphatics to the adrenal glands, liver, spleen, and contralateral kidney.

Streptozotocin (N-nitroso-methylamide) is derived from *Streptomyces achromogenes*. It is widely used in animal models for its diabetogenic properties, but it also has tumorogenic properties.102 Streptozotocin injected intravenously in CBA/H/T6J mice produces cortical epithelial tumors
with a solid (carcinoma) or papillary (adenoma) histological pattern. These tumors have a low incidence of metastasis, usually to the lung. Females are more susceptible to tumorigenesis; 100% develop neoplasia, compared with 73% of males. This model is used to study tumor pathogenesis and for determining biochemical and molecular mechanisms in carcinogenesis. An orthotopic, transplantable preclinical model was developed by injecting streptozotocin in BALB/c mice. A histologically confirmed renal cell carcinoma that resulted from this treatment was successfully adapted to serial orthotopic transplantation. This isolate, designated SIRCC-1, had the desirable slow growth in vivo, as well as high vascularity and metastasis to the lung.

**Hormone-Induced Tumor Models**

Male Syrian golden hamsters, or gonadectomized males or females, are susceptible to developing estrogen-dependent renal neoplasia when given stilbestrol. These tumors originate in the cortical tubular epithelium. Tumors can be transplanted after pretreating the recipient with diethylstilbestrol. Recipients develop bilateral, multiple cortical tumors that rupture and locally metastasize; implant metastases are found on the viscera and abdominal wall. Distant metastases by hematogenous route are not found. With continued passage, these tumors lose their dependence on exogenous estrogen and depend more on endogenous estrogen produced in the adrenal cortex and testis.

**Spontaneous Tumor Models**

A hereditary, spontaneous tumor of the proximal convoluted tubules was described in a line of Wistar rats by Eker in 1954. The autosomal dominant trait was mapped to chromosome 10. This gene is lethal in homozygotes. Heterozygous rats develop renal tumors between 4 and 10 months of age. These tumors are described as solid, cystadenomas, and incipient tumors. Metastases are identical to the primary tumor, with the addition of areas of microlcalfication. Exposing Eker rats to nitrosamines or streptozotocin can induce chromophobic renal cell tumors. Increased incidence of renal cell carcinomas in Eker rats exposed to N-nitrosodimethylamine and ionizing radiation points to a loss of heterozygosity in heterozygotes. The two events (one inherited, one somatic) result in tumor formation. The Eker rat is considered a good model of human renal neoplasia because of its histological similarity. Like human renal cell carcinomas, the tumors in Eker rats overexpress transforming growth factor-α (TGF-α).

The White tumor model is a spontaneous adenocarcinoma in the renal cortical tubules of male Wistar-Lewis rats. The tumor does not metastasize, but three types of metastasis models have been developed. In the first model, tumor fragments are placed in the peritoneal cavity of a splenectomized rat; tumor development is 100% in about 9 weeks. Tumors display peritoneal seeding and invasion into the diaphragm, bowel, and muscle wall. In the second model, a single-cell suspension is injected in the tail vein. Tumor development is in 8 to 12 weeks, with a rate of about 30%. Alternatively, single-cell suspensions may be injected under the renal capsule. Response rate is about 80%, with a median development time of 63 d. The White model has been used to evaluate potential chemotherapeutic combinations for cancer treatment.

Claude described two types of spontaneous adenocarcinomas in the renal cortex of BALB/cf/Cd mice. These tumors are designated C+ and C-. The C+ tumor invades both kidneys with multiple tumors in each, with a concurrent inhibition in body and organ growth. The C- tumor is a fast-growing, solitary tumor of one kidney, with no inhibition of body or organ growth. Claude’s models gave rise to two additional models: the MKT-CD1, or Soloway’s model, and the RAG model. The MKT-CD1 model is a spontaneous renal cortical adenocarcinoma in BALB/cf/Cd × BALB/c An N female mice. This tumor resembles human renal cell carcinoma both grossly and histologically and has similar slow-growth characteristics. Because of the inbred strain of these mice, tumors may be transplanted without tumor inhibition by histocompatibility antigens. The RAG model is in
BALB/cf/Cd × BALB/c Crigl mice. This is a heteroploid mouse cell line tumor of 68 to 75 chromosomes.

The RENCA model is a granular cell adenocarcinoma of the renal tubular cells in BALB/c Cr mice. This tumor is characterized by rapid growth and presence of giant and multinucleated cells. On electron microscopy, particles suggestive of virus have been noted, but no tumor could be induced with cell-free extracts. Metastases are found in the lymph nodes and thence to the lungs, liver, spleen, mediastinum, urinary bladder, and serosal surfaces of the gastrointestinal system.

Virally Induced Tumor Models

In 1952, Lucke described a herpesvirus-related, temperature-related adenocarcinoma of the renal tubular cortex in Rana pipiens. “Winter” tumors show cytopathological characteristics indicating the presence of the virus, whereas “summer” tumors lack viral characteristics. Metastases via vascular channels are found in the lungs and liver. Tumor implants and dissociated tumor cells were placed in frog embryos by Tweedell but were frequently rejected and failed to produce tumors. However, cell fractions of winter tumors, containing intranuclear inclusion bodies, did produce rapidly growing adenocarcinomas that were histologically identical to Lucke’s tumors in mature frogs.

ANIMAL MODELS OF POLYCYSTIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Renal epithelial cysts are the most common abnormality seen in the kidneys. Acquired cysts develop in about 50% of patients on dialysis, and cysts may also be the primary cause of renal failure in inherited cystic disease. Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease (ADPKD) is the most common type of inherited cystic disease, affecting 1 in 500 to 1000 individuals. The inheritance pattern is autosomal dominant and is due to mutations in the PKD-1 gene in 85% and to mutations in the PKD-2 gene in 10%. Most patients are asymptomatic until adulthood. Extrarenal abnormalities in ADPKD patients include hypertension, hepatic cysts, intracranial berry aneurysms, and mitral valve prolapse. In the kidneys, cysts develop in the tubule segments and in Bowman’s capsule. Early in development, most cysts are connected to an afferent and efferent tubule segment, although once the cyst reaches 2 mm in diameter, it detaches from either end and secretes fluid via the epithelial lining. Microscopically, alterations in the basement membrane, including thickening, multilamination, and infiltration by inflammatory cells, and fibroblasts, are commonly observed.

Naturally Occurring Models of Polycystic Kidney Disease

Animal models of renal cystic disease include several strains with heritable, spontaneous disease that bear some resemblance to the human counterpart and may help to understand its pathogenesis. Transgenic mice and new strains are being developed to mimic the human disease more closely.

The disease in Han:SPRD cy rats is due to an incomplete autosomal-dominant trait. These rats develop cystic disease with focal interstitial infiltration with macrophages, fibroblasts, and leukocytes. Extrarenal pathologies include hyperparathyroidism, osteodystrophic fibrosis, and metastatic calcification affecting the lungs, stomach, blood vessels, heart, and kidneys. Heterozygous males die of uremia by 6 months to 1 year of age, but heterozygous females develop milder cystic enlargement and do not develop severe uremia. Homozygotes, both male and female, are severely ill and die by 3 weeks of age.

The cpk mutation was the first model described. This autosomal-recessive mutation arose spontaneously in a colony of C57BL/6J mice at Jackson Laboratory and later was transferred to a line of congeneric DBA/2J mice. Both male and female cpk:cpk mice develop a rapidly
progressing cystic enlargement of the kidneys.\textsuperscript{111} Death due to renal failure usually occurs by 4 weeks of age. Epidermal growth factor (EGF) is decreased in the distal convoluted tubules, preventing maturation and differentiation of the collecting duct cells,\textsuperscript{116} yet EGF is increased in cystic fluid, which may affect cystic enlargement.\textsuperscript{112} The saccules thus formed proliferate and distort the collecting ducts and parenchyma, leading to compromised renal function.

The \textit{pcy} mutation arose in the diabetic KK strain and was later transferred to DBA/2J mice.\textsuperscript{112,114,117} Inheritance is autosomal recessive. Pcy:pcy mice develop a slowly progressive polycystic kidney disease resembling human ADPKD.\textsuperscript{111,112} These mice occasionally also develop cerebral aneurysms. Kidney enlargement is apparent by 8 weeks of age. Macroscopically, cystic formation gives the kidneys a cobblestone-like appearance. Cysts, associated with alterations in the tubular basement membranes, enlarge until renal failure develops at around 8 months of age in males and 6.5 months in females. Thickening of the basement membranes and sporadic enlargement of Bowman’s capsule is observed; renal interstitial infiltration by inflammatory cells and fibroblasts is also seen.

A colony of CFW mice spontaneously developed a dominant mutation leading to polycystic kidney disease with adult onset.\textsuperscript{112,114,118} Extrarenal lesions reminiscent of ADPKD in humans, including arterial aneurysms and hepatic cysts, occur in up to 20\% of affected CFW\textsubscript{wd} mice. Most mice die by 18 months of age. Environmental factors have been shown to promote disease; in a germ-free environment, only 4\% of mice developed renal cysts, but when transferred to conventional housing, 99\% developed the disease. Extrarenal lesions were observed only in those mice that were reared in conventional housing or that were moved to conventional housing from a germ-free environment.

The KAT and KAT2J mouse models each have autosomally recessive mutation that confers progressive cystic kidney disease closely resembling ADPKD.\textsuperscript{119} KAT2J mice are runts at birth and grow slowly, remaining small throughout life. One third of those that survive weaning die before 100 d of age, and nearly all mice die by 1 year of age. Kidneys in older mice are pale, with cysts replacing much of the parenchyma. KAT mice are also slow to grow, but 22\% do survive beyond 1 year of age. Renal cystic lesions are similar to KAT2J mice but are not as severe or extensive.

\section*{Induced Models of Polycystic Kidney Disease}

Experimental models of PKD can also be induced in transgenic lines of mice or by chemical administration.\textsuperscript{112,114} Transgenic mice with a phenotype including polycystic kidneys have been developed using constructs involving the SV40 large T antigen and \textit{c-myc}. Steroid injection and oral administration of 2-amino-4,5-diphenylthiazole HCl (DPT) and nordihydroguaiaretic acid (NDGA) have also been used to create experimental polycystic kidney disease.

A transgenic mouse line used to study choroid plexus tumors was found also to develop cystic lesions in the kidneys.\textsuperscript{112,120} A DNA construct using SV40 large T antigen was used to create this line. The mice developed choroid plexus tumors at 3 to 4 months of age. Renal lesions were also noted in a majority of the mice, consisting of tubular epithelial cell proliferation and dilation with cyst formation and of focal glomerular sclerosis.

\textit{C-myc} overexpression in the kidney in transgenic mice gave rise to polycystic kidneys in 18 transgenic lines.\textsuperscript{112,114,121} A \textit{c-myc} transgene was used to create transgenic mice with the intent of evaluating erythroid cell differentiation. The \textit{c-myc} construct, using an SV40 enhancer, led to the development of polycystic kidney disease in a consistent manner. Death due to renal failure occurred between 6 weeks and 3 months of age. The kidneys were markedly enlarged and cystic, although extrarenal lesions such as cerebral aneurysms or hepatic cysts were not found.

\textit{TgN737Rpw} mice, created by an insertional gene mutation as part of a large-scale program at Oak Ridge National Laboratory, developed scruffy fur, growth retardation, polydactyly, and renal cysts.\textsuperscript{112,114,122} The syndrome in mice resembled that of autosomal-recessive polycystic kidney disease (ARPKD), which affects approximately 1 in 10,000 live births and results in infant death.
and hepatic fibrosis. Macroscopically, the kidneys of homozygous mice were pale and slightly enlarged, with cysts that destroyed the surrounding parenchyma. The livers of these mice were slightly pale, with an evident reticular pattern. Histologically, the collecting tubules of the kidneys were dilated with cystic formation, and the livers showed biliary dysplasia and portal hepatic fibrosis. These findings are analogous to those of human ARPKD.

Because mutations in \( \text{PKD1} \) and \( \text{PKD2} \) are associated with ADPKD in humans, there is tremendous interest in developing rodent models with analogous mutations. \( \text{PKD1} \) encodes for polycystin 1, which is expressed in the epithelium and vascular smooth muscle. A mutation in \( \text{PKD1} \) was introduced on C57BL/6 and BALB/c backgrounds. Although heterozygote mice showed no discernable phenotype, homozygotes displayed an embryonic lethality associated with cyst development in the kidneys and pancreatic ducts and pulmonary hypoplasia, implying a role for polycystin in the maturation of renal tubules. A separate mutation in \( \text{PKD1} \) was associated with embryonic mortality in homozygotes caused by vascular leakage; these mice also had renal and pancreatic cyst formation. \( \text{PKD2} \) encodes for polycystin-2. Mice with mutations of \( \text{PKD2} \) have been developed. Heterozygous mice developed renal cysts, the severity of which correlated with the level of polycystin-2 expression in the kidneys. Hepatic cysts were also commonly observed. Homozygotes displayed embryonic lethality with renal cyst formation and, in some, hepatic cyst formation or bile duct proliferation. These results suggest that polycystin-2 also has a role in the maturation of renal tubular structures.

DPT administered to Sprague-Dawley rats in diet or by gavage for 5 weeks created renal cysts in the collecting ducts in 1 to 8 weeks; basement membrane changes resembled those in human ADPKD and in spontaneous heritable polycystic kidney diseases in mice. The DPT administration resulted in a marked and progressive, segmental cystic dilation of the collecting and distal tubules, although evidence of tubular obstruction was absent. The kidneys retained normal glomerular and tubular function. It is speculated that the cystic dilation was due to a chemically induced defect affecting the elastic properties of the tubular basement membrane.

NDGA also induces renal cysts in rats that are given the compound in the diet. Cysts develop as soon as 5 to 7 weeks in the proximal tubules, with thickened, convoluted basement membranes and epithelial cell necrosis, which may contribute to tubular blockage. Inflammatory cell infiltrates were also seen in the interstitium. Cysts developed more rapidly in rats that were raised in a germ-free environment and then transferred to conventional housing than they did in rats that were raised in conventional facilities, implying an immunological component to the disease.

Steroids injected into neonatal rodents in the first week of life can induce polycystic kidney disease. The mechanism is somewhat controversial; it is uncertain whether the glucocorticoids directly induce the pathology or whether the mineralocorticoid activity indirectly causes renal cysts to form. Some forms of glucocorticoids, such as tertiary-butyl-prednisolone, more efficiently produce renal cystic disease. Variations in susceptibility by strain have also been shown in an experiment using 18 different inbred mouse strains. This experiment illustrates the multifactorial pathogenesis of polycystic kidney disease, combining both genetic and environmental factors to induce clinical signs.

**Animal Models of Renal Physiology: Hypertension**

Hypertensive nephrosclerosis is a leading cause of end-stage renal failure, and the renal injury may add to further hypertension, leading to a cycle of hypertension and renal injury. Not all models of hypertension are designed to study the role of the kidney, but renal pathology does affect the blood pressure via the renin–angiotensin system, and vice versa. Angiotensin II acts as a vasoconstrictor, which can be important in maintaining renal blood flow and glomerular filtration. In fact, in human patients with bilateral renal artery stenosis, or renovascular hypertension, the use of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors to maintain normal blood pressure can result in renal failure due to diminished filtration pressure.
The Goldblatt renal hypertensive model was developed in dogs in the 1930s. The Goldblatt model was adapted to rats, in a two-kidney, one-clip (2K1C) and in a one-kidney, one-clip (1K1C) model, by Mikshe in 1970. The 2K1C model has been used to evaluate the changes in the kidney during hypertension-induced renal failure. Four weeks after the clipping procedure in Sprague-Dawley rats, Mai et al. found progressive increases in size, moderate glomerular mesangial expansion, and widespread tubular atrophy and dilatation in the contralateral (unclipped) kidneys.

A two-kidney, two-clip rat model was developed by Helmchen in 1982 and used again by Satter et al. to evaluate pharmacological therapies for control of hypertension with respect to their effects on renal injury. In this model, 0.25-mm-diameter silver clips were surgically placed around both renal arteries to induce hypertension. The animals were then placed on a low-sodium diet, treated with potential antihypertensive therapies, and evaluated for response to medication and development of renal disease.

Mice make excellent models in which to study the regulation of the renin–angiotensin system. Renin is secreted in response to signals from the macula densa, a collection of specialized epithelial cells in the distal tubule, as part of the tubuloglomerular feedback loop. In most species, including humans, a single gene, ren-1, encodes renin; but in wild mice and in several laboratory mouse strains, a second gene, ren-2, joins ren-1 to encode for renin. Transgenics can be created to enhance, alter, or delete the expression of either gene. Inactivation of ren-2 had no phenotypic effects, but inactivation of ren-1 resulted in hypotension in female mice and in hypercellularity and altered cell morphology in the macula densa. The kidney morphology was otherwise unaffected.

The 2K1C and 1K1C models have been adapted to simulate hypertension in mice. This model was developed on C57BL/6 mice, which carry only ren-1, and entailed placing a 0.12-mm-diameter clip on a single renal artery, with or without contralateral nephrectomy. The 2K1C model was shown to have increased plasma renin, although the 1K1C model did not. Both models developed cardiac hypertrophy. These mouse models may be used for evaluation of potential transgenic mouse models to study the hypertension problem in more detail.

The functions of the renin–angiotensin system, including angiotensin II effects, are mediated by AT1 receptors. Humans have AT1 receptors only, but rodents have two isoforms, AT1A and AT1B. Angiotensin II functions in the regulation of sodium and water homeostasis. AT1A/AT1B double-knockout mice, as well as other lines that do not produce angiotensin II, develop hydronephrosis that worsens with age. There is atrophy of the renal papillae and inner medulla, along with concurrent impairment of urine-concentrating ability. AT1A receptor-deficient mice, such as the agtr1a (−/−), also demonstrate sodium sensitivity, a sodium-dependent change in blood pressure. Aldosterone is increased in response to a decrease in sodium.

Animal Models of Renal Physiology: Development

Congenital anomalies of the kidneys and urinary tract affect approximately 0.5% of pregnancies and are responsible for the major causes of kidney failure in infants. Theories to explain the development of such anomalies include urinary outflow obstruction and defects in the interaction between the metanephric mesoderm and ureteral bud. Mackie and Stephens, studying congenital renal malformations in human infants, proposed that ureteral budding from the wolffian duct, if occurring at an abnormal site, would result in urinary outflow obstruction or vesicoureteral reflux, resulting in congenital defects including megaureter and renal hypoplasia.

Obstruction of the urinary tract during fetal development produces fibrosis and alterations in the growth of the developing kidney. The renin–angiotensin system interacts with TGF-β to produce these congenital changes. Models of congenital urinary tract obstruction include rabbits, opossum, and sheep, as well as transgenic (knockout) mice.

Surgical models of fetal urinary obstruction have been carried out in large animals for several years. Beck, in the 1970s, carried out experiments in which surgical ureteral ligation in fetal
sheep was shown to produce hydronephrosis, with renal contraction. Dilation and thickening of
the ureter was also observed when obstruction occurred early in development. In another group,
persistent urinary obstruction created in fetal sheep by ureteral and urethral ligation led to the
development of hydronephrotic, cystic, or dysgenetic kidneys. Hydronephrotic kidneys were
enlarged, with partial effacement of the medulla and dilation of tubules. Cystic kidneys had distorted
renal architecture between the cysts, with almost total elimination of the medulla. Dysgenetic
kidneys were small, with distortion of the cortex, dilated tubules, and fetal medullary structures.

Vesicoureteral reflux due to bladder outlet obstruction has also been modeled in fetal sheep, demonstrating resultant hydronephrosis with thinning of the cortex and loss of medullary tissue and thickened, tortuous ureters. Furthermore, partial bladder outlet obstruction was associated with increased mRNA levels for renin and AT2. AT2 activates TGF-β1, which may be a mechanism for renal fibrosis. Persistence of the AT2 and AT1 expression pattern that is usually seen in early development also suggests attempts at compensatory adaptation by the developing kidney.

Experimental obstructive hydronephrosis has also been evaluated in newborn rats and adult rabbits. Newborn Sprague-Dawley rats underwent partial ureteric obstruction, and the kidneys were examined 9 weeks later. Hydronephrosis, with flattening of the renal papilla and thinning of the cortices, was a consistent finding. In experimentally obstructed New Zealand white rabbits, decreases in urine-concentrating ability were thought to be related to observed changes in all segments of the nephron. Chronic obstruction produced papillary necrosis and fibrosis.

The fetal or newborn opossum provides an attractive model for the study of fetal urinary obstruction. Because the young are born shortly after conception and complete their development while attached to the teat, these marsupials are readily accessible to surgical manipulation. This model has been used to identify the roles of insulin-like growth factor and platelet-derived growth factor on obstructed developing kidneys. Histologic evaluation of kidneys with early obstruction as compared with those with late obstruction showed ductal hyperplasia and medullary and cortical aplasia; obstruction late in development produced less severe medullary dysplasia. These studies may suggest potential therapeutic interventions or markers for early detection of obstruction.

Angiotensin has been shown to affect development of kidney structure in rodents. Renin expression is highest in the kidneys of fetal and neonatal rats, and angiotensin I (AT1) and angiotensin II (AT2) levels are also higher in the kidneys of newborn rats than in adults. The distribution of AT1 and AT2 during development suggests specific roles for each: AT2 receptor expression is highest in undifferentiated mesenchyma and declines with maturation, suggesting a role for AT2 in morphogenesis regulation; whereas AT1 receptor expression is higher in more differentiated structures, suggesting that AT1 is involved in regulating late stages of renal vascular development and in regulating the hemodynamic and reabsorption functions of the renal angiotensin system. As noted earlier, AT1 nullizygote mice develop shortened papillae and subsequent hyposthenuria. Agrt2-null mutant mice develop hydronephrotic kidneys with stenosis at the uteropelvic junction, renal hypoplasia, multicystic kidneys, and renal aplasia.

The atg–/– mouse demonstrates the role of the renin–angiotensin system in fetal development. Atg–/– mice, which fail to produce angiotensinogen, develop delays in glomerular maturity that are most apparent postnatally. Knockout mice are produced in normal numbers, but few survive to weaning. Those that do survive are hypotensive and display several structural abnormalities in the kidney, including hypertrophy of the renal arteries, atrophy of the papillae, and focal areas of tubular atrophy. No such phenotype is seen when either ren-1 or ren-2 are disrupted, but complete renin knockouts show similar renal pathology, suggesting a compensatory role by the residual gene. Angiotensin-converting enzyme-deficient mice are noted to have a similar phenotype.

The wolffian duct, before ureteral budding, is surrounded by undifferentiated mesenchymal cells that express AT2 receptors. AT2, as part of its role in morphogenesis, promotes apoptosis. It has been proposed that as a result of failure of this apoptosis, the necessary signaling between the wolffian duct and the metanephric blastema to induce ureteral budding would be interrupted,
resulting in ectopic ureteral budding.\textsuperscript{139,142} This ectopic budding has been observed in Agtr2-null mutant embryos, lending support to this hypothesis.

A naturally occurring model of obstructive hydronephrosis is seen in the $cph$ mouse.\textsuperscript{156} This autosomal mutation arose in a colony of C57BL/6J mice at the Jackson Laboratory. Homozygous mice are phenotypically distinguishable by 2 weeks of age, having smaller size, distended abdomens, and colorless urine. Most affected mice die of renal failure by 1 to 2 months of age, although some do survive to adulthood. The obstruction arises from a stenosis at the ureteropelvic junction. Kidneys show erosion of the papilla and thinning of cortical tissue.

Fish models give another perspective on development and repair mechanisms.\textsuperscript{157} The pattern of mammalian regeneration has been studied in rats given nephrotoxic doses of mercuric chloride, resulting in sloughing of the epithelium and leaving a denuded basement membrane of the proximal tubule. In 3 to 4 d, basophilic, flattened squamous cells were observed in the injured sites; by 5 to 7 d, these had become short, cuboidal basophilic cells. Normal morphology returned by 3 to 4 weeks after injury. Creatinine clearance began improving 7 to 10 d after injury. Fish have shown similar repair processes. Renal function parameters such as creatinine clearance are difficult to assess in fish, but clinical signs such as exophthalmia, ascites, decreased packed cell volume, and hypoproteinemia correlate with the mammalian observations.

**CONCLUSIONS**

Most modeling of renal pathophysiology is done in rodents. These models can be refined with the use of transgenic (knockout) models for specific aspects of the problem in question. Naturally occurring models may also provide some new avenues into understanding these diseases. From fish to mink, there are a wide variety of conditions that may mimic some aspect of human renal disease.

In several cases, treatment that shows good potential in the model has a lesser response in clinical practice. In other cases, differences between the animal model and the human condition overshadow any understanding derived from the model system. Further improvement in developing animal models that more closely mimic human diseases is an ongoing process. As our understanding of the pathogenic mechanisms involved in renal disease grows, we can expect to develop more sophisticated models that will further enhance our understanding of these important human conditions.

**REFERENCES**


CHAPTER 5

Animal Models for Xenotransplantation

David Whiting and Abbas Ardehali

CONTENTS

Introduction ......................................................................................................................................81
History ..............................................................................................................................................82
Rejection in Xenotransplantation...............................................................................................82
  Hyperacute Rejection .............................................................................................................82
  Acute Vascular Rejection .......................................................................................................84
  T-Cell-Mediated Rejection .....................................................................................................84
  Chronic Rejection ..................................................................................................................84
Small Animal Models ......................................................................................................................85
  Hyperacute Rejection .............................................................................................................85
  Acute Vascular Rejection .......................................................................................................86
  Chronic Rejection .................................................................................................................87
Large Animal Models ......................................................................................................................87
  Hyperacute and Acute Vascular Rejection .............................................................................87
  Chronic Rejection .................................................................................................................87
Cellular Xenotransplantation ...........................................................................................................89
  Pancreatic Islet Cells ..............................................................................................................89
  Hepatocytes ..........................................................................................................................89
  Neural Tissue .........................................................................................................................89
Ethical Concerns ..............................................................................................................................90
Conclusion ........................................................................................................................................91
References ........................................................................................................................................91

INTRODUCTION

Organ transplantation is acceptable medical therapy for end-stage liver, kidney, heart, lung, small bowel, and pancreatic diseases. The major limitation to more widespread utilization of this procedure is a shortage of available organs. Improvements in peri-operative care have expanded the indications for organ transplantation, and consequently the waiting time for solid organs has increased. A clinical xenotransplant program, with proper selection of donor species, could provide a near limitless supply of transplantable organs. Transplantation requires the recipient organ to be
physiologically comparable and immunologically compatible with the human host. These remain the major obstacles in the field of xenotransplantation. Rodents, large domesticated animals, and primates provide experimental models to examine the physiologic comparability and pathogenesis of xenotransplant rejection.

**HISTORY**

The first modern xenotransplant in a clinical situation occurred in 1963 when Dr. Keith Reemsta transplanted 13 chimpanzee kidneys into 13 patients with end-stage renal disease. Previous recorded accounts of xenotransplantation related to largely unsuccessful attempts at transplantation of bone, skin, and soft tissues from animals to injured humans. One of Dr. Reemsta’s patients received two donor chimpanzee kidneys and lived for 9 months; the longest recorded survival of a xenotransplant recipient. The woman died because of an electrolyte imbalance believed to be caused by physiologic differences between chimpanzee and human kidneys. In 1964, Dr. Thomas Starzl performed baboon-to-human kidney transplants, but these patients succumbed to infection and organ failure within 60 days. The first heart xenotransplant was performed by Dr. James Hardy in 1964. The gravely ill patient received a chimpanzee heart that failed within 2 hours of grafting. Baby Fae’s baboon heart xenotransplant in 1984 by Dr. Leonard Bailey is the last recorded xenotransplant in the United States. Born premature, her naïve immune system was thought to be less likely to reject the baboon organ. The heart was rejected, and she died 20 days after the transplant.

In 1970, Dr. Roy Calne extended the Swedish biologist Linnaeus’ classification of animal taxonomy by labeling species as discordant and concordant. This classification is based on the severity of the immunologic response when a donor species organ is grafted into a recipient. The classification is not based on phylogenetic class, order, family, genus, or species, and is entirely a clinical classification. Calne’s classification was based on the notion that concordant animals could be matched and graft viability could be achieved with immunosuppression, while in discordant animals this was not possible. He wrote, “Certain constituents of the recipient’s blood react immediately and violently with the grafted organ, damaging the capillary walls leading to hemorrhage and failure of the circulation through the graft.” In his system, concordant xenotransplantation resulted in a functional organ (if only temporarily), while discordant xenotransplantation resulted in immediate graft rejection. The immediate and violent reaction noted by Dr. Calne refers to hyperacute rejection and remains one of the key concerns in xenotransplantation.

**REJECTION IN XENOTRANSPLANTATION**

**Hyperacute Rejection**

Hyperacute xenograft rejection begins within minutes to hours and is characterized pathologically by interstitial hemorrhage and diffuse thrombosis, and clinically by graft loss. Both xenografts and allografts are susceptible to ischemia and reperfusion injury related to surgical transplantation. This ischemic injury primes the graft to immunologic response. The interstitial hemorrhage and diffuse thrombosis of hyperacute rejection is initiated by the binding of xenoreactive antibodies (XNAs) and complement to the endothelial cells of the graft. Pathologic examination of the rejected organ reveals deposits of immunoglobulin and classical complement factors on the vascular endothelial cells. Depletion of XNAs from the recipient prolongs xenograft survival. Similarly, immunologically naïve recipients of xenotransplants do not undergo hyperacute rejection. Greater than 80% of XNAs recognize the oligosaccharide galactose α-(1,3)galactose epitope expressed on
endothelial cells of the graft. The enzyme α-(1,3)galactosyltransferase catalyzes the transfer of the oligosaccharide to transmembrane proteins on the endothelial cells. All lower mammals and New World monkeys possess this enzyme and express this oligosaccharide. Humans, apes, and Old World monkeys do not possess this enzyme, and express naturally occurring antibodies reactive to this oligosaccharide.\(^{29,30}\) The galactose α-(1,3)galactose epitope and the α-(1,3)galactosyltransferase that catalyzes its transfer to endothelial cells have been extensively studied and have emerged as targets for therapeutic intervention.

The presence of the XNAs is a key factor in the initiation of hyperacute rejection in xenotransplants. Humans, Old World monkeys, and apes are likely sensitized to the galactose α-(1-3) galactose epitope by exposure to gastrointestinal bacteria expressing similar epitopes.\(^{26}\) Once XNAs are bound to the galactose α-(1-3)galactose epitope on the graft endothelial cell, recipient and donor complement is activated. Antibody-dependent or classical complement activation initiates hyperacute rejection. The exact pathogenesis is unknown; what is known is that the integrity of the blood vessels is disrupted leading to extravasation of vessel contents, and subsequent thrombosis and hemorrhage. The disruption of the endothelium is either caused by complement-mediated endothelial cell destruction (via the membrane-attack complex) or the formation of intercellular gaps caused by the assembly of the C57b678 complex and accelerated by the membrane-attack complex.\(^{65,72}\) In addition, experimental models of discordant xenotransplantation, such as guinea pig-to-rat, pig-to-dog, indicate that complement can be activated without the presence of XNA via the alternative pathway.\(^{63,65}\)

Two strategies have been developed to overcome hyperacute rejection; the first investigates ways to prevent interaction between XNAs and epitopes on xenograft epithelium, and the second investigates the activation of complement.\(^{26}\) XNA can be depleted from the recipient by passing recipient blood through immunoadsorption columns containing the oligosaccharide galactose α-(1,3)galactose.\(^{33}\) The XNA binding site in the donor organ can be saturated by infusing the donor with synthetic carbohydrates containing the galactose α-(1-3) linkage.\(^{86}\) Experimental evidence with animal models indicates that hyperacute rejection can be prevented with these techniques. Attempts to breed transgenic pigs with the α-(1,3)galactosyltransferase gene missing have not been successful. However, transgenic pigs expressing α-1,2-fucosyltransferase have been bred; these pigs have decreased activity of the α-(1,3)galactosyltransferase and consequently have decreased expression of the surface galactose α-(1-3)galactose epitope and are resistant to lysis in human serum in vitro.\(^{48}\)

The activation and regulation of the complement system remain a focus of hyperacute rejection studies. Complement regulatory factors, or regulators of complement activity (RCAs) modulate complement-mediated reactions on cell surfaces. Complement regulatory proteins from different species may be ineffective when reacted together and may be responsible for unregulated complement destruction in the xenograft resulting in hyperacute rejection. Porcine RCAs are inefficient inactivators of human complement bound to xenograft endothelium. Specifically, the glycoprotein decay-activating factor (DAF/CD54), membrane co-factor (MCF/CD46), CD39, and homologous restriction factor (HRF) are species specific and have decreased effectiveness when combined with RCAs from different species. Transgenic pigs expressing DAF and CD59 have been bred. In vitro studies (discussed later in the chapter) using organs from these transgenic pigs have been resistant to hyperacute rejection.

Experimental models of discordant xenotransplantation, such as guinea pig-to-rat and pig-to-dog, indicate that complement can be activated without the presence of XNA via the alternative pathway.\(^{63,65}\) In this pathway, recipient C3 complement factor binds to graft endothelial cells and becomes active. Activated C3 in turn activates B complement factor, creating C3Bb, the alternative pathway activating factor. In this model, functional complement regulatory factors are necessary for regulation, and their absence or poor function may result in hyperacute rejection.
Acute Vascular Rejection

Acute vascular rejection (delayed vascular rejection) occurs in discordant species pairs if hyperacute rejection is averted by either removing or suppressing the XNAs or by inhibiting or depleting complement.\textsuperscript{4} Xenotransplants are susceptible to acute vascular rejection in the days and weeks following the transplant. Acute vascular rejection is characterized pathologically by endothelial cell activation and infiltration of the graft with recipient monocytes and natural killer cells. Diffuse intravascular coagulation, thrombosis, and interstitial inflammation result in loss of the graft. Investigators have also considered that acute vascular rejection may be a part of a continuum of hyperacute rejection and may be initiated by xenoreactive antibody deposits on vascular endothelium. The depletion or inhibition of XNAs and complement that initially averted hyperacute rejection may be incomplete, resulting in a “delayed hyperacute” rejection.\textsuperscript{4} This theory is supported by four observations.\textsuperscript{67} Acute vascular rejection is commonly associated with antibody deposits on vascular endothelium, levels of xenoreactive antibodies are elevated following exposure of primates to porcine tissue,\textsuperscript{19} acute vascular rejection can be induced by infusion of anti-donor antibodies, and depletion of antibodies either by removal or inhibition of synthesis delays or averts acute vascular rejection.\textsuperscript{54}

T-Cell-Mediated Rejection

The mechanisms of T-cell-mediated xenograft rejection have been difficult to study because of early graft loss from hyperacute and acute vascular rejection. As the obstacles of hyperacute and acute vascular rejection are beginning to be overcome, the importance of T-cell-mediated immune responses is being realized. T-cell-mediated rejection is similar in principle to acute rejection in allotransplantation, involving both the direct and indirect pathway of T-cell recognition.\textsuperscript{67} In the direct pathway, xenoantigens are presented to the recipient T-cells by the donor antigen-presenting cells; this pathway is known to occur in porcine-to-human xenotransplants.\textsuperscript{66,85} Direct T-cell-mediated responses are strong because porcine antigen-presenting cells are able to interact with human T-cells.\textsuperscript{26} The indirect pathway involves the presentation of xenoantigens to recipient T-cells by recipient T-cells. Given the antigenic disparity in xenotransplantation, the role of the indirect pathway is likely to be substantial.\textsuperscript{67} In addition, the indirect T-cell-mediated responses are also likely to be strong because porcine B7 molecules are able to deliver a co-stimulatory signal through human CD28.\textsuperscript{70} The role of indirect vs. direct T-cell activation is important because genetic modifications of responding antigen-presenting cells may be an avenue for therapy.\textsuperscript{67} Murine skin and pancreatic islet cell xenografts may be acceptable models of T-cell-mediated rejection because these grafts are not immediately vascularized, and consequently do not undergo hyperacute and acute vascular rejection.

Chronic Rejection

The problems of hyperacute and acute vascular rejection in xenotransplantation have been substantial. The role of chronic rejection in xenotransplantation has not been extensively studied because the xenografts, so far, have not survived long enough to develop chronic rejection. Chronic rejection in allografts is characterized by progressive T-cell-mediated arteriosclerosis of the graft arteries, and the resulting loss of the graft. It is expected that once the problems of hyperacute and acute vascular rejection are controlled long enough for long-term graft survival, the shift in research will be to establish models of chronic rejection in xenotransplantation.
SMALL ANIMAL MODELS

Small animals are used to study the pathogenesis of xenotransplant rejection. Animal models are used to study hyperacute rejection, acute vascular rejection, acute cellular rejection, and chronic rejection. Small animal models have the benefits of low cost, easy breeding, and the ready availability of transgenic animals, antibodies, and proteins. The relative ease in manipulation of genes and gene products in small animals (particularly mice) allows for the elucidation of molecular pathways in the pathogenesis of rejection. The primary disadvantage of small animals is the difficulty in extrapolating findings in small animal models to large animals and humans. It is generally believed that the large animal with the most potential for human xenotransplantation is the pig. The pig is easily bred in a short period of time, and the organs are similar in size and function. However, pigs are expensive and smaller animal models must be used for more basic xenotransplantation studies.

Xenotransplant research is primarily focused on elucidating and overcoming the problems of hyperacute, acute vascular, and chronic rejection. Difficulties with the physiology of the transplanted organ can only be addressed once the rejection processes are controlled long enough to create a functional xenotransplant model. The heart is the ideal organ for the study of xenotransplantation because graft function can be assessed by palpation of a second heartbeat. The procedure for heterotopic intra-abdominal heart transplantation has been well described. The donor heart is arrested with heparinized saline, explanted, and placed on ice. Through a midline abdominal incision, the donor aorta is anastomosed to the recipient infrarenal abdominal aorta, and the donor pulmonary artery is anastomosed to the inferior vena cava. In this model, the left side of the heart is perfused, but remains non-functional.

Hyperacute Rejection

Discordant species pairs are used to study hyperacute rejection. The guinea pig-to-rat, mouse-to-rabbit, and guinea pig-to-mouse models are three small animal models that are being used for xenotransplantation research today. Concordant species pairs can also be used to study hyperacute rejection if the recipient has been pre-sensitized to the donor species by injection of donor spleenocytes 14 days prior to transplantation. These splenocytes stimulate the production of donor-directed antibodies. In this model, the donor heart was rejected in 14 minutes with pathologic features of hyperacute rejection. Flow cytometry revealed markedly elevated levels of serum xenonantibody. These pre-sensitized concordant animal models for hyperacute rejection are particularly useful because rats and mice (two concordant species) can be used to study pathogenesis. Mice and rats are two species that have a particularly large collection of available transgenic animals, isolated proteins, and antibodies, making the pair an ideal animal model to study. Transgenic mice are available and are used to study hyperacute rejection.

Xenotransplants undergo hyperacute rejection because of the presence of xenonantibodies directed against a galactose-based oligosaccharide expressed on endothelial cells. Anti-galactose antibodies account for 60% of human anti-mouse xenonantibodies, and 70 to 90% of human anti-pig antibodies. The α-(1,3)galactosyltransferase gene encodes for the enzyme that synthesizes the oligosaccharide on endothelial cells of non-primate animals. A transgenic α-(1,3)galacostyltransferase knockout mouse expresses no endothelial cell galactose α-(1,3)galactose. These mice are viable, express substantially less xenonantibody when compared to wild-type controls, and have less activation of human complement.

The mouse-to-rabbit small animal model closely mimics the clinically relevant pathogenesis of pig-to-primate hyperacute rejection. The hyperacute rejection process is known to occur by xenonantibody-mediated classical complement activation. In this model, mouse hearts are heterotopically
transplanted into both weanling and adult rabbits, with mean survival of the graft of 37 minutes and 40 minutes, respectively. Serum from the weanling and adult rabbits was examined, and both were found to have high titers of IgM xenoantibodies and strong classical complement activity with minimal alternative pathway activity toward mouse red cells. The model has the advantages of the close similarity of the pathogenesis of hyperacute rejection to the pig-to-primate model, and the availability of transgenic rabbits and rabbit reagents, as well as the difficult post-operative care of the rabbits.

The guinea pig-to-rat heterotopic heart transplant model has been used to elucidate the pathogenesis of hyperacute rejection. The recipient rat heart develops histological interstitial hemorrhage and thrombosis, cessation of graft function, and hyperacute rejection in minutes. The pathogenesis of guinea pig-to-primate hyperacute rejection was thought to be absolutely dependent on xenoantibody-mediated classical complement activation. However, Platt’s group has identified that hyperacute rejection is initiated by xenoantibody-dependent activation of the classical complement depletion of cascade as well as xenoantibody-independent complement activation by the alternative pathway. In a series of experiments, Platt’s group identified that depletion of recipient xenoantibodies did not prevent hyperacute rejection. However, the depletion of recipient complement with cobra venom factor did prevent hyperacute rejection. These experiments question the relevance of the guinea pig-to-rat model because pig-to-primate (the current gold standard xenotransplant model) is dependent only on the xenoantibody-dependent, classical complement pathway.

A model for hyperacute rejection that is most clinically relevant would simulate hyperacute rejection that occurs in a porcine–primate xenotransplant, specifically involving the galactose-α-galactose directed XNAs. A murine small animal model was recently created using galactose-α-(1,3)galactose transferase knockout mice as recipients and α-galactose expressing mice as donors. The recipient mice, like humans, lack the α-galactose epitope and express the galactose-α-galactose directed XNAs. In this model a donor heart is heterotopically transplanted into the abdomen of the recipient mice. Of the grafts, 56% failed within 48 hours due to classical hyperacute rejection characterized by interstitial hemorrhage, polymorphonuclear infiltration, and intravascular occlusion.

Acute Vascular Rejection

The acute phase of xenograft rejection is characterized by cell-mediated vascular rejection. Concordant species pairs may be used to study acute vascular rejection because, as explained in the previous section, discordant species pairs undergo graft-destroying hyperacute rejection. Examples of small concordant animal models include hamster-to-rat, rat-to-mouse, and mouse-to-rat species pairs. These so-called humanized transgenic mice have been bred to study acute vascular rejection. In these models, severe combined immunodeficient (SCID) and recombinase activating gene-1 (RAG-1) deficient mice are reconstituted with human peripheral blood cells.

Skin xenograft models can be used to study acute vascular rejection and the effects of immunosuppression. Skin grafts undergo vigorous, well-defined, and rapid acute vascular rejection within 24 to 28 hours. Neither concordant nor discordant species pairs undergo hyperacute rejection because there is no direct vascular anastomosis. Instead, the skin grafts undergo a secondary neo-vascularization. In addition, there is a high concordance of skin xenograft survival and organ survival, thus permitting a rapid, inexpensive assay to test for rejection. The relative simplicity of rodent skin grafting allows immunosuppressive therapies to be tested, without the confounding variables of complex surgery and anesthesia.

The hamster-to-rat small animal model is a classical model of acute vascular rejection in which hamster xenografts undergo rejection in 3 to 4 days. In this model, rejection is likely to be T-cell-independent, since both normal and nude rats undergo rejection, and are dependent on the innate immune system since recipient treatment with lefonomide (T-cell inhibitor) also results in acute
vascular rejection.\textsuperscript{53} This model has also been used to study the effects of immunosuppression on xenotransplants. Experiments with immunosuppression, including total lymphoid irradiation, cyclosporine, and tacrolimus (FK-506), have been undertaken,\textsuperscript{34,47} with prolonged survival. A Chinese hamster-to-Lewis rat heterotopic heart model has been described, with acute rejection consistently developing in 4.1 ± 0.1 days.\textsuperscript{13}

The rat-to-mouse and mouse-to-rat models of acute vascular rejection have also been studied, and are particularly useful in elucidating the pathogenesis of rejection. There is a multitude of transgenic mice and rats, and the battery of information about these two species is extensive. Of note, acute vascular rejection occurs in species pairs with MHC class-I and class-II matched antigens, suggesting that the process is MHC independent.\textsuperscript{79} The rat-to-mouse model has been used with donor hearts, kidneys, and small bowel;\textsuperscript{46} however, the heterotopic heart model remains most popular due to its technical simplicity.\textsuperscript{88}

### Chronic Rejection

Chronic rejection in xenografts has remained difficult to study because of the short graft survival secondary to hyperacute and acute rejection. Thus, few models of xenotransplant chronic rejection exist. One group has described a model of chronic rejection in heart xenotransplantation with histologic changes that closely resemble chronic rejection in human cardiac transplantation, or cardiac allograft vasculopathy. In this model, of hamster-to-Lewis rat xenotransplantation, a 1-cm section of hamster aorta is anastomosed to the aorta of a Lewis rat. Intimal graft arteriosclerosis developed at day 21 and was reduced in those rats receiving cyclosporin.\textsuperscript{74}

### LARGE ANIMAL MODELS

Current efforts in developing a pre-clinical model for xenotransplantation are focused on the porcine donor model. It is believed that pigs will serve as the best donor because they are easily bred, their organ size and physiology are similar to humans, and the chance of zoonosis (the spread of a pig virus to human) is unlikely given their extensive exposure to humans.\textsuperscript{17} Baboons were previously considered to be the ideal donor species for human xenotransplantation because of their phylogenetic proximity to humans. There is a shortage of monkeys; the chimpanzee, for example, is considered an endangered species and the available animals are used for virological research.\textsuperscript{36} The baboon-to-cynomolgus monkey was a popular pre-clinical animal model. The survival of cynomolgus monkey-to-baboon xenografts has approached that of allografts. The ethical debate of using primates for organ donation is also eliminated, as there is unlikely to be strong ethical debate regarding the sacrifice of pigs for organ transplant.

### Hyperacute and Acute Vascular Rejection

\textit{Ex vivo} models involving the isolated perfusion of porcine heart, liver, or kidney provide additional information about hyperacute rejection. In particular, continuous monitoring of the graft function and graft rejection is possible, allowing for the correlation of physiologic changes in the graft with rejection. However, the \textit{ex vivo} models must be carefully considered. Isolated models of perfusion, for example, have the advantage of being able to use human blood as a perfusate. In addition, the perfusate may be altered experimentally; however, the human blood that perfuses the organ has a limited amount of bioactive antibodies, complement, and platelets that may adversely affect the rejection.\textsuperscript{75,88} \textit{Ex vivo} models where the organ is in circuit with an animal, as in an extracorporeal circuit, may avoid this drawback.

The pig-to-monkey and pig-to-baboon animal models are two large animal models that closely approximate the transplantation of a pig organ into a human. Pigs are discordant to monkeys,
baboons, and humans. Currently, the baboon is the favored recipient. Compared to the monkey, the adult baboon is larger (10 to 15 kg vs. 3 to 5 kg). While the larger size increases the cost of breeding, the larger size of the baboons allows mature pigs to be used as donors, allows for the safer administration of anesthesia, and a large enough blood volume to allow for post-operative studies. In addition, the pig xenografts do not universally undergo hyperacute rejection in all monkeys. Although all apes and Old World monkeys produce anti-αGal antibodies, certain cynomolgus monkeys do not undergo uniform hyperacute rejection. Baboon recipients of porcine xenotransplants universally undergo hyperacute rejection, suggesting that this model may more closely approximate a pig-to-human transplant. Baboons have anti-αGal IgM levels similar to those of humans but lower levels of anti-αGal IgG.

Three approaches have been explored in pig-to-primate experimental models in an effort to overcome hyperacute rejection, including the depletion or neutralization of anti-αGal antibody, the depletion or inhibition of complement, and the use of organs from genetically engineered pigs that express human complement regulatory proteins. It is unlikely that an animal model with inactivated or absent complement systems would be viable. Instead, efforts have been made to encode the grafts with recipient (human) complement regulatory proteins. Hearts from transgenic pigs constructed with CD59/DAF genomic clones do not undergo humoral rejection and demonstrate improved survival in primates. In a heterotopic pig-to-baboon model of heart xenotransplantation, the addition of the human complement regulatory protein CD46 with mini-gene constructs to the pig results in a mean graft survival of 23 days and histologic absence of C5b and MAC vascular deposition.

A rat-to-monkey model of discordant xenotransplantation has also been established. In this model, the rat heart is heterotopically transplanted into the groin of a cynomolgus monkey by anastomosing the rat aorta and monkey iliac artery and rat pulmonary artery with monkey iliac vein. The rat heart was found to undergo hyperacute rejection in 5.4 ± 1.4 minutes with pathological examination revealing classic hyperacute rejection with pathogenesis similar to porcine–primate hyperacute rejection. The primary advantage of this model is the availability and low cost of transgenic donor rats, and the similarity to hyperacute rejection in pig-to-primate rejection. The primary disadvantage is the confounding variable of the non-functioning, non-physiologic heterotopic placement of the heart. In addition, this similarity assumes that the mechanisms of hyperacute rejection in the rat-to-monkey model can be extrapolated to the more clinically relevant pig-to-primate model.

The pig-to-primate vein graft model is a convenient model to study the molecular interactions of the xenoantibody with the endothelial cell in a large animal. In this model, femoral veins from the legs of a donor pig are removed, and anastomosed end-to-end to one of the femoral veins of a recipient monkey. The advantages of this model are the simplicity of the operation and the ease in obtaining biopsies and samples for analysis.

Chronic Rejection

The pig-to-monkey cartilage model is a potential large animal model of chronic rejection. The development of a model for chronic rejection in xenotransplantation has been particularly onerous because of graft failure caused by hyperacute and acute vascular rejection. A model has been proposed where porcine and bovine meniscal cartilage is transplanted into the suprapatellar pouches of cynomolgus monkeys. Cartilage does not undergo hyperacute and acute vascular rejection because of its limited vascular, neural, and lymphatic supply, and low expression of α-galactosyl epitopes. Dr. Stone’s group describes a form of chronic rejection in the explanted cartilage that developed after 1 month, characterized by T-lymphocyte, macrophage, and eosinophil migration. It is not known whether this model of chronic rejection is pathogenically similar to the chronic rejection of a pig xenograft.
CELLULAR XENOTRANSPLANTATION

The transplantation of animal cells into humans may provide treatments for certain diseases that are caused by deficiency of a cell or cell product. Experiments are currently under way to studying the feasibility of the transplantation of porcine pancreatic islet cells as treatment for insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, hepatocytes for acute liver failure, and dopaminergic brain cells as treatment for refractory Parkinson’s disease. The possibility of successful xenotransplantation of cells is particularly optimistic because, unlike vascularized organ xenografts, classic hyperacute rejection does not occur. The blood supply is from the recipient and the primary immunologic hurdle is T-cell-mediated rejection, for which many immunosuppressive drugs have been developed.

Pancreatic Islet Cells

The reversal of experimental diabetes by fetal pancreas transplantation has been achieved in small and large animal models. The non-obese diabetic mouse (NOD) is an appropriate model for studying the feasibility of pancreatic islet cell xenotransplantation. These mice develop diabetes at 12 weeks. The pathogenesis of diabetes in the non-obese diabetic mouse appears to be similar to human diabetes mellitus. In this model, there is a strong association of diabetes with gene loci on the major histocompatibility complex; an autoimmune pathogenesis is suggested in both species by the presence of lymphocytic inflammation in the pancreatic islets, the presence of anti-islet cell antibodies, and the modulating effect of cyclosporin A. Of interest, splenocytes from NOD mice can be adoptively transferred into wild-type mice, and the wild-type mice will develop diabetes.

A pig-to-mouse model has been used to study mechanisms of islet encapsulation. This model utilizes C57/Bl6 mice and induces diabetes (defined by blood glucose >22mmol/L on at least 2 consecutive days) by intraperitoneal injection of 160 mg/kg streptozotocin, administered 7 to 10 days before xenotransplantation. The pig pancreatic islet cells are implanted within the capsule of the donor kidney. This model has been used to study the effects of immunosuppression on cell-mediated rejection.

Hepatocytes

Chronic liver failure is particularly amenable to xenotransplantation if physiologically similar animal hepatocytes can be either transplanted or placed in an extracorporeal circuit. Clinical liver failure is characterized by coagulopathy, metabolic disorder, and toxic hepatic encephalopathy secondary to synthetic and metabolic dysfunction of the hepatocytes. Many attempts have been made to use functional animal hepatocytes to substitute for the non-functioning hepatocytes. Extracorporeal circulation of patient blood through a bed of porcine hepatocytes, as well as the transplantation of porcine hepatocytes is being actively investigated. Cell microencapsulation with a semi-permeable membrane has been necessary in animal models to shield the hepatocytes from the recipient’s immune system. A group is investigating hepatocyte transplantation using a pig-to-rat model. In this model, hepatocytes are isolated from large white pigs using collagenase. The purified hepatocytes are then encapsulated in a dialysis membrane (acrylonitrile–methylallyl sulfonate) and grafted into the intraperitoneal cavity of Lewis rats. Using assays for albumen synthesis and cytochrome p450 function, the pig hepatocytes were found to be functioning after 15 days.

Neural Tissue

Xenotransplantation of neural tissue for focal central nervous system disorders, including Parkinson’s and Huntington’s disease, remains a focus of research efforts. Parkinson’s disease is
characterized by the loss of dopaminergic neurons in the nigrostriatal pathway. Initially treated with dopaminergic drugs, the diseases eventually become refractory to medical treatment. In limited trials, the transplantation of dopaminergic porcine embryonic cells into primate recipients has restored the deficits associated with Parkinson’s disease. It is estimated that a minimum of 100,000 dopaminergic neurons must survive in each half of the brain for clinical benefit to occur. The physiology and rejection of the neural tissue xenotransplants have been studied in porcine-to-rodent models. In a porcine embryo-to-rat model, Parkinson’s disease is induced by the stereotactic injection of 6-hydroxydopamine in the medial forebrain of Lewis rats. Embryonic dopaminergic neurons are harvested from pig embryos at day 27, and transplanted in the striatum of the Lewis rats. Anatomically correct neural connections were observed, as well as restoration of induced Parkinson’s-like deficits. Despite the evidence of rejection on autopsy, these xenotransplants are particularly promising because the brain is, at least in part, immunologically segregated by the blood–brain barrier.

**ETHICAL CONCERNS**

The current trend in xenotransplantation research is to overcome the challenges of hyperacute, acute vascular, and T-cell-mediated rejection, in hopes of developing a clinically feasible xenotransplant program. This program will most likely involve the transplantation of pig organs into humans. Previously, xenotransplantation programs were expected to involve the transplantation of primate organs into humans. Significant ethical issues were raised, including the appropriateness of using engaging, sociable primates for “spare parts.” The realities of establishing a clinical xenotransplant program quickly shifted attention to other animals as sources of organs. It was found that Old World monkeys, baboons, and chimpanzees were in too short supply to provide a reasonable source of organs. Focus quickly shifted to the pig — an animal that has been bred for food for centuries, with millions slaughtered each year for food. Research efforts advanced quickly, with breeding colonies being established to produce transgenic pigs that would fit, both immunologically and physiologically, into humans better. However, there still remain significant ethical concerns with the current plans for clinical xenotransplantation.

The primary ethical concern that needs to be addressed before the implementation of a clinical xenotransplant program is the risk of disease transmission (known and unknown) to the transplant patient and to the population as a whole. This phenomenon is called zoonosis, and refers to disease transmission between species. With regard to the pig, many viruses including the porcine endogenous retrovirus (PERV) are known to exist; however, concern is that the zoonotic agent (in this case the PERV) may undergo genetic changes that make it more dangerous to humans. Investigators believe that zoonotic agents in transplanted organs are at particularly high risk for mutation because of the large viral load in the graft and the continuous exposure of the agent to the host. They also fear the poor resistance of the host to infection secondary to the immunosuppression and underlying disease process, and the possible immunologic seclusion of the zoonotic agent in the animal graft because of incompatibility of the donor T-cell-mediated repertoire and graft MHC antigens. Dr. Platt summarizes the questions that must be answered with regard to zoonosis: (1) Can the agent infect human subjects in vivo? (2) Can the agent cause disease? (3) Can the agent be transferred from one individual to another?

Xenotransplantation has the potential to provide life-saving treatment for patients suffering from many end-stage diseases. It is clear that xenotransplantation involves significant risks to the patient, including rejection, physiologic incompatibility, and spread of animal diseases to the patient. The latter risk of zoonosis may be extended to close contacts and the population as a whole. The U.S. government has established regulatory commissions under the auspices of the Public Health Service (PHS) and the Food and Drug Administration. Here, xenotransplantation has been defined as transplantation, or infusion into a human recipient live cells, tissues, or organs from a non-human
animal source, or human body fluid, cells, tissues, or organs that have had \textit{ex vivo} contact with live non-human animal cells, tissues, or organs.\footnote{Bloom, E.T. Xenotransplantation: regulatory challenges. \textit{Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.} 3, 312, 2001.} One document outlines a series of regulations including the implementation of a federal xenotransplantation advisory committee, the requirement that all proposed non-human primate xenotransplantation proposals be submitted only after the scientific community has deliberated the risks of the proposal. The document concludes by saying that the U.S. government has not yet established the safety and ethics of non-human primate xenotransplantation.

**CONCLUSION**

Xenotransplantation could provide a near limitless supply of organs to patients with end-stage diseases. A xenotransplant must be physiologically and immunologically compatible with the human recipient. Animal models are necessary for the study of xenotransplantation, and have provided considerable insight into hyperacute, acute, and chronic rejection. Small animal models have the advantages of low cost, easy breeding, and availability of transgenic animals. Large animals are necessary to study the physiology of the xenotransplant and perform immunologic studies that can be more easily extrapolated to humans. The pig has emerged as the most viable source of transplantable organs for humans because of the similar organ size and low breeding cost. With the advent of pigs that express human genes, the reality of a clinical xenotransplant program is closer than ever. However, the ethics of breeding animals for human transplantation, as well as the risk of transmission of animal diseases to human population, has to be considered by society.

**REFERENCES**


INTRODUCTION

The human brain is almost certainly the least understood of our organs. Consequently, when facing the diseases affecting the brain, the medical sciences are often in the unfortunate situation of studying and attempting to prevent or cure relatively unknown pathological processes within an organ in which even the normal conditions are poorly understood. On such a background, it can be no surprise that within psychiatry and neurology, numerous diseases are in a desperate need of both an improved understanding and more adequate methods of intervention (pharmacological and otherwise). The changing age composition of the population makes the human, as well as financial problem of increasing occurrence of Alzheimer’s dementia, a constantly growing issue. The schizophrénias continue to be an immense problem in terms of individual suffering as well as social impact. And focal brain damage on vascular incidence and various types of accidents demand improved methods of posttraumatic functional rehabilitation (in turn calling for an improved understanding of the mechanisms of such functional recoveries). These and numerous other examples stress the need for continued and expanding neuroscientific research. And despite the growing number of methods that allow a more detailed study of the living human brain (e.g., various
neuroimaging techniques), the necessity for well-controlled studies using manipulations of living brains continues to require the use of neuroscientific animal models.

All scientific studies involving animal models are plagued by problems of a theoretical, practical, and ethical nature. Some of these problems, such as the ethical question of whether human use of subhuman species in the fight against human disease is “speciesism” and whether such speciesism is acceptable or not, are common to all branches of animal model research and will not be dealt with in this chapter. Other issues are more specific to the neuroscientific area and its clinical subdisciplines, neurology and psychiatry. A number of these problems are linked to the assumed uniqueness of the human brain and its functions and dysfunctions. Although few may challenge that the livers of human and subhuman species are essentially similar, the neuroscientific community is far from reaching consensus about the level of similarity between the brains and “minds” of humans and other species. The question of similarities between structures and functions of the brains of various species is often considered the most basic problem for the use of animal models in studies of diseases of the human brain. However, such endeavors are often impaired by the lack of detailed and objective methods within the areas of clinical and animal experimentation. Finally, some of the confusion and contradiction within experimental neuroscience may spring from uncertainties about the definition of an optimal neuroscientific animal model.

SPECIES COMPARISONS

The major task of comparative neuroscience is to go beyond the superficial species differences and identify the basic differences and similarities between species. Many structural differences (e.g., the pattern of cortical sulci and gyri) may be of little or no consequence for the organization of brains. Although anatomical analysis has revealed some basic species differences, there seems to be a growing body of evidence indicating a common “bauplan” for the brains of a broad spectrum of species.

A number of features have traditionally been believed to mark the major differences between human and subhuman brains. Although some such features still appear to be rather unique to the human brain, other aspects of the human brain have been found to be shared with more species than originally believed. Although some aspects of the cortical areas believed to mediate production and perception of speech appear to be present in both humans and in certain non-human primates, the presence of unilateral, cortical areas specialized in mediation of linguistic functions, including the Broca area, appears likely to be a privilege of the human brain. Animal models of traumatic aphasias are unlikely ever to be developed — even in non-human primates; see, however, the arguments of Noback. Another aspect of the human brain originally believed to be rather specifically “human” is the fact that the prefrontal cortex constitutes approximately one third of the total neocortical surface. The prefrontal cortex has long been believed to be a privilege of mammals, and some data seem to indicate that “higher” mammals, such as primates, have a relatively larger prefrontal cortex compared with “lower” mammals, such as rodents. Partly on the basis of such observations and partly on the basis of the fact that the prefrontal cortex of some species (rodents) differs cytoarchitectonically from the prefrontal area of primates, it has been argued that studies on the functions of the prefrontal cortex should mainly be conducted in primates. More recent studies of the prefrontal cortex have, however, indicated that this structure may be present in a broader variety of species. Histochemical, biochemical, and functional studies have indicated that the posterodorsolateral neostriatum of the pigeon should be considered equivalent to the prefrontal cortex of mammals. Furthermore, the prefrontal cortex of the echidna (Tachyglossus aculeatus, an egg-laying mammal belonging to the subclass Prototheria) constitutes approximately 50% of the total cortical surface. The prefrontal cortex appears to be present in mammals and in at least some non-mammals alike. The ratio between prefrontal and non-prefrontal cortical surface is not in itself an index of evolution.
Studies within the areas of comparative anatomy and physiology of the brain are of importance to the use of neuroscientific animal models in at least two ways. First, such studies may indicate the areas within which animal models are likely to be useful and the species that are likely to be acceptable for such studies. As indicated above, animal models of traumatic aphasias are hardly feasible. On the other hand, the prefrontal system seems to subserve functions of rather general survival value, and consequently a broad spectrum of species may be available for model experiments in which the focus is on the prefrontal system, its functions, and potential prefrontal involvement in pathological conditions. Motivation for developing animal models of aspects of normal and abnormal functions of the human prefrontal cortex may stem from repeated observations of the prefrontal cortex in patients with schizophrenia.\textsuperscript{15–26}

The second way in which comparative neuroscience may contribute to the development of animal models is by providing the information necessary for making adequate comparisons between structural as well as functional aspects of human and non-human brains. In the case of rat models of processes involving the human prefrontal cortex, the subdivisions of which are functionally heterogeneous,\textsuperscript{27,28} it is important that adequate choices are made about the cortical areas to be manipulated in the animal. Detailed analysis of the anatomy (primarily the afferent connections) of the rat prefrontal cortex\textsuperscript{29–32} has modified such strategies by redefining the boundaries of subdivisions of the prefrontal cortex.\textsuperscript{33} Despite the progress that is being made in the attempts to delineate adequate boundaries between subareas of the prefrontal cortex of the rat (and to establish adequate comparisons to such areas in primates), a number of somewhat dissimilar maps are presently being offered to those who attempt to use rat models in the studies of the prefrontal system. The delineations of Divac et al.,\textsuperscript{29} Krettek and Price\textsuperscript{32} (used in the atlas of Paxinos and Watson),\textsuperscript{34} and Groenewegen et al.\textsuperscript{30,31} are only in partial agreement. Even the feasibility of using cortical projections of the mediodorsal thalamic nucleus (MD) as a basis for definition and delineation of the rat prefrontal cortex has been questioned and consequently subjected to an experimental scrutiny that concluded that although extraprefrontal cortical projections of the MD do exist, such projections are sufficiently rare to allow the MD-based definition of the prefrontal cortex of the rat.\textsuperscript{35} A subcortical example of the ways in which model studies depend on comparative neuroanatomy is found in studies of the neostriatum. The neostriata of both rodents and primates are frequently the focus of studies that attempt to model aspects of the extrapyramidal diseases such as Huntington’s chorea, in which the primary cell loss seems to be within the neostriatum, and Parkinson’s disease, in which a presumed primary cell loss in the pars compacta of substantia nigra causes a drastic reduction in the striatal concentration of the neurotransmitter dopamine. Although pathological changes may be found in non-striatal brain regions of even early parkinsonian cases, it can hardly be doubted that essential aspects of both conditions can be studied in animal models in which the neostriatum has been affected by mechanical lesion, toxins, or local injection of drugs. However, studies on functional aspects of the neostriatum frequently pay insufficient attention to the connectivity and consequent regional specialization within this structure. The neostriatum of all species studied is subdivided into regions, each of which receives input from a specific cortical area with which it is functionally yoked in such a way that lesions of a neostriatal region and its associated cortical area are both accompanied by similar patterns of postlesion symptoms.\textsuperscript{36,37} A possible exception to this rule may be found in the “motor” part of the neostriatum.\textsuperscript{36} Because the neostriatum is heterogeneous and its regions may indeed be as functionally specialized as the areas of the cortex, knowledge about neostriatal organization is of primary importance when one is to construct or evaluate animal models in which parts of the neostriatum have been manipulated.

**FUNCTIONAL ANALYSES**

Within psychiatry, and to some extent even neurology, most of the symptoms defining the diseases are aspects of behavior or introspection and, in the case of introspection, mainly those
that are reflected in verbal behavior. The nature of the symptoms defining such diseases is an obvious problem for the construction of animal models within clinical neuroscience.

Traditionally, the situation in this field has been that the condition of the patient is characterized by subjective and often poorly defined symptoms and that the behavior of the subjects of animal modeling is analyzed in a rather crude manner. Such a state of affairs strongly impairs comparisons between the conditions of patient and animal.

**Similar Tests in Patient and Animal**

An important step toward the solution of this problem has been the trend toward applying more detailed behavioral and physiological analyses to not only neurological but even psychiatric patients. Such studies may in themselves provide important information about the structural and functional basis of a certain disease, for instance, the indication by various neuroimaging and functional methods of an association between schizophrenia and dysfunction of the prefrontal system. Additionally, the gathering of objective information about the condition of patients may allow more direct comparisons between patients and animal models. Studies of the prepulse acoustic startle paradigm in individuals with schizophrenia exemplify this type of progress. When exposed to a burst of strong noise, humans with schizophrenia, as well as those without, display an objectively measurable startle response. If a prestimulus in the form of a weak tone precedes the startle-eliciting noise by 60 to 120 msec, the startle response of healthy controls is significantly reduced, and the degree to which the presentation of the (warning) prepulse is able to inhibit the startle response can be measured as the percentage reduction of startle. Patients with schizophrenia appear to have a significantly less reduced startle response in the presence of the prestimulus when compared with the case of healthy controls. Because the acoustic startle paradigm can be applied to non-human species — and the prestimulus-associated reduction in startle response can be seen in healthy subjects from such non-human species — this technique allows essentially identical testing methods to be applied to both patients with schizophrenia and animal models. The dominating theory about the neural substrate of schizophrenia is the **dopamine hypothesis**, which postulates an association between increased activity of dopamine neurotransmission and the schizophrenic disease (or diseases). The major lines of evidence supporting the dopamine hypothesis are as follows:

- Direct or indirect dopaminergic agonists, such as d-amphetamine, aggravate the symptomatology of patients with schizophrenia and can, even in healthy controls, induce a temporary, psychosis-like condition that is indistinct from acute paranoid schizophrenia.

- There is a strong positive correlation between the clinical efficacy of antipsychotic drugs and their ability to act as antagonists at the dopamine receptor.

- Postmortem studies of patients with schizophrenia indicate an increased concentration of receptors. The up-regulation of the receptors may, however, be the consequence of medication rather than a true aspect of a primary disease. Positron emission tomography studies (PET) have indicated that young, nonmedicated patients with schizophrenia show no measurable change in the concentration of receptors.

Almost all current animal models of schizophrenia spring from one or another aspect of the dopamine hypothesis. The rat model focusing on the acoustic startle paradigm accomplishes either regional or global dopamine receptor hypersensitivity by injecting the dopaminergic neurotoxin 6-hydroxydopamine into either a limited target area or the cerebral ventricles. The toxin causes destruction of presynaptic dopaminergic neurons and, consequently, a postsynaptic up-regulation of dopamine receptors. In animals treated this way, systemic injection of the dopamine agonist apomorphine will cause stimulation of all dopamine receptors and, consequently, dopamine receptor hyperactivity in the region or regions treated with 6-hydroxydopamine. In this rat model, it appears that global dopamine receptor hypersensitivity is associated with an impaired warning effect of the prestimulus tone in the acoustic startle paradigm — a pattern similar to that observed for patients
with schizophrenia. Furthermore, local receptor hypersensitivity in both the substantia nigra and the nucleus accumbens (but not in the frontal cortex) seems to be associated with a similar symptom. Such results lend support to theories associating part of the schizophrenic symptomatology and hyperactivity within the dopaminergic system, and the outcome of these studies may even indicate the regional distribution of such dopaminergic abnormalities. On the other hand, it should be remembered that the acoustic startle paradigm focuses on only one aspect of the disease and that manipulating other neurochemical or regional systems might have provoked similar symptoms.

Although variations of the animal models based on the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia have almost completely dominated the animal model-based studies of schizophrenia for many years (and to some extent continue to do so), a number of more recent animal models of schizophrenia have been developed as well. One such model uses a disruption of fetal neurogenesis by administration of methylazoxymethanol (MAM). The MAM model of schizophrenia is inspired by indications that some of the cytoarchitectonical abnormalities seen in patients with schizophrenia appear to be associated with developmental abnormalities. Prenatal administration of MAM to rats induces cytoarchitectonical as well as functional and behavioral abnormalities that appear to be comparable to some of the abnormalities associated with schizophrenia. Another animal model of schizophrenia focusing primarily on neuroanatomical (rather than neurochemical or pharmacological) aspects of the disease is the ventral hippocampal lesion model. Structural changes within the hippocampus and the entorhinal cortex have been found in patients with schizophrenia, and consequently, early (but postnatal) lesions within the ventral hippocampus are seen as a potential model of schizophrenia. What seems particularly interesting about this model is that rats subjected to such an intervention demonstrate increased locomotor activity in response to stress, d-amphetamine, or novelty when tested in adulthood — while showing no such symptoms before puberty. Such a pattern of symptoms is particularly interesting because patients with schizophrenia normally only exhibit symptoms in early adulthood or later (despite the indications that at least some aspects of the neural abnormalities accompanying schizophrenia are present at or even before birth). Some symptoms seen in the ventral hippocampal lesion model of schizophrenia, however, appear to be present even before puberty. Impaired social interaction is one such symptom.

**Interpretation of Behavioral Tests**

Although clinicians need to provide more objective information about patients, it is equally important that experimenters working with animal models improve the methods of behavioral analysis. Such analysis must be performed at a level of sophistication that allows the experimenter to establish a detailed and broad-spectrum functional profile of the animal. Only such a profile will make it possible to determine the nature of functions that are impaired by a certain neural manipulation (and potentially reinstated by therapy). In determining areas of impairment, it is equally important to establish the integrity of functional spheres that are assumed to be spared by the manipulation under investigation. Alternatively, the observed impairments might be secondary to more basic — but unnoticed — dysfunctions. One example is the observation that prolonged thiamine deficiency in the rat (a potential model for the Wernicke–Korsakoff syndrome), which is associated with impaired acquisition, and retention of an active, step-through shock-avoidance test might not reflect a cognitive impairment but rather might be secondary to a motor impairment. This possibility is emphasized by the observation that thiamine-deficient rats are impaired in tests of locomotion. The motor impairment of thiamine-deficient rats does not in itself invalidate the model because patients suffering Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome may demonstrate ataxia. To establish whether thiamine-deficient rats model the learning and memory impairment that is central to the Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, it will be necessary to analyze the performance of such rats in a learning task that is able to reflect acquisition or retention in ways that are rather independent of the motor performance of the animal. Such a task could be a place-learning task administered in a water maze (a circular pool of water). In this task, the animal’s latency to find a submerged
platform may be heavily influenced by the rat’s motor abilities. However, the distance swum and other test parameters (such as the degree to which the animal initially swims directly toward the target position) are rather unaffected by motoric abilities and — if sensory impairment such as blindness can be ruled out — reflect rather truthfully the cognitive aspects of the test.

### Method Dependence of Behavioral Tests

The necessity of multiple, well-selected, and detailed behavioral tests was emphasized by Sanberg, who compared three animal models: lesions of the neostriatum obtained via the neurotoxin kainic acid, a model of Huntington’s disease; AF64A, which destroys cholinergic neurons selectively and is consequently used in animal models of Alzheimer’s disease; and cortical as well as neostriatal maldevelopment after fetal administration of the toxin MAM. The combined analysis of daytime activity and passive avoidance behavior was unable to discriminate among any of the three models, whereas a subsequent and detailed analysis of aspects of nocturnal locomotion in the same three models allowed discrimination between the MAM model and the two other models. Furthermore, the nocturnal-locomotion analysis was able to discriminate between the MAM model and a model including subpial aspiration lesions of the cortex.

The importance of an awareness of the characteristics of the behavioral tests employed is underlined by results demonstrating that various measures of what is commonly described as locomotion, exploration, or “general activity” reflect the activity of only partly overlapping neural systems; that the nature of the apparatus in which the “delayed alternation” behavior of the rat is tested determines whether this behavior, which is often considered the “Babinski sign” of the prefrontal system, is able to reflect massive destruction of prefrontal structures; and that although lesions of the parietal association cortex of the rat impair the place-learning behavior in a big water maze, similar animals in a smaller water maze do not behave in a way significantly different from that of sham-operated controls.

Often, the quality of the water maze-based place-learning ability of rats is considered a reliable measure of the functional integrity of the hippocampal system. Repeated demonstrations of significantly impaired place learning in water mazes after lesions of the hippocampus, the fimbria-fornix, or both seem to support such a notion. The neural substrate that mediates place learning in water mazes in the rat is, however, significantly dependent on the details of the experimental setup. Not only the size of the water maze but even the number and arrangement of the extramaze cues offered to the animal during task solution are of critical importance. When fewer and less three-dimensionally arranged cues are offered, normal place learning can be demonstrated by animals subjected to transections of the fimbria-fornix or to scopolamine-induced inhibition of the cholinergic system. Using the same water maze and identical place-learning procedures, Mogensen et al. have demonstrated significantly impaired place learning after fimbria-fornix transections when an abundance of three-dimensionally arranged cues is offered around the water maze. Although being associated with a diminished importance of the hippocampal and cholinergic task mediation, the restricted-cue task seemed to be mediated by a neural substrate more heavily dependent on the prefrontal cortex. Place-learning procedures in water mazes are often used in the behavioral testing of rat models addressing various “cognitive” functions, and consequently the danger of misinterpretation of experimental results because of unnoticed or even unrecorded differences between experimental setups is likely to become a growing problem.

A final example of significant functional differences between behavioral tasks that could formally be seen as identical is found in the report of Lepore et al. In this study, cats subjected to a split-brain operation were tested for interhemispheric transfer of relevant visual information acquired monocularly. No interhemispheric information transfer was found if the animals were tested in a classic two-choice discrimination box in which food was offered as reinforcement. However, when trained and tested in a Lashley-type jumping stand, animals suffering identical lesions demonstrated relatively good interhemispheric transfer of information. Although such
conflicting results should ultimately be able to provide a deeper understanding of the relevant neural mechanisms, the immediate conclusion has to be that direct comparison between apparently similar behavioral tests should only be conducted with major caution. Frequently, functionally relevant aspects of a behavioral test remain neglected and unreported, or results are generalized across tests, which are superficially but not fully identical.

Species Selection

Although comparative neuroanatomy is probably the best indicator of which species are available for the creation of a certain animal model, ethical, practical, and financial considerations are likely to determine the species that is actually selected. In the case of the 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP) model of Parkinson’s disease, which indicates destruction of the dopaminergic cells of substantia nigra by the neurotoxin MPTP, the choice between primates and rodents may be determined by several factors. Originally, MPTP-induced destruction of nigral neurons was believed to be possible only in primates, but this model has been found to be feasible even in rodents. The MPTP concentration necessary for achieving nigral damage in rodents is, however, substantially higher than that required in primates. Although neither this species difference nor the relative lack of Parkinson-like symptoms in MPTP-treated rodents necessarily invalidates the rodent MPTP model of Parkinson’s disease (or at least of the disease variant, which in humans can be induced by MPTP), a number of practical problems remain. The toxicity of MPTP necessitates that substantial precautions be taken whenever the substance itself, injected animals, or the cages of such animals are handled. The higher MPTP dosage required if a rodent model is chosen calls for even stricter laboratory procedures than those required for the primate model.

General Strategies

Once decisions about species selection have been made, all available knowledge about the comparative anatomy of the neural systems under consideration will have to be consulted. As much as possible of the available knowledge about the pathological condition being modeled should be taken into account — especially important are data about objectively measurable conditions. Although the majority of studies dealing with animal models in neuroscience have dealt adequately with these issues, more frequent shortcomings are found in the area of animal behavioral analysis. It is essential to the future of neuroscientific animal models that more precise and detailed methods of analyzing behavior are developed. Progress in the area of animal models of global amnesia, including the development of monkeys with combined bilateral lesions of hippocampus and amygdala as a model of this condition, and the subsequent development of theories about the division of the memory systems into those subserving memories and those subserving habits, have been emphasized as an example of the importance of selecting non-human primates for certain modeling purposes. However, the selection of adequate behavioral tests may have been an even more crucial factor for this successful interaction among clinical observations, animal modeling, and basic neuroscientific studies. Even for non-primates, such as rats, available tests can reflect both habits and memories, the latter being impaired by lesions within some of the same neural systems as those necessary for mediation of such tasks in primates.

THE ROLE OF ANIMAL MODELS IN NEUROSCIENCE

What should be required of an animal model within neurology or psychiatry? Is what is now considered the optimal neuroscientific animal model realistically obtainable? And what kind of
models should be striven for? The answers to some of these questions may reside with one additional question: what do we want to get out of such models?

**Homologous, Isomorphic, and Partial Models**

An animal model can, if certain conditions are met, be either *homologous* or *isomorphic*. To be considered homologous, the symptoms displayed by the animal and the cause of the condition in the animal should be identical to the human symptoms and the cause of the human disease. Given our relative lack of knowledge of the etiology of most psychiatric and many neurological diseases, such models within neuroscience are only possible in the case of well-defined lesion syndromes. Even for isomorphic models, it is demanded that the symptoms displayed by patient and animal must be similar, but the animal condition need not be provoked by the same events as those that cause the human condition. If, in a theoretical disease, a specific population of neurons died for unknown reasons, such as genetic predisposition, and it would be possible by injection of a neurotoxin into regions of the rat brain to eliminate a neuron population similar to the one lost in humans, the rats lesioned in such a manner might constitute an isomorphic model of the disease. In this case, the final test of whether or not the model could be considered isomorphic would be the degree of similarity between the symptoms displayed by model and disease. As stressed by several authors, numerous, if not most, neuroscientific animal models are neither homologous nor isomorphic but could be more adequately described as “partial.” Such projects make no attempt at modeling the entire disease but focus on more limited aspects of the human condition.

Many systems have been developed to evaluate the quality or validity of animal models. Although the classification of a model as homologous, isomorphic, or partial constitutes a rather simple and crude system, examples of more elaborate models are those of McKinney and Leonard. McKinney demands the following of the optimal model: comparable symptomatology, comparable etiology, comparable neurophysiological background, and concordant effects of drugs. Leonard emphasizes the need for comparable symptomatology and normalization of the model condition by drug therapy similar to the pharmacological therapy effective against the human condition and stresses that the time course of a drug-induced normalization, for instance, beneficial effects of chronic but not acute medication, should be similar to what is seen in patients. Although a number of the issues stressed by McKinney and Leonard are similar to the demands that a model would have to fulfill to be considered homologous, the most important additional issue taken into account in these systems is the necessity for the model to respond to a given therapy in ways similar to the clinical response to therapy. As emphasized by Willner, the therapies against which neuroscientific models can be tested need not be pharmacological but could include such methods as electroconvulsive stimulation and behavioral therapy. Willner and others have even included separate evaluations of predictive validity, face validity, and construct validity (concepts initially used in the area of psychological testing) in the systems against which neuroscientific animal models are tested.

Given our present level of knowledge, it would be futile to use any of the evaluation systems as a checklist on which every animal model was expected to meet every single demand. The result would, in most if not all cases, be a rejection of the model. Rather, the evaluation systems should be seen as guidelines to the directions in which both partial and more complete models should develop. Furthermore, the evaluation systems may highlight the relative strengths and weaknesses of various models of a given condition.

**Application of Animal Models in Neuroscience**

Neuroscientific animal models mainly serve in two capacities: they are used as a testing ground during early and intermediate phases of the development of new therapies (frequently drugs), and they are used in the process of developing and testing hypotheses about the neurological and
psychiatric diseases in general and about their neural substrates in particular. For the purpose of testing whether a particular therapy is efficient in preventing, relieving, or eliminating the symptoms of a disease and whether administration of the therapy is associated with side effects, one should ideally employ an animal model that mimics as closely as possible all aspects of the disease. A homologous, or at least isomorphic, model is likely to be the optimal choice for evaluation of potential therapies. Given the rareness of such complete models, evaluation of drugs and other therapies is frequently performed in models that are only partial. Some such models may, as Willner has argued in the case of some of the models used in the testing of antidepressive drugs, be little more than “behavioral receptor assays.” Although some of the partial models are far from being a reasonable substitute for the actual disease, valuable preclinical evaluation of drugs and other therapies may be achieved through the use of such models — especially if the same therapeutic method is evaluated against a number of different partial models, each of which focuses on a different aspect of the disease.

Although a homologous or isomorphic model may be optimal for the purpose of therapy evaluation, the models most helpful to the process of studying the mechanisms of diseases are those that lead the experimenter to suspect and eventually realize previously undiscovered processes and relationships. Important aspects of a disease may be discovered in a simple animal model, which focuses on only a single aspect of the human condition. In fact, such a simple model may provide a better environment for discovery than a model that tries simultaneously to mimic all aspects of the disease. As pointed out elsewhere, the models most beneficial to the studies of neuropathological conditions are those of the greatest heuristic value, irrespective of whether such models are partial or of a more “complete” nature. The decision of whether to select or develop a partial or more complete model must depend on which purpose the model in question is supposed to serve. Partial models may be of substantial value in the gradual process of building a more complete image of the disease and its mechanism, whereas more complete models, which usually are only possible in case of better understood diseases, may be ideal for the purpose of testing and evaluating drugs or other therapies.

When developing neuroscientific animal models, the experimenter most frequently chooses as the point of departure the dominant theory about the disease under consideration. Although such an approach may seem logical, it involves a risk of unwanted conservatism. Clinical studies of the organic substrate of schizophrenia indicate four major areas of abnormalities: dopaminergic hypertransmission, dysfunction of the prefrontal cortex and system, cerebral ventricular enlargement, and structural changes in parts of the temporal lobe. Because the prefrontal cortex contains the highest cortical amount of dopamine and has the highest cortical concentration of dopamine receptors, both the prefrontal abnormalities and the abnormalities in dopaminergic transmission may be covered by the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia. Most animal models of schizophrenia — such as chronic administration of d-amphetamine, administration of apomorphine after 6-hydroxydopamine-induced lesions of dopaminergic neurons, or repeated electrical stimulation (“kindling”) of the ventral tegmental area in which dopaminergic neurons project to the prefrontal cortex and nucleus accumbens — focus one way or another on the association between schizophrenia and various parts of the dopaminergic system. Part of the logic of the dopamine hypothesis is that the most potent of the known anti-schizophrenia drugs appear to have a major action on the dopaminergic system. The use of dopaminergic animal models in the search for anti-schizophrenia medication may, in this respect, be a self-fulfilling hypothesis. Such models may favor drugs oriented toward the dopaminergic system and neglect non-dopaminergic medication, regardless of its potential effects on the actual disease. Furthermore, the process of developing a more complete understanding of the neural substrate of schizophrenia may be seriously impaired by the rather one-sided focus of the dopaminergic animal models. An aspect often ignored by such models is the repeated observation of temporal lobe pathology in patients with schizophrenia. Schmajuk has suggested the hippocampally lesioned rat as an animal model of schizophrenia. Although such a model is in itself highly partial and ignores important aspects of the disease, it
represents a step toward widening the focus of animal models of schizophrenia. A number of more recently developed animal models attempt more specifically to address various aspects of the developmental nature of the schizophrenias. Such models include the above-mentioned MAM model\textsuperscript{47,48} and the ventral hippocampal lesion model.\textsuperscript{51}

An example of the seemingly successful widening of the focus of an animal model comes from work on Alzheimer's disease. This dementia has traditionally been associated with dysfunction (and assumed cell death) within the neural system that uses acetylcholine as its neurotransmitter, because cholinergic markers are reduced in the brains of patients with Alzheimer's and the degree of cholinergic reduction seems to correlate with the extent of the cognitive impairment.\textsuperscript{110-112} However, it has even been found that in such patients, minor changes are present in a number of other neurotransmitter-defined systems, such as the serotonergic system.\textsuperscript{113,114} Most animal models of Alzheimer's disease have dealt extensively with the cholinergic system, such as using the cholinergic toxin AF64A to destroy cholinergic projections from the medial septum and basic forebrain to hippocampus and cortex.\textsuperscript{64,65,115,116} In an attempt to establish whether the serotonergic changes seen in the brains of patients with Alzheimer's contribute significantly to the development of the strongly disabling dementia of Alzheimer's disease, Nilsson et al.\textsuperscript{117} studied rats in which the activity of both the cholinergic and the serotonergic systems had been blocked. These animals exhibited a dementia that, in comparison to the symptoms of rats subjected to cholinergic blockade alone, appeared to be more similar to the human condition in being both chronic and more severe. It appears that the addition of a serotonergic manipulation brought the cholinergic rat model of Alzheimer's disease closer to the human condition and, consequently, a partial model evolved in the direction of more completeness and validity.

As already emphasized, so-called partial animal models may in many instances be as valuable as those models of a particular disease or condition that are considered more complete. It is, however, important to keep the partiality of a particular model in mind when interpreting results and using the model relative to the human condition in question. Within any area of interest, the research endeavors should ideally include detailed scrutiny of individual processes (using partial models) and various types of more holistic approaches (using more complete models to evaluate interaction between individual systems and functions). And obviously, the entire animal model-based research program needs to be continually evaluated against all available data from clinical and human experimental sources. Only when the mysteries of the normal and the diseased brain are approached in such a multifactorial program can there be any hope of a significant progress that may ultimately benefit the patients suffering the combined effects of our ignorance and of devastating diseases.

**REFERENCES**


80. Mogensen, J., Lauritsen, K.T., Elvertorp, S., Hasman, A., Moustgaard, A., and Wörtwein, G., Place learning and object recognition by rats subjected to transection of the fimbria-fornix and/or ablation of the prefrontal cortex, submitted.


CHAPTER 7

Animal Models for Psychological Disorders

Robert Murison

CONTENTS

Introduction ....................................................................................................................................111
Animal Models of Depression.................................................................................................... ...112
  Learned Helplessness ...........................................................................................................112
  Chronic Unpredictable Stress and Anhedonia .....................................................................113
  Chronic Mild Stress.............................................................................................................114
  Developmental Models.........................................................................................................114
Anxiety and Anxiety-Related Disorders ..................................................................................115
Schizophrenia .................................................................................................................................116
“Psychosomatic” and Functional Disorders ...........................................................................118
Conclusion......................................................................................................................................119
References ......................................................................................................................................119

INTRODUCTION

It might surprise the lay reader to know that psychological disorders have been modeled in animals for over a century and that the studies of, for example, Pavlov have been crucial to our understanding of both basic psychological processes and psychopathology. A cursory examination of the index of almost any standard introductory text in psychology reveals how influential animal research and animal modeling have been for the development of the discipline. In more recent texts, authors often have chosen to omit the fact that the research findings are based on animal research, which belittles its contribution. One might surmise that this is done to avoid upsetting the student, out of ignorance, or out of political correctness.

Psychological disorders are generally associated with negative feelings and emotions (one rarely becomes depressed by being successful), and thus the models are generally associated with negative events for the animal. Therefore, it is not surprising that psychological studies have been particularly targeted by opponents of animal experiments. This is disappointing in view of the considerable beneficial consequences that much of this research has had on how we treat our fellow animals.

The issue of similarities between the mental lives of animals and humans is of course fundamental. Claims of animal consciousness or unconsciousness are difficult, if not impossible, to verify. However, for a model to be useful, it is sufficient that there are similarities along a phylogenetic
continuum. It is not necessary for the animal mind to be as complex as the human mind — anxiety occurs in both and indeed serves a crucial adaptive function. Perhaps Damasio’s\(^1\) differentiation between core consciousness (present in most if not all animals to varying extents) and extended consciousness (limited probably to humans and their closest relatives) may provide a useful framework. The latter is associated with the presence of theory of mind and awareness of mortality. Following this distinction, it would be fruitless to attempt to model disorders associated with extended consciousness, except in our closest relatives, whereas disorders concerned with core consciousness may be modeled.

To understand the use of animal models in studies of psychological disorders, it is necessary first to delineate the functions of models. This has been discussed extensively by several authors. Overmier\(^2\) provides a useful framework for this field, listing the functions of models as heuristic (question generating), evidential (theory testing), and representational. It is perhaps the first of these that has had the most impact on psychological science by generating hypotheses that are of importance to both animal and human mental health. Models derive their usefulness by their ability to set up analogies between the animal and human domains. Relationships in the one domain help us generate hypotheses about potential relationships in the other domain.\(^3\)

This chapter focuses on behavioral models of psychological disorders. Psychopharmacological research will only be touched on within this context. The themes to be discussed include models of anxiety, depression, posttraumatic stress, and schizophrenia, which are arguably the most pervasive psychological disorders. The discussion cannot be exhaustive but will cover those models considered to have high face validity with respect to human disorders. There has also, of course, been a rapid growth in the use of knockout animals in this field, for example in models of dementia and other cognitive deficits, but it is perhaps too early to provide a comprehensive review of such studies.

**ANIMAL MODELS OF DEPRESSION**

Does the behavioral state of depression have an adaptive value? Social withdrawal in the face of adversity will conserve the individual’s energy until recovery from a perceived threat or stressor is possible. Lowering of anhedonic tone and increased neophobia will protect the organism from unidentified threats at a time of general danger. Depression as a phylogenetic adaptation is discussed at length by Nesse.\(^4\) One of the key features of the depression models here is that they involve aversive experience and a component of uncontrollability over these events. Thus, cognitive factors are central — the organism must be able to perceive that responses and outcomes are independent. Furthermore, for a model of a psychological disorder to function, the disorder that is being modeled must be definable. This would appear to be easier in the case of the affective disorders than in psychoses (to be discussed below).

**Learned Helplessness**

Historically, there have been several animal models of depression that have proved useful in both the heuristic sense and in the development of behavioral and pharmacological treatments in humans. One of the most established of these, and the most cognitively oriented, is the so-called learned helplessness (LH) model of Seligman\(^5\) and colleagues. The model arose from the finding that naive dogs exposed to a series of inescapable electric footshocks (IS) developed a pattern of behaviors that included a failure to learn to avoid shocks, passivity, and resignation.\(^6\) A parallel phenomenon could be produced in humans using uncontrollable noise.\(^7\) The key to inducing helplessness is that the organism must learn that its responses and their consequences are independent — that whatever the animal does, the outcome is unpleasant. This is also a key concept in later theories of human stress, well-being, and disease.\(^8\) In the animal model, it is crucial that the
an amount of aversive stimulation (shock) is of a certain intensity and number; in rats, this is typically 70+ 1-mA shocks, each of 5-sec duration and with semirandomized intershock intervals. Provision of signals either for danger (shock) or for “safe” periods modulates the behavioral effects. As we shall see later, qualitatively different effects are produced by a smaller number of shocks.

Helplessness is seen in several species, including rats, although the criteria for helplessness might not be the same. Significantly, induction of helplessness is preventable by “immunization” (previous experience with controllable shock) and, in fact, Seligman found it almost impossible to induce helplessness in “streetwise” animals. The importance of developmental and earlier experiential factors is thus highlighted. Learned helplessness as first demonstrated has a limited time span, but recent studies have shown that the state is subject to classical conditioning. Significantly, the helplessness condition in animals may be treated by procedures also effective in humans, and it is also related to nonsuppression in the Dexamethasone suppression test, paralleling human clinical depression.

In the rat model, helplessness is not generally manifest as a failure to avoid shock or in increased escape latencies under simple fixed-ratio 1 (FR1) contingencies. Rather, it is manifest as increased latency to escape under FR2 contingencies; that is, the rat seems only to be impaired in relatively complex situations. Furthermore, it seems that not all animals develop the syndrome and that the escape deficit dissipates over time without further testing. No deficit is found if the period between inescapable shock and testing is more than 4 d. The temporal dissipation is parallel to neurochemical changes induced by the inescapable shock procedures.

Clearly, a method that induces a short-lived “depression” has little face value for those primarily interested in human clinical depression. However, new results from Maier show that the escape deficit in helpless rats may be prolonged by reexposure to the cues associated with IS but that the effect of reexposure also dissipates over time. Furthermore, the exposure to the cues must occur within a time period during which the escape deficit normally is manifest. Repeated reexposure to the cues of inescapable shock prolongs the deficit for up to 18 d. However, if the animals are exposed to IS cues for long periods of time, apparently they eventually learn that shock will not occur, and the deficit recedes. Elicitation of a nonspecific stress response by reexposure to cues does not explain the deficit because using other stressors has no “reminding” effect.

A PubMed search reveals more than 1000 references to the LH model since 1967, suggestive of a substantial influence on depression research. The model has been exploited for the development of both behavioral and pharmacological approaches to the human disorder and has clearly been successful in this regard. However, in recent years, the use of the model has been constrained by ethical considerations and in some countries has come to be regarded as too extreme, stimulating explorations of other potential models. Other criticisms of the model have included the “unnaturalness” of the induction procedures, but within a cognitive perspective it matters not what the organism is unable to control, so long as the animal develops negative outcome expectancies.

As with any animal model of any disorder, there are considerable interstrain differences in susceptibility. As just one example, WKY rats seem particularly prone. Early experience also affects vulnerability, a phenomenon of increasing interest not only with respect to depression research. Early handling of animals appears to be protective against later helplessness induction, whereas prenatal stress renders the animal more susceptible.

**Chronic Unpredictable Stress and Anhedonia**

Anhedonia — a general lack of interest in the pleasures of life — is a core symptom of human depression and can easily be tested in animals. The most common methods for measuring hedonic tone include avidity for sucrose or saccharine consumption.

Whereas the LH model generally relies on one exposure to a stressor, the chronic unpredictable stress (CUS) model used by Katz uses a series of different uncontrollable stressors (inescapable shock, forced swim, periods of deprivation of food or water or both, and heat stress, to name but
a few) over a period of weeks. After the final stress exposure, the animals exhibit anhedonia, as indexed by lowered sucrose or saccharine consumption and preference. Significantly, stress-induced anhedonia found in this model is sensitive to the antidepressant imipramine (given during the chronic stress phase). It is reasonable to claim that the LH and CUS models are tapping a common condition. Exposure to inescapable shock leads to a reduction of intracranial self-stimulation in the mesocorticolimbic system, a critical brain area for reward mechanisms,\textsuperscript{20} and, conversely, experience with chronic stress procedures enhances the helplessness behavior in rats.\textsuperscript{21}

**Chronic Mild Stress**

The logic underlying the Katz model was followed up in the chronic mild stress (CMS) model originally developed by Willner and colleagues.\textsuperscript{22} The measure of depression was the same — anhedonia — but the procedures used to induce the state were reduced significantly in severity in comparison with the Katz procedures. The logic is that depression is the consequence of daily, mild, nonspecific hassles rather than of exposure to one or more traumatic stressors. As with the Katz model, the animals (rats or mice) are exposed over some weeks to uncontrollable events, but none of these by themselves are regarded as particularly stressful. These include periods of deprivation of food or water or both, rehousing with strange animals, soiling of the cage bedding, changes from normal light–dark cycles, periods of stroboscopic lighting, and cage tilt. The hedonic deficit is first observed after 1 to 2 weeks of the CMS procedures and is sensitive to a variety of antidepressant treatments, including electroconvulsive therapy and various clinically effective pharmacological agents, including serotonin reuptake inhibitors. The hedonic changes are not limited to sucrose and saccharine consumption but also include sexual behavior,\textsuperscript{23} sleep patterns\textsuperscript{24,25} (similar to human depressives), and intracranial self-stimulation.\textsuperscript{26}

The CMS procedure is finding increasing popularity because it avoids the use of strongly aversive treatments. However, the effect of the procedures is not always apparent, and both its robustness and validity have been questioned.\textsuperscript{27} It seems unclear exactly which if any of the elements of CMS procedures are necessary to produce the anhedonic effect, and some workers have chosen to include non-mild stressors such as intraperitoneal saline injections.\textsuperscript{28} In our own studies, we have observed both increases and decreases in hedonic tone using the sucrose test (Murison and Hansen, in preparation). Although a decrease in hedonic tone might be a useful index of depression (but see Argyropoulos and Nutt\textsuperscript{29}), an increase might be the consequence of environmental enrichment.\textsuperscript{30} Because CMS-induced anhedonia is not completely robust, researchers using the model with other dependent measures should ensure that an anhedonic state has been achieved. Failure to do so will lead to misleading results and interpretations. Notwithstanding the criticisms concerning the robustness of the CMS model, it should not be discarded. Detailed parametric studies are needed to identify which components of the procedure are either necessary or sufficient to induce anhedonia, as well as whether there are interactions with early life events and genetic influences.

One interesting principal question attached to the CMS model is whether the *mild* refers to the procedures or the outcome. If CMS produces an effect similar to the more severe CUS and LH methods, can it really be regarded as mild?

**Developmental Models**

One of the most renowned studies in animal psychology involved the separation of monkeys from their mothers during infancy, performed by Harlow and colleagues.\textsuperscript{31} The result of this manipulation was dramatic, involving social withdrawal, fear, and a condition with parallels to anaclitic depression that is seen in human infants.\textsuperscript{32} The studies provoked strong criticism and are often cited as exemplars by those who are particularly opposed to psychological animal experiments.\textsuperscript{33}
For work with rodents, there is a considerable literature on the effects of early manipulations. As long ago as 1956, Levine showed that early handling or maternal separation of rats permanently altered their emotional and endocrinological state in adulthood. Generally, brief daily early handling rendered animals less emotional and stress resistant as adults, whereas either a single long or several shorter separations from the mother rendered the animals stress sensitive as adults. Problems with the reliability of this paradigm have arisen from the multiplicity of procedures used — age at separation, length of separation, and maintenance of body temperature, to name but a few critical factors. The more recent studies of Meaney and colleagues have tied these effects to specific mother–pup interactions and have shown that the effects may also be transmitted across generations.

**ANXIETY AND ANXIETY-RELATED DISORDERS**

Within its normal range, anxiety clearly represents an adaptive phenomenon, protecting the animals against unknown threats. This is in contrast to fear (and phobias), which is targeted against known threats. Anxiety becomes nonadaptive, or a state of disorder, when it interferes with normal function. Anxiety in animals can be measured by a number of techniques, all with high face validity, but the indices do not always correlate well, probably because of procedural differences.

The oldest and arguably most reliable measurement technique is that of open-field exploration, which might be of either the forced or free type. In the former, the animal (rat or mouse, generally) is placed in the center of an empty arena (typically of the order of $1 \times 1 \text{ m}^2$) and its behavior recorded over a chosen period (from 3 to 15 min). Behaviors typically recorded are activity around the peripheral walls of the arena (thigmotaxis), crossings of the central area, vertical activity, grooming, and defecation. In some studies, defecation has been used as the cardinal measure of anxiety. The disadvantage with the method, as well as the advantage, is the potential for collecting vast amounts of data. Free exploration involves placing the animal in a start box attached to the test arena. As well as those measures mentioned above, the most important score for anxiety is the latency to emerge from the start box into the open-field area. In principle, this latter test is similar to the dark–light two-chamber test. The advantages and disadvantages of this measure have been discussed at length elsewhere, but the test remains popular.

A second popular method is the elevated plus maze. Here, a four-armed maze is placed on legs approximately 1 m above the floor. Two arms are enclosed by high walls, whereas the remaining two are open. Anxiety is measured by the ratio of the amount of time that the animal spends in the closed and open arms, and the number of entrances that are made into the open arms.

A third and more recent method is the defensive-burying situation developed by Treit and colleagues. Many rodent species have a natural tendency to bury objects that they perceive to be aversive. The defensive-burying test entails presenting animals with an aversive object, such as a shock probe, a discrete source of an aversive odor (e.g., ammonia), or a flashbulb. Treit and colleagues have argued that the intensity of burying is an index of anxiety and that this response is modulated by anxiolytic agents. However, it could be argued that this is a test of fear rather than anxiety.

An interesting and simple method is implicitly based on the association between anxiety and increased vigilance. The audiogenic immobility reaction is induced by first habituating an animal to a test chamber with a background of white noise of a given intensity, typically on the order of 80 dB. The habituation session is for a given period of 6 min. On the subsequent test session, the background noise is abruptly turned off after the first 3 min, and the animal’s behavior is observed for the remaining 3 min of silence. The index of anxiety here includes both the time spent immobile after noise is turned off and the amount of vertical activity (rearing). The animal is not totally immobile. Typically, the animal will remain in one position but with head movements indicative of increased vigilance. This method is easy and cheap to perform and has proven useful (see below).
A final method is the acoustic-startle response. Animals are exposed to a semirandom series of brief acoustic stimuli of varying intensities (for example, 95, 105, and 115 dB), and the startle response is measured by movement sensors under the tube in which the animal has been placed. This method has been highly standardized and elaborated. For example, the response is potentiated by fear conditioning\textsuperscript{46} and sensitized by earlier shock.\textsuperscript{47} It is debatable whether the pure acoustic-startle response is a measure of anxiety or fear, although as we shall see, anxiety disorders are related to increased startle. In humans, the startle response may be measured using the eye-blink reflex to an air puff.

Nonpharmacological methods of raising anxiety levels in rodents again involve the use of aversive stimulation. An important series of studies with regard to this was performed by van Dijken.\textsuperscript{48–50} Briefly, rats exposed to a small number of shocks (ten, well below the number required to induce a state of learned helplessness) exhibited a long-lasting reduction in exploratory behavior in a forced exploration (open-field) test up to 21 d after shock. Interestingly, the effect was least 1 d after shock and grew over increasing postshock intervals (note that these were independent groups of animals), and a later study showed no differences in locomotion 1 or 4 h after shock. A marked increase in the auditory immobility response was seen 21 d after shock. Significantly, the long-lasting behavioral changes were sensitive to anxiolytic but not antidepressant drugs. The progressively increasing effects of the short shock regimen over time differ fundamentally from the transient effects of LH procedures, which are, in contrast, sensitive to antidepressant drugs. In a direct comparison of the effects of a short shock exposure with the effects of LH induction, we have shown that the LH shock failed to produce an increase in the auditory immobility response 14 d after shock, in contrast to the ten-shock paradigm,\textsuperscript{51} whose effects we have observed up to 3 months after shock.

Animal models are potentially highly useful in studies of one particular anxiety disorder, post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), and it could be argued that both the LH and the short shock methods described above are indeed modeling PTSD. In humans, PTSD is characterized by increased startle reactivity, flashbacks, and avoidance as a consequence of exposure to unusual traumatic events, and some have reported lower than normal levels of plasma cortisol.\textsuperscript{52} Significantly, not all individuals exposed to trauma develop the disorder, the incidence varying from 20 to 60%. It would clearly be useful to develop a model that would allow us to identify risk factors for PTSD.

**SCHIZOPHRENIA**

Animal modeling of human psychoses such as schizophrenia poses a much more difficult problem than do the affective disorders, for a number of reasons. First, anyone with even limited experience with animals recognizes the face validity of such constructs as fear, anxiety, and even depression, at least in mammalian species; but with schizophrenia there is a lack of the “initial analogy”\textsuperscript{3} so that one must resort to conceptual equivalence rather than material equivalence. Second, there is clearly an element of learning involved in acquisition of anxiety and depression, which facilitates animal modeling. Third, the affective disorders seem to reflect that a normally adaptive phenomenon has become maladaptive. Fourth, schizophrenia seems to affect higher cognitive processes — a disturbance in thinking\textsuperscript{53} — and may become apparent only in species capable of these processes. Crow\textsuperscript{54} argues that the condition is human specific and related to the development of the capacity for language. And finally, the term schizophrenia and the diagnosis of the condition may be insufficiently delineated to model. In summarizing a recent Nobel Symposium on the subject, Terenius\textsuperscript{55} cautions us that “schizophrenia may eventually be shown to be elicited by a large number of mechanisms at a fundamental level...with a final common outcome.” That is, there may be several etiologies leading to a common proximal process responsible for the condition. This is reflected in the multitude of factors found to be of epidemiological importance.
in schizophrenia, such as seasonal effects, relationship to infections during pregnancy, drug abuse, etc. It is also important to note that schizophrenia is characterized by two sets of symptoms — so-called positive symptoms and negative symptoms, which are differentially responsive to the so-called typical and atypical antipsychotic drugs.

Even given these limitations, models of schizophrenia serve several purposes. First, they may be heuristic, providing a framework in which to ask questions about etiology. Second, they may be predictive, for example, used to test potential antipsychotic treatments.

Schizophrenia is often regarded as a cluster of symptoms reflecting thought disorders that are consequent to a brain dysfunction. Because we do not have access to the animals’ mind, researchers have developed animal models based on (1) epidemiological findings and (2) known therapeutic effects in man. The latter is represented by the fact that antipsychotic agents are antagonists of dopaminergic function and that dopaminergic agents induce psychotic symptoms. It has been argued that models based on this have high predictive validity but no construct validity.56

The key issue is what aspect of schizophrenia one should choose to model as the dependent variable in an animal model. On the behavioral level, perhaps the most promising at present involves the phenomenon of prepulse inhibition (PPI) of the startle response.57 The logic underlying this model is that schizophrenia is associated with a deficit in sensory gating, by which the animal is normally able to filter out most of the information available and that allows attention to be directed to salient stimuli. The startle response mentioned above is sensitive to a number of manipulations that will affect intensity and habituation. One of these, PPI, involves presenting a lower intensity acoustic stimulus immediately preceding the normal high-intensity startle stimulus. When this occurs, the normal response to the startle stimulus is modulated. In human schizophrenics, there is a deficit in PPI, suggestive of a weakening of sensory gating.58 It is important to note that the phenomenon of PPI is not restricted to any one sensory modality. Deficits in PPI correlate with thought disorders of people with schizophrenia.57 However, deficits in PPI are not specific to schizophrenia but are also found in other disorders associated with deficits in sensory, motor, or cognitive gating.

Etiological models of schizophrenia have either focused on direct pharmacological manipulations, particularly of the dopaminergic and glutamate systems, which seem to directly mimic the abnormalities of the human schizophrenic brain, or on nonpharmacological manipulations aimed at exploring etiological factors. With respect to the former, dopamine agonists reduce PPI in rats, including apomorphine, primarily through acting at the D2 receptor, and the effect can be blocked by haloperidol. The effect is also blocked by both typical and atypical antipsychotic agents. The PCP model in rats involves glutamate antagonist action and again is associated with deficits in PPI. This effect is not reversed by typical antipsychotics such as haloperidol. However, these models, although having high predictive validity (and therefore useful in development of therapeutic strategies), have little to say about the natural etiology of the disorder. Given that it is well established that schizophrenia is associated with dopaminergic abnormalities, it should not be surprising that pharmacological manipulation of the dopaminergic system will induce changes paralleling schizophrenia.

Currently there is considerable interest in the role of early environmental factors in schizophrenia. Schizophrenia is often seen as a neurodevelopmental disorder that only becomes fully manifest after puberty. Candidates for the induction of the disorder include prenatal infections59 and early stress.60 With respect to the former, several studies have shown how viral infections disrupt normal neurodevelopment (for review, see Lipska and Weinberger56). With respect to early stress and environmental manipulations, research has focused in particular on effects of early handling, maternal separation, and isolation rearing on PPI in the adult rat. Ellenbroek and Cools61 studies using rat lines selected for high or low sensitivity to apomorphine suggest that a single 24-h maternal separation on day 7 or 10 induces a deficit in PPI. In a recent critical review, Weiss and Feldon62 claimed no evidence of either early handling or maternal separation effects on PPI but indicated
substantial evidence for PPI deficits in adult animals that had been socially isolated in the period from weaning to adulthood. This effect was reversed by both typical and atypical drugs.

“PSYCHOSOMATIC” AND FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS

The term *psychosomatic* in its original form means that psychological factors may influence the initiation and development of somatic dysfunction. In contrast to earlier thinking, few today would argue that a disease state is caused by psychological factors. However, most disease states are multifactorial and accessible to psychological influences through either direct nervous control or psychoendocrine influences.

Perhaps the most studied of these is stress-induced gastric erosions. Although these local bleeding areas of the stomach are induced by “physical” stress such as cold or electric shock, the severity is strongly influenced by psychological conditions. Weiss\(^{63}\) showed in a series of studies that severity of ulceration was modulated by providing the animals with control over a physical stressor, in this case electric shock. The Weiss studies provided a framework for later models of the relationship between effort, feedback, and human disease.\(^{8,64}\) In rats, exposure to uncontrollable shock stress renders the animal more sensitive to stress gastric erosions, an effect that is related to induction of LH and is blocked by naloxone and mimicked by morphine.\(^{65}\) Prior experience with controllable stress and coping, however, appears to reduce the animals’ vulnerability to stress erosions.\(^{56,67}\)

As a model for ulcer, one has to be careful in considering these stress erosion studies. Since the discovery of *Helicobacter pylori*, ulcer disease in humans has been regarded as primarily an infectious disease. However, most clinicians and basic researchers agree that other factors are involved, as evidenced by the fact that so few infected individuals develop ulcers.\(^{68-70}\) And both older experimental and newer field studies on primates clearly implicate a role for psychological factors in gastric pathology in our closer relatives.\(^{71,72}\) Others have suggested that gastric erosions of the kind seen in these studies might better be models of erosive prepyloric changes sometimes observed in patients with functional (non-ulcer) dyspepsia.\(^{73}\)

Other studies of psychological influences on gastrointestinal pathology have focused on animal models of inflammatory bowel disease. The models employed have included 2,4,6-trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid (TNBS)- and dinitrobenzene sulfonic acid (DNBS)-induced colitis and, more recently, dextran sulfate sodium (DSS)-induced colitis. Evidence is emerging that vulnerability to and recovery from such chemically induced ulcerative colitis may be influenced by stress.\(^{74-76}\) In primates, the cotton-topped tamarin shows spontaneous colitis, a phenomenon that again has been ascribed to stress.\(^{77}\)

In the 1970s, evidence began to mount for brain–immune interactions. In particular, the studies by Ader and Cohen\(^{78}\) of conditioning of the immune response attracted considerable attention. Little credence was given to the phenomenon until mechanisms were identified, both endocrine and nervous.\(^{79,80}\) Even then, there remained doubt as to whether the so-well-demonstrated interactions had a biological significance either in animals or humans. Although stress clearly impinges on the immune system, and vice versa, implications of classical conditioning have been little explored. Exton and colleagues\(^{81}\) have convincingly shown that classical conditioning of cyclosporin-induced immunosuppression in the rat has dramatic effects on longevity after transplant surgery. Such findings, together with the enormous efforts being made to identify molecular mechanisms, will inevitably lead eventually to a recognition of the importance of the animal work. In a related area, it is also known that conditioning procedures are effective in altering mast cell function in the gut, a finding that will have implications for, among other things, colon disease.\(^{82}\)

Functional disorders are less easy to model in animals, purely because they are defined by the absence of identifiable organic changes. However, studies by Stam and colleagues\(^{83}\) have made use of gut-recording techniques in rats to investigate how prior life events might affect intestinal motility,
a potential model for irritable bowel syndrome, which is a disorder also associated with significant levels of psychopathology. This functional disorder in humans is also sometimes associated with prior infections that might sensitize the perception of autonomic signals. There clearly are great potentials for pursuing animal models in this field. Other functional disorders, such as fibromyalgia and lower back pain, will be more difficult to model but not necessarily impossibly so.

CONCLUSION

It is clear that animal models have provided insight into the etiology and mechanisms underlying affective psychological disorders such as depression and anxiety, and that these have had an impact on the development of theories and treatment of human disorders. The animal-based cognitive theories of depression have led to an understanding that behavioral therapies may replace or at least provide an important supplement to pharmacological strategies. Similarly, cognitive behavioral approaches are proving useful in the treatment of anxiety disorders such as PTSD.

For human psychosis, the implications of the animal models are less clear. But when schizophrenia is seen as a neurodevelopmental disorder, the models at least provide us with an understanding of its risk factors and putative mechanisms. The impact on treatment strategies for the future lies most likely within the psychopharmacological domain.

For the classical psychosomatic conditions, in which organic alterations are identifiable, the impact of the animal models is in emphasizing the need for combining psychological and medical treatments, the latter to remedy the physical symptoms and the former to prevent relapse. Both for these and for the functional disorders, an important lesson from the basic research concerns the importance of changing the individual’s core beliefs concerning personal control over the environment.

Animal models have been developed for several other psychological disorders not discussed here, including alcoholism, memory disorders, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, aggression, and fears and phobias, and the reader is directed to recent reviews that deal with these in greater detail than is possible here.

In all animal model research, consideration must be given to genotype–environment interactions. Different strains of animals may be more suitable than others, depending on the disorder that one wishes to address; and the rapidly developing field of functional genetics will provide us, one hopes, with a much richer picture of these interactions. In the meantime, however, even a cursory examination of the basis of the various models reveals extraordinary variations in the strains of animals used and the exact procedures employed. If we are serious in our use of animal models, greater emphasis should be placed on parametric studies, both with respect to strains and species and to procedures, including husbandry.

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 8

Animal Models in Mycology

Henrik Elvang Jensen

CONTENTS

Introduction ....................................................................................................................................126
Animal Models of Dermatophytosis..............................................................................................126
Animal Models of Subcutaneous Mycoses ...................................................................................128
  Chromomycosis ....................................................................................................................128
  Lobomycosis .......................................................................................................................129
  Mycetoma ..........................................................................................................................129
  Rhinosporidiosis ..................................................................................................................129
  Sporotrichosis ....................................................................................................................129
Animal Models of Mycoses Due to Obligate Pathogenic Fungi..................................................130
  Blastomycosis ...................................................................................................................130
  Coccidioidomycosis ..........................................................................................................130
  Histoplasmosis ..................................................................................................................131
  Paracoccidioidomycosis .....................................................................................................131
Animal Models of Mycoses Due to Opportunistic Pathogenic Fungi ..........................................132
  Aspergillosis .....................................................................................................................132
  Candidosis .........................................................................................................................134
  Cryptococcosis ..................................................................................................................135
  Scedosporiosis ...................................................................................................................138
  Zygomycesis .....................................................................................................................138
  Pneumocystosis ................................................................................................................139
Animal Models of Miscellaneous Mycoses and Algoses .............................................................139
  Miscellaneous Fungi ..........................................................................................................139
  Algae ..................................................................................................................................140
Application of Modified Animal Models in Mycology ...............................................................140
Evaluation of Antifungal Agents in Animal Models ....................................................................142
Animal Models as Mycidiagnostic Tools ...................................................................................143
References .....................................................................................................................................146
INTRODUCTION

The development and application of experimental animal models in mycology are indispensable and used extensively in the study of a wide range of aspects such as pathogenesis, pathology, virulence, transformative properties, defense mechanisms (immunity), therapy, and prophylaxis. For diagnostic purposes, animal models are important for the isolation and identification of some fungi from both clinical and environmental materials and in the standardization of immunodiagnostic assays. Although some fungi are almost host specific — such as the anthropophilic dermatophytes that only very rarely infect animals, *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *farciminosum*, which naturally is restricted to equines, and *Pneumocystis carinii* — fungi are generally not host specific in contrast to many other invasive microorganisms. Therefore, a variety of different animal species are suitable for infection with most of the fungi that are of importance in both human and veterinary medicine.

For the establishment of experimental mycotic infections in animals, a number of different routes for challenge are used. The route of choice is strictly dependent on the goal of the study, which also must reflect the animal, fungus, and disease model applied. In general, disseminated infections are produced after intravascular administration, usually intravenous (i.v.), or by intraperitoneal (i.p.) and per-oral (p.o.) challenge. For a number of fungi, the latter two routes will only produce localized mycosis, but they are more regularly established subsequent to intracerebral (i.cer.), intranasal (i.n.), intratracheal (i.t.), intratesticular (i.test.), intracorneal, intramuscular (i.m.), intramammary, intracutaneous (i.c.), subcutaneous (s.c.), or intravaginal (i.vag.) inoculation.

In addition to causing infection, a number of fungi are deleterious to human and animal health because of their formation of mycotoxins, some of which are among the most toxic (e.g., ochratoxin) and carcinogenic (e.g., aflatoxin) substances known. Moreover, fungi are potent sources of antigens, and some of these (allergens) are the cause of immediate hypersensitivity response (type I allergy). Fungal allergy is usually characterized by respiratory diseases and a high serum level of immunoglobulin E (IgE) to the allergens. The most important source of fungal allergens seems to be spores of especially *Cladosporium* and *Alternaria*, but allergy may also result from exposure to hyphae, as seen in, for example, allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis.

In the present chapter, only the infective aspects of animal models in mycology are covered.

ANIMAL MODELS OF DERMATOPHYTOSIS

In dermatophytosis, the fungi are usually superficially located in keratinized layers of skin, hair, and nails. In severe cases, however, the infection may lead to granuloma formation in the subcutis or become disseminated to internal organs. Animal models of dermatophytosis are used especially in the evaluation of new therapeutic agents, but are also applied in the study of pathogenicity, immune responses, and pathology.

Experimental animal infections in a variety of animal species have been performed with zoophilic dermatophytes, especially *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* var. *mentagrophytes* and var. *granulare*, *Trichophyton verrucosum*, and *Microsporum canis*. Infections with the geophilic and anthropophilic dermatophytes, e.g., *Microsporum gypseum* and *Trichophyton rubrum*, are generally difficult to establish in laboratory animals. *T. rubrum*, the fungus most often isolated from human ringworm, unfortunately has a rather low ability to induce experimental ringworm in laboratory animals. However, certain strains with a high virulence, selected, for example, by passage in animals, produce exothrix as well as endothrix infection in guinea pigs. Infection of rabbits with *T. rubrum* has also been reported, but the lesions produced were not homogeneous; and before inoculation, the animals were exposed to irradiation or were castrated. Models using the natural
ringworm dermatophyte of mice, *T. mentagrophytes* var. *quinckeaeum*, are also used in the study of infection and immunity because of the close resemblance to human dermatophytosis.\(^7,8\) Generally, in the study of experimental dermatophytes, guinea pigs are the animal of choice over mouse, rat, hamster, rabbit, and dog because these animals make their toilet by licking or scratching, and they bite itching or irritated lesions intensively.\(^9\) In the study of skin lesions caused by dermatophytosis, hairless strains of guinea pigs are preferred because the lesions produced are more like those seen in humans.\(^10\) Moreover, hairless animals are more suitable for the application of topical antifungal agents. Studies of infections in dogs are few, but dermal inoculations by zoophilic and geophilic dermatophytes produce uniform and long-lasting infections (3 to 4 months), with mongrels presumably being more sensitive to infection than beagles.\(^3\)

Epidermal inoculation of dermatophytes is the classic method of inoculation and may be done in a number of ways, such as by abrasion with sandpaper, a scalpel, or a lancet, after which the inoculum is applied. Repeated putting on and pulling off tape on a hair-cut area in guinea pigs has also been used to make the skin more suitable for inoculation.\(^4\) Depilation with sodium sulfide (36\%) for 30 min is also useful.\(^9\) Prick inoculation is performed with a needle smeared with inoculum. An advantage of this method is that the enlargement of the process can be expressed numerically, which is important when testing the effect of therapeutic agents.\(^4\) A disadvantage, however, is that the rate of positive infections is less in comparison with the results of the abrasive methods. A nontraumatizing method used on guinea pigs is the occlusive-dressing method, where the area is kept moist after plucking off the hair and the inoculum is applied under a polyethylene film and an elastic bandage.\(^11,12\) In this model, the severity of lesion increases proportionally with the time of occlusion.

A general disadvantage of the experimental dermatophytosis models is that they are not long-lasting. However, a prolonged infection in guinea pigs can be maintained using highly virulent strains of *T. mentagrophytes* or by transplantation of their skin, which subsequently is infected, into athymic nude mice.\(^4,13\) However, administration of steroids and other immunosuppressants and the use of germ-free animals are not effective for prolonging an infection.\(^14\)

The i.v. route for the establishment of dermatophytosis is also widely used, especially as a model in the testing of new therapeutic agents.\(^9,15–17\) As in skin inoculations, the zoophilic dermatophytes especially exhibit a tropism for infecting the skin after i.v. inoculation (Figure 8.1). A disadvantage of the i.v. route for dermatophytes is that internal organs, especially the lungs, also are regularly invaded. Moreover, in these models, relapse of ringworm in animals that were cured is often seen and is thought to originate from lesions in internal organs.\(^9\) Concerning reproductivity of skin lesions after i.v. inoculation with *T. mentagrophytes* as an example, the guinea pig is also the animal of choice, with the rabbit and dog being of intermediate value, and the chicken, mouse, and rat being considered useless due to a very low susceptibility.\(^4,9\) Intravenous inoculation of non-dermatophytes, such as *Candida albicans*, *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Rhizopus* spp., and *Absidia corymbifera*, may also result in mycotic folliculitis and skin eruptions.\(^9,18–20\)

Routes of infection other than the cutaneous and intravenous are usually not successful or only sporadically successful. However, intraperitoneal inoculation of mice with *T. rubrum* may result in the development of granulomatous lesions.\(^21\) Apart from laboratory animals, domestic animals, such as goats, pigs, cattle, and horses, are also used for experimental inoculations.\(^4\) However, the course of infection in these animals are often too short to be compared with the chronic spontaneous infections found in humans and animals. Particular attention has been paid to the development of a vaccine against trichophytosis in cattle based on a killed or an attenuated strain of *T. verrucosum*.\(^22,23\) However, in humans, the results of vaccination against different types of superficial mycoses, including dermatophytosis, have been rather disappointing.\(^24\) Experimental dermatophytosis has also been produced in volunteers, and when their course of infection is compared with spontaneous infections, it always resolves quickly, like experimental infections in most animals.\(^25\)
When dealing with laboratory animals with ringworm, whether received experimentally or naturally, one must always pay attention to the risk of being infected, as many of the zoophilic dermatophyte species also easily cause ringworm in humans.

**ANIMAL MODELS OF SUBCUTANEOUS MYCOSES**

In this group of mycoses, a number of heterogeneous fungi are responsible for infection. In general, the infections are the result of traumatic implantation of the fungus into the skin, and the infection is only slowly spreading into surrounding tissues. In some infections, extension by lymph vessels is frequent (sporotrichosis); in other diseases, hematogenous spread may also be seen (chromoblastomycosis).

**Chromomycosis**

Chromoblastomycosis encompasses a specific clinical entity ( verrucous dermatitis) and is caused by a limited series of soil-inhabiting dematiaceous fungi, showing sclerotic cells as the parasitic form, of which *Fonsecaea* spp. are the most important. Other clinical types of infection with dematiaceous fungi are termed phaeohyphomycosis (hyphal forms in infected tissue) and may be manifested in a variety of clinical types. In humans, the infection may be caused by a variety of fungi belonging to several genera, such as *Wangiella* spp. and *Cladosporium* spp. Chromoblastomycosis and phaeohyphomycosis are collectively referred to as chromomycosis. Mice, rats, rabbits, hamsters, guinea pigs, and monkeys are susceptible to experimental chromomycosis, with...
mice and rats having the highest susceptibility.\textsuperscript{28} Both localized dermal and systemic infections with reactions that resemble those observed in humans have been produced in a number of animal models by inoculation by different routes, such as s.c., i.v., and i.p.\textsuperscript{4,26,29} Moreover, animal inoculations are used to distinguish \textit{Cladosporium carrionii} from \textit{Cladosporium bantianum}, the latter being highly neurotropic.\textsuperscript{26}

\textbf{Lobomycosis}

Lobomycosis is caused by a yeast-like organism referred to as \textit{Loboa loboi}, which has not been cultured \textit{in vitro}.\textsuperscript{26} Clinically, lobomycosis is a chronically localized subepidermal infection. Experimental infections have been successfully established in hamsters by inoculation of clinical material, resulting in a clinical picture similar to that seen in humans.\textsuperscript{30} In turtles, tortoises, and armadillos, the lesions develop more rapidly and are accompanied by liquefactive necrosis.\textsuperscript{26} In mice, i.p., i.c., and i.test. inoculations have been unsuccessful, whereas transfer of the infection through generations of mice is feasible by using the hind footpad as the inoculum site.\textsuperscript{26,30}

\textbf{Mycetoma}

\textit{Mycetoma s. maduromycosis} is a clinical syndrome of localized indolent, deforming, swollen lesions and sinuses, involving cutaneous and subcutaneous tissues, facia, and bone.\textsuperscript{31} The infection is established by a variety of bacteria (actinomycetoma) and true fungi (eumycetoma). Experimental actinomycotic granules caused by \textit{Nocardia} spp. and \textit{Actinomadura} spp. have been produced in a variety of animals: mice, hamsters, rabbits, goats, and guinea pigs.\textsuperscript{4} Subcutaneous lesions are generally produced after s.c. inoculations, whereas granules in internal organs and on the abdominal wall are produced after i.v. and i.p. inoculation, respectively. With eumycotic agents, establishment of animal models has had limited success, and reports of experimental animal inoculations are few.\textsuperscript{4,31} Inoculation of eumycotic fungi i.p. into mice only produces granules in a small number of the animals challenged.\textsuperscript{32,33} However, s.c. nodules with granules similar to those in patients are formed in rabbits inoculated s.c. with \textit{Exophiala jeanselmei}.\textsuperscript{34} Only rarely are fungi such as \textit{Aspergillus fumigatus} and \textit{T. rubrum} the causative agents in mycetomas. However, i.p. inoculation of mice with these fungi may also result in the formation of granules.\textsuperscript{35,36}

\textbf{Rhinosporidiosis}

Rhinosporidiosis is a chronic granulomatous disease of the nasal mucocutaneous tissue and is caused by \textit{Rhinosporidium seeberi}. Although many attempts to transfer the disease to experimental animals have been done, a model for prolonged and chronic disease has not yet been developed.\textsuperscript{26} In a few instances, granulomata have been produced, but sustained and progressive disease as seen in humans has not occurred.\textsuperscript{26}

\textbf{Sporotrichosis}

Sporotrichosis is caused by the dimorphic fungus \textit{Sporothrix schenckii}. Clinical types of sporotrichosis are cutaneous, lymphocutaneous, extracutaneous, and disseminated.\textsuperscript{26,37} In laboratory animals, infection with \textit{S. schenckii} may be established in mice, rats, gerbils, hamsters, rabbits, guinea pigs, dogs, cats, and monkeys.\textsuperscript{4,26} The disease is seen after challenge by the i.p., i.v., i. test., s.c., and i.m. routes. Mice and rats are particularly susceptible, and a systemic infection is established after, for instance, i.p. inoculation, a course of infection only rarely seen in humans.\textsuperscript{37} In rabbits and guinea pigs, the course of disease is more variable than in mice and rats.\textsuperscript{4} A lymphatic infection that in many aspects resembles the course of human infection is produced in cats, hamsters, and monkeys after s.c. footpad inoculation.\textsuperscript{38–41} Histopathologically, characteristic asteroid bodies
surrounding the fungal cells are sometimes seen in testicular tissue of mice, rats, hamsters, and guinea pigs. Furthermore, differences in thermophilia for colony formation (35°C and 37°C) of \textit{S. schenckii} isolate the fungus and, depending on the temperature under which the animals are kept, the fungus will grow in different organs of mice and rats. Therefore, when working with experimental infections due to \textit{S. schenckii}, it is mandatory that the temperature under which the animals are kept is fully controlled. Some investigators recommend that the animals be kept at 20°C as the rate of infection is higher at this temperature.

\textbf{ANIMAL MODELS OF MYCOSES DUE TO OBLIGATE PATHOGENIC FUNGI}

Mycoses in this group are caused by species that have the ability to elicit disease in normal hosts when the inoculum is of a sufficient size. Therefore, cultures of these fungi should be handled in the most rigorous of containment facilities, and by experienced personnel only. The mycoses are usually systemic and occur in restricted geographic areas, primarily in North and South America and Africa. The obligate pathogenic fungi are dimorphic and exhibit a morphological transition from a mycelial (saprophytic) form to a budding yeast-like (parasitic) form in infected tissue in which chronic granulomatous processes are formed.

\textbf{Blastomycosis}

Blastomycosis is caused by \textit{Blastomyces dermatitidis} and is characterized by having a primary pulmonary stage that may be followed by dissemination to other body sites, especially the skin and bones. Mice are highly susceptible to yeasts of \textit{B. dermatitidis}, but the maturity of mice (body weight and age) is a critical factor in resistance, as is the strain of mice used, because they influence both the course of infection and the lethality in mice when challenged with \textit{B. dermatitidis}. Mice are preferably infected by the aerogene route because it is the natural portal of entry in humans. After i.n. challenge, an acute to chronic pulmonary infection is established, and dissemination to other organs may be seen. In this model, the course of infection and the pathological reactions seen are comparable with human blastomycosis. By experiments in hamsters, which are more susceptible to infection than mice, a female:male lethal ratio of 1:7 is observed, which corresponds to the 1:9 ratio in humans. Moreover, treatment of ovariectomized hamsters with testosterone will render them as susceptible as male hamsters, and castrated males are more resistant than normal ones. These results with experimental blastomycosis strongly point to the importance of always giving full information on the model used. More rarely, guinea pigs and dogs are also used as models of blastomycoses.

\textbf{Coccidioidomycosis}

Coccidioidomycosis is usually a mild respiratory infection due to \textit{Coccidioides immitis}. Rarely, the infection is an acute or chronic disseminating and fatal mycosis. Experimental disease can be produced in most laboratory animals. Mice are usually used, and according to inoculum, port of entry, and strain, the course of disease may vary from acute fatal to chronic. In the i.p. and i.n. model of coccidioidomycosis, as in blastomycosis, a marked difference in susceptibility has been found in a variety of genetically different but defined mice. Also, the course of coccidioidomycosis in mice is highly age dependent but not sex dependent. The pulmonary model in mice mimics the infection of humans with a characteristic formation of granulomas. As immunized mice restrict extrapulmonary dissemination, which is seldom seen in human cases, this model should be considered in, for example, pathogenicity studies. Apart from mice, guinea pigs, dogs, and monkeys are also applicable in the study of different aspects of coccidioidomycosis.
Histoplasmosis

Histoplasmosis capsulati, a granulomatous disease, is caused by *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* and has worldwide distribution. Clinically, the disease may vary from subclinical or completely benign to a chronic progressive lung disease, a chronic cutaneous or systemic disease, or an acute fulminant and fatal systemic infection. While there may be no good animal model of the more chronic forms of infection by *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum*, reproductive animal models of acute pulmonary, disseminated, and ocular forms have been developed and are applied extensively in studies concerning therapy. Experimental histoplasmosis is easily produced in mice and dogs by i.v. and i.n. challenge, whereas guinea pigs, hamsters, rabbits, and rats vary considerably in their susceptibility to infection. The self-resolving infection of the murine lung after i.t. inoculation of yeast cells is an essential model for the most frequent human form of subclinical infection. Because as few as one to ten yeast cells or even a single macroconidium will infect a mouse, it is a useful means of isolation of the fungus from patient material and soil samples, for which a standardized procedure is devised. Also, monkeys and poikilothermic animals have been used as experimental models of histoplasmosis. In the latter group, it was found that the lesions of animals kept at 25ºC contained mycelium, and those housed at 37ºC contained yeast cells regardless of the infectious material.

Histoplasmosis farciminosi is caused by a variant called *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *farciminosum* and is the cause of epizootic lymphangitis in horses, donkeys, and mules. Experimental disease by i.d. and i.p. inoculation of mice and rabbits has been produced. However, in these animals, the disease had not caused what is seen in equines, that is, formation of lymphangitis.

Histoplasmosis duboisii (African histoplasmosis) is caused by *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *duboisii*, and the disease evoked by this fungus is characterized by granulomatous and suppurative lesions, primarily of the cutaneous, subcutaneous, and osseous tissues. Because the space of time between infection and clinical symptoms in natural infection with *H. capsulatum* var. *duboisii* is long, the disease sometimes has been imported through primates to countries outside the African continent. Experimental infections in animals have been studied in a number of species, such as mice, hamsters, guinea pigs, rabbits, and pigeons; and in comparison with *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum*, the *duboisii* variant is of relatively low virulence. In laboratory animals, the course of infection is comparable to that in human cases. Histologically, the reaction is initially histiocytic, which is later replaced by giant cells. These are also dominant in the human granulomatous lesions of African histoplasmosis.

Paracoccidioidomycosis

Paracoccidioidomycosis is caused by *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* and is a chronic granulomatous disease that, after nidation in the lung, disseminates to form ulcerative granulomas of especially the head and gastrointestinal mucosa. Lymph nodes are also often involved. As for *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* and *B. dermatitidis*, the fungus may be isolated from clinical material by inoculation into laboratory animals where, for example, i.test. inoculation of rats, of which the mountain rat (*Proechimys guayanensis*) is particularly susceptible to infection, should be used. Next to mice, hamsters, which are more susceptible than guinea pigs, rabbits, and pigeons; and in comparison with *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum*, the *duboisii* variant is of relatively low virulence. In laboratory animals, the course of infection is comparable to that in human cases. Histologically, the reaction is initially histiocytic, which is later replaced by giant cells. These are also dominant in the human granulomatous lesions of African histoplasmosis.
is the most suitable one for the study of paracoccidioidomycosis with respect to, for example, pathogenesis.

**ANIMAL MODELS OF MYCOSES DUE TO OPPORTUNISTIC PATHOGENIC FUNGI**

Infection due to fungi in this group is normally only established when predisposing factors are present. The list of factors promoting the development of opportunistic mycotic infections is quite large and comprises aspects regarding the fungus (e.g., dose of exposure and virulence of strain), but much more important are predisposing, favoring, or stimulating factors in the host. Among predisposing conditions in humans, the most important ones include diseases such as diabetes mellitus, acute lymphoblastic leukemia, and other hematological neoplasms, and the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Also, the use of therapeutics that compromise the immunological status of humans or animals or compromise the normal bacterial flora of the outer surfaces and the gastrointestinal tract (e.g., corticosteroids, broad-spectrum antibiotics, and chemotherapeutics) is conductive to opportunistic fungal infections. Some agents directly stimulate the growth of fungal agents, such as deferoxamine (or administration of iron) in aspergillosis, candidosis, and zygomycosis. In women, pregnancy or the use of high-estrogen-containing oral contraceptives are predisposing factors for developing vaginal candidosis.

A number of immunodepressed animal models have been developed to obtain models related to the conditions described in humans and animals. Induced immunosuppression by treatment with, for example, x-irradiation, corticosteroids, cyclophosphamide, mechlorethamine, or splenectomy is frequently used. Spontaneous immunosuppressive animal models such as congenitally athymic nude mice or New Zealand Black (NZB) mice (defective in T lymphocytes) and AKR/J leukemic mice are used not only to mimic the infections in humans under immunocompromised conditions, but also to study of the defense mechanisms involved during different mycoses. Endocrinological disturbance models such as diabetic models are routinely produced in various animals by administration of alloxan or streptozotocin. It should also be noted that sex hormones are also of significant influence on the establishment of some systemic mycoses, such as blastomycosis. Likewise, in the model of vaginal candidosis, it is essential to use oophorectomized animals, usually rats and mice, which are treated with estrogen to bring them into a permanent state of pseudoestrus.

**Aspergillosis**

Aspergillosis refers to a number of diseases in which *Aspergillus* spp. are involved. Generally, the disease results from toxicity due to contaminated food, allergy mainly due to spore allergens, pulmonary colonization without extension, and invasion with or without subsequent dissemination. *Aspergillus fumigatus* is the most important pathogen, with *A. flavus*, *A. niger*, and *A. terreus* being less frequent in a decreasing manner. In humans, the lung is the most common site affected, and preexisting or concurrent lung diseases are a major factor predisposing a host to infection. However, most of the predisposing factors mentioned in the introduction to the present section dealing with the opportunistic pathogenic fungi are also responsible for the development of aspergillosis. Especially in severely debilitated persons, the course of infection may be dissemination, with localization in a variety of internal organs. In veterinary medicine, avian aspergillosis and bovine proventriculitis and placentitis with subsequent abortion, due especially to *A. fumigatus*, are of great importance. Invasive lung aspergillosis may be established in mice, chicks, ducks, rabbits, rats, and other laboratory animals when used as inhalation models (challenged i.n. or i.t.) in which the conidia are given in aerosols in either a dry or wet form. In these models, the mouse is preferred, and treatment with cortisone is essential for the development of a high incidence of fatal pulmonal...
aspergillosis as murine alveolar macrophages are capable of preventing germination and can kill spores.86–88 However, in the cortisone-treated animals, the lysosomal membranes within macrophages are stabilized, making the animals more susceptible to infection.89,90 An experimental pulmonary aspergilloma model in rabbits is established by artificial bronchostenosis, ligature of pulmonary artery, and injection of \textit{Aspergillus} spores into the distal bronchus. In this model, bronchiectasis, cavity and cyst, and a massive laminated growth of hyphae are found within the bronchial lumen, which is similar to the human aspergilloma.90 The aerogene route of entry to the body is, compared with i.v. and i.p. inoculations, compatible with the natural entry in humans, in which the lungs are the most frequent portal of entry. By the i.v. route, disseminated forms of aspergillosis are formed regularly, whereas dissemination after i.p. challenge often requires treatment by cortisone or cyclophosphamide.73 The i.v. model of disseminated aspergillosis, however, has the advantage that a precise dose-related course of infection can be established, which is important in the evaluation of virulence parameters (ID$_{50}$ and LD$_{50}$) of different fungal strains and of the estimation of therapeutic parameters such as TD$_{50}$, ED$_{50}$, and PD$_{50}$. In the systemic aspergillosis model, the kidneys are the target organs. However, when pregnant animals (cows, sheep, and mice) are inoculated i.v. by spores from \textit{A. fumigatus}, the placenta is also a target organ (Figure 8.2).92–94

After the mouse, the rabbit is the dominant animal species used in the study of experimental aspergillosis.73 By i.v. challenge, the course of disseminated infection may vary from acute to chronic, depending on the size of inoculum. As in mice, administration of immunosuppressive agents will turn the infection into extensive aspergillosis. The rabbit lung has a high susceptibility to aspergillosis. Primary pulmonary aspergillosis in rabbits is established by i.t. inoculation of spores; and as in mice, the use of immunosuppressive drugs is essential for the establishment of fatal infections. In this model, a primary and predominant involvement of the lung tissue is seen with subsequent spread to especially the liver, spleen, and kidneys.73 Moreover, among laboratory animals, natural occurrence of aspergillosis is especially reported in rabbits.96

Localized aspergillosis models of endophthalmitis and endocarditis have also been described. In the latter model, the fungal spores are introduced i.v. into animals that have received an intracardial catheter.97 From the occlusive vegetations formed on the valves infected, emboli are carried to other organs in which subsequent aspergillosis develops.

Rats have also been extensively used as models for aspergillosis and show no significant differences in the course of infection compared with the other animal species.75

A primate model in rhesus monkeys of allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis was established by Golbert and Patterson.98

![Figure 8.2](https://example.com/figure82.jpg)  
**Figure 8.2** Experimental aspergillosis in a pregnant mouse (day 16 of pregnancy) inoculated i.v. with \textit{Aspergillus fumigatus} on day 10 of pregnancy. (1) The growth of hyphae in the periphery of the placental disc (PD) and Reichert's membrane (R) is accompanied by necrosis and polymorphonuclear cell infiltration. (2) Hyphae are seen arround amnion and within the fetal skin (arrow). (From Jensen, H.E. and Hau, J., \textit{In Vivo}, 4, 247, 1990. With permission).
Candidosis

Candidosis is an opportunistic infection caused by yeasts of the genus *Candida* and predominantly of the species *Candida albicans*. The manifestations of candidosis range from acute and subacute to chronic, and may involve the skin, mucous membranes, or more rarely, become systemic. Here, only experimental infections with *C. albicans* will be considered because it is the dominant cause of human candidosis, and infections by other pathogenic *Candida* spp. show comparable events in laboratory animals. Disseminated infections have been produced in a number of different species (e.g., rats, rabbits, and guinea pigs) by i.v. and i.p. challenge. The mouse is the most-often used model for systemic candidosis. It should be noted, however, that guinea pigs are particularly resistant to i.p. challenge with blastospores of *Candida*, and that rabbits are more susceptible to infection than mice. Among strains of mice, there are prominent differences in the susceptibility to *C. albicans* infections after i.v. challenge, with C57BL/6, C57BL/6J, and Sec/1Rej being most resistant and the C57C57BL/Hej, BALB/c, and CBA/J mice being moderately susceptible. The highest susceptibility is found in AKR/J, CBA/CaJ, DBA/1J, DBA/2J, A/J, and RF/J mice. These differences in susceptibility probably reflect different properties in the release of lymphokines, the degrees of natural killer cell activity, and function of the complement system.

Systemic candidosis is also seen after i.p. and i.cer. challenge of rabbits and rats with blastospores. In systemic infection models, the kidneys are the target organ, which seems to reflect an initial protection from inflammatory cells by intraluminal localization in the tubuli (Figure 8.3). However, recently it was shown that the placenta of pregnant mice showed an even higher susceptibility to infection, which may be a general feature after i.v. challenge of pregnant animals with opportunistic pathogenic fungi (see also Aspergillosis and Zygomycosis; Figure 8.4). In Figure 8.5, the pathogenesis of murine mycotic placentitis is shown. Localized organ manifestations may also be seen after i.v. and i.p. challenge of animals, such as endophthalmitis in rabbits and dermatitis in guinea pigs. Localized exogenous candidosis models of endophthalmitis, dermatitis, arthritis, cystitis, and endocarditis (see Aspergillosis) have all been established in rabbits and other animals. Cutaneous candidosis can be produced in a wide range of animals, but the guinea pig is especially susceptible; and when diabetic animals (alloxan treated) are used, the lesions formed are compatible with the human form, and, therefore, the model is commonly used in the screening of new antifungal agents. The model of chronic vaginitis, usually established in rats, is also widely used in the evaluation of new antifungal agents. The infection is established by i. vag. inoculation of blastospores into animals that are oophorectomized and kept in a permanent state of pseudoestrus by weekly injections of estrogen. Localized oral candidosis (known as thrush) in rats, as well as the crop of several avian species, is produced after p.o. challenge with blastospores. The disease is favored by a carbohydrate-rich diet, antibiotic treatment, and use of germ-free or specific pathogen free (SPF) animals. The model of chronic vaginitis, usually established in rats, is also widely used in the evaluation of new antifungal agents. The infection is established by i. vag. inoculation of blastospores into animals that are oophorectomized and kept in a permanent state of pseudoestrus by weekly injections of estrogen. Localized oral candidosis (known as thrush) in rats, as well as the crop of several avian species, is produced after p.o. challenge with blastospores. The disease is favored by a carbohydrate-rich diet, antibiotic treatment, and use of germ-free or specific pathogen free (SPF) animals. Also, localized candidosis in air-filled subcutaneous cysts that imitate thrush is used in the testing of antifungal agents. Intragastric challenge in infant mice results in systemic spread of candidosis, whereas the same course of infection in adult animals requires some compromising treatment with, for example, antibiotic and cytotoxic agents.

Recently, a murine model of *Candida* mastitis was developed (Figures 8.6 through 8.9). The model, which was found to be discriminative and a model of localized candidosis, was applied to different strains of mice (BALB/c, severely combined immunodeficiency [SCID], and nude BALB/c mice). In several studies, Guhad et al. showed that the model was usable to analyze the virulence properties of *C. albicans*, the application of antifungal drugs, and the impact of the immune system on the infection.

In murine models of candidosis, an enhancement of infection is seen after treatment with an overload of iron. Iron also enhances the course of aspergillosis and zygomycosis and seems to be a result of saturation of fungal siderophores, iron-transport cofactors, which bind iron and form...
a chelate that is essential for the growth of the fungi.\textsuperscript{72,73,75} Generally, x-irradiated, corticosteroid-treated, and diabetic animals also have a reduced tolerance to challenge with blastospores.\textsuperscript{18,72,73}

Finally, it should be mentioned that i.m. injection of \textit{C. albicans} blastospores (viable, heat killed, or lyophilized) is a well-recognized experimental model of murine amyloidosis that may be used in studying pathogenesis and treatment of amyloidosis.\textsuperscript{116}

\section*{Cryptococcosis}

Cryptococcosis is a subacute or chronic, rarely acute, pulmonary, systemic, or meningeal infection caused by the yeast \textit{Cryptococcus neoformans}.\textsuperscript{71,72} Classically, two varieties of the fungus are described: \textit{Cryptococcus neoformans} var. \textit{neoformans} and \textit{C. neoformans} var. \textit{gattii}. These two varieties comprise serotypes A, D, and AD and serotypes B and C, respectively. On the basis of

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{figure8_3.png}
\caption{Experimental renal candidosis in a mouse after i.v. challenge with \textit{Candida albicans} blastospores.}
\end{figure}

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{figure8_4.png}
\caption{Experimental candidosis in a pregnant mouse. The fungi are characteristically restricted to the periphery of the placental disc (PD) and the degenerated Reichert's membrane (R). UW = uterine wall; SP = splanchnopleura; F = fetus. (From Jensen, H.E. et al., \textit{APMIS}, 99, 829, 1991. With permission.)}
\end{figure}
Figure 8.5  The pathogenesis of murine placental candidosis. Arrows indicate the origin and extent of murine candidosis. A = amniotic cavity; D = decidua; F = fetus; L = labyrinth; S = spongiotrophoblasts; 1 = uterine wall; 2 = Reichert's membrane; 3 = splanchnopleura; 4 = amnion. (From Jensen, H.E. et al., *APMIS*, 99, 829, 1991. With permission.)

Figure 8.6  Mammary gland from a mouse killed 3 d after intramammary inoculation with $1 \times 10^4$ *Candida krusei* cells. Within the lumen and epithelial lining of two alveoli (A), fungal elements (arrows) are seen. (From Guhad, F.A. et al., *J. Comp. Pathol.*, 113, 1995. With permission.)

Figure 8.7  Mammary gland from a mouse 2 d after intramammary inoculation of $1 \times 10^5$ blastospores of *Candida albicans*. Fungal elements, which are stained black, are present within exudate-filled alveoli (EA). (From Guhad, F.A. et al., *FEMS Microbiol. Lett.*, 166, 1998. With permission.)
phenotypic and genetic differences, serotype A may also be termed *Cryptococcus neoformans* var. *grubii*.

Mice are highly susceptible to cryptococcosis and are frequently used as a model in the study of the disease because it shows a number of similarities to the disease in humans. Dissemination to internal organs is seen after i.v., i.cer., and i.p. challenge of mice with an appropriate amount of *C. neoformans* cells. As for *C. albicans*, variations in susceptibility to infection are seen in mice of different strains. In the disseminated disease models, the histopathological findings are characterized as either granulomatous or cystic, reflecting the presence of macrophages in the different organs. *C. neoformans* has a propensity for infecting the brain, lungs, and kidneys. Cryptococcal meningitis is so accurately developed in mice after i.v. inoculation of appropriate numbers of cells that this model is used in the differentiation of *C. neoformans* from other *Cryptococcus* species and in the evaluation of antifungal agents. However, when the respiratory system is the portal of entry, dissemination to other organs is delayed, especially to the brain, and allows a more preferable exploration of the course of infection in humans. Mice and rats are the preferred animals, and rabbits and guinea pigs are almost resistant to cryptococcal infections, although chronic cryptococcal meningitis has been developed in cortisone-treated rabbits after i.cer. inoculation. In addition to its similarity to the human disease, this rabbit model has the advantage, in comparison with the murine model, that the larger size of the animal allows repeated aspiration of larger volumes of cerebrospinal fluid for analysis.
Localized cryptococcal infection models are produced in other organs after local application, e.g., cutaneous and ocular cryptococcosis. After p.o. administration of *C. neoformans* cells to mice, some will have the gastrointestinal tract colonized, and dissemination, however infrequently, to other organs may occur. In that case, the course is not influenced by treatment that compromises the immunological status of the animal. Colonization of the nasal mucosa of mice may also be seen after i.n. inoculation of cells of some strains of *C. neoformans*.

**Scedosporiosis**

Scedosporiosis is caused by *Scedosporium apiospermum* (*Pseudallescheria boydii*) and *S. inflatum*, and the infection may vary from local infection of, especially, the lung, skin, and cornea to disseminated mycosis. Comparable animal models of local scedosporiosis include granulomas, keratitis, and arthritis in rabbits. Mice are often used in the production of disseminated infections developing subsequent to i.v. inoculation of conidia.

**Zygomycosis**

Zygomycosis refers to infections caused by fungi of the class Zygomycetes, of which the family Mucoraceae of the order Mucorales are most important in medical and veterinary mycology. The course of infection may be acute to long-term chronic. The localization of the infection may be in the cutis or subcutis, lung, or nose, with subsequent spread to the brain (rhinocerebral zygomycosis); or more rarely, the disease may turn out in a disseminated form. *Absidia corymbifera*, *Rhizopus* spp. and *Mucor* spp., are most often found as the causative organism of human and animal zygomycosis. Disseminated acute systemic infections by these fungi are easily established in most animals after i.v. challenge (Figure 8.10). Mice, rats, rabbits, and guinea pigs are often used, with guinea pigs being the most appropriate. However, these infections are not likely to be used as models because this course of infection is seen only rarely in humans. The i.v. route of challenge is, however, used extensively in studies of etiology, immunology, histopathology, and assessment of new antifungal agents. Inoculation of spores i.n. and i.t. into cortisone-treated or streptozotocin-diabetic animals results in pulmonary and cerebral zygomycosis with a course of infection and pathology close to that of human cases of zygomycosis. Also, treatment of mice with deferoxamine and iron (Fe³⁺) will render them more susceptible to infection, and p.o. challenge of guinea pigs pretreated with aspirin will cause gastric invasion. Localized chronic pyogranulomatous infections in most animals may also be produced after cutaneous, subcutaneous, or orbital inoculations (Figure 8.10). As for candidosis and aspergillosis, the murine placenta is also highly susceptible to zygomycosis.

![Figure 8.10](image_url) Murine zygomycosis due to *Absidia corymbifera*. (1) Acute renal zygomycosis after intravenous challenge. Arrows = hyphae. (2) Chronic subcutaneous granulomatous zygomycosis after subcutaneous challenge. Arrows = hyphae.
Pneumocystosis

Pneumocystis carinii organisms, the cause of pneumocystosis, have been found in a number of domestic (cows, horses, pigs, goats, dogs, and cats) and laboratory animals (mice, rats, and rabbits). In humans and animals, the infection is restricted to the lungs, in which it is the cause of an interstitial pneumonia. P. carinii is difficult to culture in vitro and is dependent on the presence of feeder cells, such as embryonic chick epithelial lung cells. However, because of the only-moderate replication and the limited number of passages, the basic research on P. carinii is mostly based on different kinds of animal models in which immunocompromised host animals harbor the organism. Experimetal animal models are also used as a source of the organism for in vitro studies. The immunosuppression required for the development of pneumocystosis may be achieved pharmacologically (e.g., with cortisone acetate, dexamethasone, and cyclosporin A) or by using genetically altered, immunosuppressed animal strains (e.g., SCID mice).

Animal models of pneumocystosis are primarily used for the study of pathobiology related to the organism and treatment of the disease. Acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) patients especially will often develop pneumocystosis and, if not treated, die from the disease. Therefore, animal models are widely used for the comparative study of pathogenesis, therapy, and especially prophylaxis. Finally, it should be noted that P. carinii organisms are not transmissible between different host species.

ANIMAL MODELS OF MISCELLANEOUS MYCOSES AND ALGOSES

Miscellaneous Fungi

Geotrichum spp. may be the cause of mucocutaneous infections. In laboratory animals, it is very difficult to establish infection by the fungi. However, inoculation of mice i.v. and i.p. with clinical isolates of Geotrichum candidum may result in systemic infection.

Penicillium spp. are very common in the environment but are only rarely the cause of infection. However, one exception is Penicillium marneffei, which has been recovered from a number of human and animal (especially the bamboo rat Rhizomys pruinosus) infections, particularly in Asian countries. In humans, infections are often progressive, and disseminated forms similar to those seen in histoplasmosis are formed. A comparable course of disease occurs in mice, rats, and hamsters challenged i.v. or i.p. with the fungus.

Pityrosporum ovale (s. Malassezia furfur), a lipophilic fungus, is an etiological agent in the development of pityriasis versicolor, folliculitis, and seborrheic dermatitis in humans. Faergemann has successfully infected volunteers by cutaneous infection under occlusive dressing and additional application of olive oil. The positive effect of olive oil was also demonstrated using the insides of ears of rabbits. A number of more low-pathogenic fungi, such as Rhodotorula rubra, Candida glabrata, and other Candida spp. different from C. albicans, produce a moderate skin infection when inoculated onto the backs of diabetic (alloxan-pretreated) guinea pigs.

Adiaspiromycosis, which is seen especially in the lungs of wild rodents, is caused by the inhalation of conidia of the fungal genus Chrysosporium (Emmonsi). In humans, adiaspiromycosis is rare, but the knowledge of the infection is important as a differential diagnosis to other fungi in tissues of rodents. Injection of conidia into mice, rabbits, rats, and dogs may result in the development of systemic infection. Localized granulomatous orchitis is produced after i.test. inoculation of the fungi in hamsters (Figure 8.11).

Mycotic keratitis in humans is often caused by members of the genera Candida and Aspergillus; but in rare situations, infection by more low-pathogenic fungi, such as Fusarium spp., may also occur. A variety of rabbit and rat models of mycotic keratitis caused by these fungi are used preferably in the testing of new antifungal agents.
Human and animal infections due to algae are rare. However, infection by *Prototheca* spp., especially *Prototheca zopfii* (an achloric alga), may be the cause of superficial or deep cutaneous infections and bursitis in humans and, more frequently, mastitis in cattle.\(^1\)\(^4\),\(^4\)\(^5\) Reports have also been given on disseminated infections in cows and dogs.\(^1\)\(^4\)\(^6\),\(^1\)\(^4\)\(^7\) Some cases of bovine lymphadenitis caused by infection with green algae of the order *Chlorococcales* are also reported.\(^1\)\(^4\)\(^8\) Mice inoculated i.v. with *P. zopfii* develop systemic granulomatous infections (Figure 8.12), and skin infections appear in guinea pigs after i.d. inoculation.\(^1\)\(^4\)\(^9\) In rats, i.p. challenge by green algae results in the formation of a slowly progressive infection of the serosal peritoneal surface.\(^1\)\(^4\)\(^8\)

**APPLICATION OF MODIFIED ANIMAL MODELS IN MYCOLOGY**

To obtain more homogeneous infections with pathogenic fungi and to establish an infection with opportunistic pathogenic or poorly invasive fungi, various methods are used to enhance the susceptibility of animals to infection. Furthermore, some modified models are also used to mimic the conditions under which humans are infected, especially with the opportunistic pathogenic fungi. In the section dealing with these infections, factors were listed that were predisposing, favoring, and stimulating for the growth of fungi. Here, some other modified models are given that are applied in the study of transformative fungal changes and defense mechanisms involved in mycoses.

Some fungi adapt themselves by transformation into a parasitic form when growing in tissues, a phenomenon called *dimorphism*, a unique factor in the pathogenicity of these fungi. To study
this phenomenon, a number of \textit{in vitro} methods have been used. \textit{In vivo} fungal transformation can be followed by consecutive histopathology after challenge (e.g., i.v., s.c., and i.p.). In these models, heavy cell and humoral defense mechanisms will often mask the details of transformation. In the agar implantation model, blocks of agar containing the saprophytic stages of fungi are implanted into the abdominal cavity of mice.\textsuperscript{27} From series of mice, the agar blocks are removed after adequate intervals and subjected to histology and electron microscopy. In this model, the development and transformation of fungi are only influenced by humoral defense factors of the host.\textsuperscript{27} On the basis of results from the agar implantation model, the study of fungal infections after, for instance, i.v., s.c., and i.p. challenge and natural fungal infections in humans and animals, the pathogenic fungi have been classified into two categories according to their parasitic forms:\textsuperscript{27} (1) fungi that are mycelial in their saprophytic stage and spherical in their parasitic stage; the transformation of these fungi is via the stage of arthroconidiae (e.g., \textit{T. rubrum}, \textit{C. immitis}, and \textit{P. marneffei}), via the stage of chlamydospores (e.g., \textit{B. dermatitidis}, \textit{P. brasiliensis}, and \textit{Fonsecaea pedrosoi}, a common cause of chromomycosis), or by direct budding from hyphae (\textit{S. schenckii}, \textit{H. capsulatum} var. \textit{capsulatum}, var. \textit{duboissii}, and var. \textit{farciminiosum}; and (2) fungi whose parasitic forms are similar to the saprophytic form, either in the form of mycelia (e.g., \textit{Aspergillus}, \textit{Absidia}, \textit{Mucor}, \textit{Rhizopus}, \textit{Fusarium}, and \textit{Scedosporium} species), the form of mycelial and yeast forms (e.g., \textit{Candida} spp.), or yeast (e.g., \textit{Cryptococcus neoformans}).

In the study of specific aspects of pathogenicity and defense mechanisms involved in mycotic infections, numerous modified animal models have been used. By these models, important differences of the cell-mediated reactions and the influence of complement in the defense against fungal infections have been elucidated.

Inbred strains of mice that are genetically deficient in the fifth factor of the complement system (C5), that is, DBA/ZN and B.10.D2/oSn mice, and C4D guinea pigs (congenitally deficient in component C4), have been used to study the possible role of the alternative complement pathway in cryptococcosis and candidosis.\textsuperscript{27,73} In the study of the defensive role of T lymphocytes, congenital athymic mice (nu/nu BALB/c mice), New Zealand Black (NZB) mice, which often become defective in their T lymphocytes, and thymectomized mice are used. The number and function of polymorphonuclear (PMN) cells are decreased and suppressed, respectively, by x-irradiation and administration of nitrogen mustard.\textsuperscript{27} In these models, the sessile macrophages of the fixed-macrophage system usually remain intact, and the importance of the PMN cells can be analyzed. The defensive role of mononuclear cells in mycoses can be analyzed by challenge of mice treated i.v. with dextran sulfate or silica, which saturate the phagocytic function of monocytes and sessile macrophages.\textsuperscript{27} Homozygous severely combined immunodeficiency (SCID/SCID) mice lack both specific humoral and cell-mediated immunity.\textsuperscript{112,134} Histopathological examination of tissues from these modified mycotic animal models has contributed greatly to the understanding of which defense mechanisms are involved against different fungi. Table 8.1 is a review of differences in the susceptibility (lethal dose, severity of lesions, and efficacy in killing the fungus) of congenitally athymic nude mice (nu/nu) compared with their heterozygous littermates (nu/+). In the chronic state of deep mycoses in humans and laboratory animals, the formation of granulomas is the main pathological finding. However, in the earlier stages, the inflammatory reaction depends on the fungus involved. Toward some fungi, the cellular reaction is mainly made up by the mononuclear cells, with assistance from only a negligible number of PMN cells. In other mycoses, the cell infiltration is primarily due to PMN cells in the early stages of infection; whereas in the chronic stages, the killing of the fungus is accomplished by the infiltration of macrophages (PMN/mononuclear). Finally, the host defense against aspergillosis and zygomycosis is mainly due to PMN cells, but in the chronic processes of these mycoses, granulomas are also formed. In Table 8.1, the cells playing a main role in the host defense against different fungi are summarized.
Therapeutic choices between microbial agents have traditionally been guided by their activity in vitro. However, in vitro results for antifungal agents are not necessarily indicative of efficacy in vivo. In particular, the azole antifungal agents yield inconsistent sensitivity results and tend to produce higher susceptibility endpoints, depending on components and pH of the medium, inoculum size, incubation temperature, and time of reading. Fluconazole reaches an extreme in terms of the disparity between in vitro and in vivo activity. Moreover, only by use of a wide range of animal models was it possible to select and introduce the first broad-spectrum antifungal drug, ketoconazole. For these reasons and for testing the applicability of different dispensing forms and therapeutic effects, side effects, etc., the use of animal models of mycoses is of significant importance in the screening for new antifungal agents.

When testing new antifungal agents, as many fungal species as possible should be tested. Moreover, because a number of fungi show strain variation in their virulence, expressed by their median infective dose (ID50) and median lethal dose (LD50; the dose, in colony-forming units per kilogram, that will infect and kill, respectively, 50% of the animals), the number of strains tested should also be high.

Models used in the evaluation of efficacy are classified according to the nature of the infection:

1. The basic antimicrobial screening models are commonly used in early evaluation of antifungal agents, and the animals (usually mice) are challenged with a dose that ensures death of all animals. In this model, the ability of agents to prolong survival of infected animals is determined, and the
estimated median effective dose, ED\textsubscript{50} (mg/kg), the dose that protects 50\% of the animals from death, is calculated. Advantages of these models are as follows: infection and treatment are simple; there are clearly defined endpoints; they are economical; and are of short duration. Disadvantages include: the course of infection is uncharacteristic and fulminant; the antifungal agents are administered at or close to the infection; the models are highly sensitive to the size of the infective dose; and single or few doses are given, which may result in pharmacokinetic differences that do not allow comparisons between agents.

2. The ex vivo model uses a foreign body containing the organism and is implanted (s.c., i.p., etc.) before treatment. During treatment, the bodies are removed and the contents analyzed in vitro. The bodies may be fibrin clots or dialysis sacs that permit entry of the agent but restrict entry of the cellular and humoral components of the host defense system. The use of a porous or hollow device permits entry of phagocytes and antibodies, and may be valuable for the determination of these components to penetrate a specific site of infection. This model has thus far not found any practical form in testing antifungal agents, but the agar implantation model is an example of its use in mycopathology.

3. In the monoparametric model, a simple indicator of therapeutic effectiveness is measured, as opposed to an ultimative therapeutic cure. In this model, the capacity of agents to sterilize infected tissues (e.g., \textit{C. albicans} in murine kidney infections) and the concentration of the antifungal agent in tissues are evaluated. In the effort to reduce the use of laboratory animals, monoparametric models should be replaced by discriminative models.

4. The discriminative models are by far the most technically complicated models and are designed to mimic the initiation and progress of infection in humans and domestic animals. In these models, multiple parameters are measured, and they allow evaluation of drug concentration, adjuvant therapies, etc. In these models, calculated parameters such as the median protective dose (PD\textsubscript{50}) and median therapeutic dose (TD\textsubscript{50}; the dose, in milligrams per kilogram, that protects and cures 50\% of the animals, respectively) also are determined. In the selection of a discriminative model, the following ideal features should be considered: the technique for infection should be simple; and the fungus, route of entry, spread in the body, and tissues involved should be similar to the situation in humans. The severity, course, and duration of the infection should be predictable, reproducible, and amenable to analysis. Furthermore, susceptibility to therapy must be measurable and reproducible.

Some models seem to satisfy most of these criteria adequately, such as murine pulmonary cryptococcosis, but in most models of mycoses, some compromises have to be offered; for example, in models of dermatophytoses, the fungus is usually a zoophilic dermatophyte, and the prolonged chronic infections as seen in humans are not produced, and relapse of skin infection may be seen from lesions in internal organs when the infection is established through i.v. inoculation. Another example is that to establish and maintain vaginal candidosis in laboratory animals, the animals must be oophorectomized and treated with estrogen during the time of infection. In Table 8.2, some common animal models of mycoses used in the testing of antifungal agents are listed.

### ANIMAL MODELS AS MYCODIAGNOSTIC TOOLS

A number of fungi are, when only present in a limited amount, grown more regularly \textit{in vivo} than \textit{in vitro}. Therefore, when \textit{in vitro} cultivations of materials under suspicion of content of, for example, \textit{B. dermatitidis}, \textit{H. capsulatum} var. \textit{capsulatum}, \textit{P. brasiliensis}, \textit{S. schenckii}, and \textit{C. neoformans} are negative, animal inoculations (often in mice) are performed with the material. Usually the material is, in combination with antibiotics, given s.c., i.v., i.cer., or i.p.; but for \textit{P. brasiliensis}, the preferred site for inoculation is the testicles of mountain rats. The specimens are usually of environmental or clinical origin, such as soil, pus, granulomas, etc. When growth of the fungus in the animal is suspected at autopsy, its organs are removed and, from these, \textit{in vitro} cultivation is attempted. Experimental inoculations of mice are also used in the differentiation of
Table 8.2  Selected Animal Models Applied in the Evaluation of Antifungal Agents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fungal Infection</th>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Predisposing Factors</th>
<th>Inoculation Site</th>
<th>Localization of Infection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dermatophytosis</td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>Abraded/none</td>
<td>On skin&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>T. mentagrophytes</em> and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>M. canis</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pityriasis</td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Skin/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>P. ovale</em> and <em>P. orbiculare</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sporotrichosis</td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>Clipped</td>
<td>On skin&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>S. schenckii</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicilliosis</td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.v./i.test.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>P. marneffei</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blastomycosis</td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.n.</td>
<td>Lung/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. dermatitidis</td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.n.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coccidioidomycosis</td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.n.</td>
<td>Lung/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. immitis</em></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.n.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histoplasmosis</td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.n.</td>
<td>Lung/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. capsulatum var.</em></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.v./i.p.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>capsulatum</em></td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.test.</td>
<td>Testicles/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paracoccidioidomycosis</td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.n.</td>
<td>Lung/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>P. brasiliensis</em></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.n.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspergillosis</td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed</td>
<td>i.n.</td>
<td>Lung/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A. fumigatus</em></td>
<td>Chicken</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Aerosol</td>
<td>Lung/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rabbit</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed</td>
<td>i.cor.</td>
<td>Cornea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rabbit</td>
<td>Intracardial catheter</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Endocardium/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>none</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>none</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryptococcosis</td>
<td>Rabbit</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed</td>
<td>Cisterna</td>
<td>Meninges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. neoformans</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>magnum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.cer.</td>
<td>Meninges/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/</td>
<td>i.n.</td>
<td>Lung/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>none</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/</td>
<td>i.v./i.p.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>none</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>none</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candidosis</td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>Clipped and diabetic</td>
<td>On skin</td>
<td>Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. albicans</em></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed</td>
<td>s.c.</td>
<td>Subcutis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Air</td>
<td>s.c.</td>
<td>Subcutis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.mam.</td>
<td>Mammary glands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed</td>
<td>i.mam.</td>
<td>Mammary glands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Pseudoestrus</td>
<td>i.vag.</td>
<td>Vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Pseudoestrus and</td>
<td>i.vag.</td>
<td>Vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>Immunosuppressed and</td>
<td>p.o.</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>antibiotics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
some fungi, such as *C. carrionii* from *C. bantianum*, and the pathogenicity of *C. neoformans* for mice is used in the differentiation of this species from other *Cryptococcus* spp. Finally, it should be noted that *in vivo* growth by passage in laboratory animals is presently the only feasible method for the isolation and “cultivation” of *L. loboi*.26,30

For the high number of immunological assays used for the diagnosis of different mycoses, the production of specific polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies is essential. Production of polyclonal antibodies is preferably done in rabbits and goats by immunization with different fractions of fungal antigens. Monoclonal antifungal antibodies are produced in mice or rat hybridomas *in vivo* (ascites production) or *in vitro* (cell cultures). In the evaluation of the sensitivity and specificity of antifungal antibodies, controlled experimental infections of laboratory animals are indispensable. For these purposes, animal models have been used extensively in testing, for example, immunohistochemical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fungal Infection</th>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Predisposing Factors</th>
<th>Inoculation Site</th>
<th>Localization of Infection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunosuppressed and antibiotics/none</td>
<td>p.o.</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.cor.</td>
<td>Cornea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/none</td>
<td>i.cor.</td>
<td>Cornea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Eye/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Intracardinal catheter</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Endocardium/dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/none</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/none</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunosuppressed/none</td>
<td>i.v.</td>
<td>Dissemination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note:* i.v. = intravenous; i.test. = intratesticular; i.n. = intranasal; i.p. = intraperitoneal; i.cor. = intracorneal; i.cer. = intracerebral; s.c. = subcutaneous; i.mam. = intramammary; i.vag. = intravaginal; p.o. = per oral; diabetic = alloxan- and streptozotocin-treated animals; pseudoestrus = castrated and estrogen-treated animals; immunosuppressed = x-irradiated, mecloethamine-, prednisolone-, hydrocortisone-, or cyclophosphamide-treated animals; Antibiotics = streptomycin and chloramphenicol.

*Usually performed under occlusive dressing.*

**Figure 8.13** Immunohistochemical identification of *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *capsulatum*. (1) In the Kupffer’s cells, yeast-like organisms are located. (2) Staining of the organisms by specific FITC-labeled anti-*H. capsulatum* globulins confirm the diagnosis of hepatic histoplasmosis. (From Jensen, H.E. et al., *APMIS*, 100, 1992. With permission.)
assays used in the histopathological differentiation of algae and fungi (Figure 8.13)\textsuperscript{149,154,155} and in enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays\textsuperscript{156,157} and agglutination assays\textsuperscript{158} developed for the detection of fungal antigen in serum and urine of infected humans and domestic animals as an aid in the diagnosis of mycoses. Furthermore, well-characterized antifungal antisera also are often included as references in studies of human antibody reactions.\textsuperscript{159}

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 9

Diabetic Animal Models

Karsten Buschard and Rikke Thon

CONTENTS

Introduction .....................................................................................................................................154
Animal Models of Type 1 Diabetes...............................................................................................155
  The BB Rat..............................................................................................................................155
    Clinical Course of the Diabetic Syndrome...........................................................................155
    Genetics ...............................................................................................................................155
    Disease Mechanisms ........................................................................................................156
      The Humoral Immune System .......................................................................................156
      The Cellular Immune System .......................................................................................156
    The Question of Self-Tolerance .......................................................................................157
    Environmental Factors ....................................................................................................157
  The Non-Obese Diabetic Mouse............................................................................................159
    Clinical Course of the NOD Diabetic Syndrome............................................................159
    Histopathology ................................................................................................................159
    Genetics ............................................................................................................................160
    Disease Mechanisms .......................................................................................................160
      Humorally Mediated Immunity ......................................................................................160
      Cell-Mediated Immunity ...............................................................................................161
    Immunotherapy and Other Environmental Factors.......................................................161
  Low-Dose, Streptozotocin-Induced Diabetes .....................................................................162
    Mechanisms of Action .....................................................................................................163
      Direct Cytotoxic Action of Streptozotocin ..................................................................163
      Immune Mechanisms ...................................................................................................163
  Virus-Induced Diabetes: The EMC Virus ..........................................................................164
    Clinical Course of the Diabetes-Like Syndrome................................................................165
    Genetic Susceptibility and Environmental Factors ........................................................165
    Immune Mechanisms .......................................................................................................166
Animal Models of Type 2 Diabetes.............................................................................................167
  The Obese Diabetic Mice (ob/ob).........................................................................................167
  The Diabetic Mouse (db/db)...............................................................................................168
  The New Zealand Obese Mouse ..........................................................................................170
  The Goto Kakizaki Rat .........................................................................................................170
INTRODUCTION

Diabetes mellitus is an important human disease, divided into two major forms: type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1DM), formerly called insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM); and T2DM, earlier called non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (NIDDM). Both diseases are frequent. Among Caucasians, 0.5 to 1% of the population (in a few areas, up to 2%) will be affected by T1DM. T2DM is even more common; and in many Western countries, 5 to 10% of elderly people suffer from the disease. In certain populations, the prevalence of T2DM is even higher; among Pima Indians, it is up to 30%.

Although both T1DM and T2DM are characterized by abnormally high blood glucose levels and glucosuria, the etiologies and pathogeneses are different. Clinically, T1DM has a rather sudden onset, with hypoinsulinemia and ketone molecules in the blood and urine. At onset, maybe only 10% of the β cells of the pancreas (which synthesize and secrete insulin) remain. For survival, the patients are dependent on lifelong exogenous insulin treatment. The goal of T1DM patients is to keep the blood glucose values low without having incidents of hypoglycemia. This is a function of insulin treatment, food intake, and amount of exercise. The better that metabolic control is maintained, the less likely it is that a patient will develop chronic complications, although these nevertheless are seen after some years in most of these diabetic patients. Because of this, diabetes is now the most common course of acquired blindness, the third most common course of renal failure, and about the fifth most common course of death in many countries. In addition, many T2DM patients suffer from complications, which include retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy. T1DM is recognized as an autoimmune disease, and the β-cell destruction is mediated by T cells. Also, autoantibodies can be measured in most patients. In contrast, T2DM has no involvement of the immune system. The disease is characterized by peripheral insulin resistance and relatively insufficient insulin secretion. Lack of first-phase insulin response is seen. Most frequently, patients are overweight, especially because of increased amounts of intraabdominal fat tissue.

Good animal models have been developed for both kinds of diabetes. These models provide an excellent opportunity for studying the multitude of interacting factors that contribute to the syndrome, which is not feasible in afflicted humans. A desirable feature of a model syndrome is, of course, that it approximates the phenotypes of human disease, thereby leading to a more complete understanding of etiology, pathogenesis, and treatment in humans. In particular, the animal models provide material for examining the very early steps in the pathological process because such investigations cannot be conducted in humans because the manifest disease covers up a long preceding process. However, none of the mentioned models are ideal, and none of them resemble human diabetes completely. To establish new findings in the pathogenesis, prevention, or treatment of diabetes, it is therefore highly desirable that a new scientific principle be found in more than one of the animal models. This chapter first describes the following T1DM models: the spontaneously diabetic BB rat, the NOD (non-obese diabetic) mouse, and the induced models of low-dose
streptozotocin and virus-induced diabetes in mice. Thereafter, the chapter describes the following T2DM models: ob/ob mice, db/db mice, and GK rats.

**ANIMAL MODELS OF TYPE 1 DIABETES**

**The BB Rat**

The BB-rat syndrome was recognized initially in 1974 by Chappel at the BioBreeding Laboratories, Ottawa, Canada. Overt T1DM, associated with hypoinsulinemia occurred sporadically in this commercial breeding colony of non-inbred Wistar-derived laboratory rats kept under strict gnotobiotic conditions. A breeding program was established, and it was decided that the syndrome would be named “BB” after the initials of the breeding laboratory.

All BB rats are descendants of the original Ottawa litters, but rats in different colonies now vary in frequency of diabetes. To identify the specific strain, all animals are named after the city or institution in which they are bred, for example, BB/W for Worcester.

**Clinical Course of the Diabetic Syndrome**

Diabetes in the BB rat typically has an abrupt onset, with glucosuria, hyperglycemia, hyperketonemia, ketonuria, and hypoinsulinemia. The age at which diabetes is diagnosed is generally between 60 and 120 d. The mean is about 90 d in most reported data. This age distribution at the diagnosis of T1DM is analogous to that observed in humans; there is a preponderance of cases among the juvenile and adolescent populations. The incidence of diabetes varies in the different rat colonies and is up to 80%. The animals are not obese, and diabetes occurs with almost equal frequency in both sexes.

Acutely diabetic animals die from ketoacidosis within 2 weeks of onset unless insulin is given. Morphological studies show infiltration of mainly mononuclear cells in the islets of Langerhans, a condition called insulitis that is present before the disease is clinically manifest. The pancreas of rats with overt T1DM shows less than 0.1% of normal insulin content. The progression from normal to seriously decompensated can be counted in days. The hyperglycemia is associated with hypoinsulinemia and hyperglucagonemia. Until glucosuria begins, absolute values and rates of gain in body weight in the majority of rats are indistinguishable from those of littermates. Despite hyperphagia and polydipsia, weight loss is rapid and a good indicator of diabetes development. Physical activity is clearly decreased, and tachypnea can be seen. In contrast to humans, the BB rat (diabetic as well as non-diabetic) has an unusual predisposition to lymphopoietic malignancy and to infection, especially with *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*, which is often fatal. The animals exhibit a pronounced decrease in the population of T lymphocytes and thereby a functional deficiency of a variety of lymphocyte-mediated immune reactions — that is, a marked immunoregulatory defect. A line of nonlymphopenic diabetic BB rats has, however, been developed.

**Genetics**

Human T1DM, as well as the BB-diabetic syndrome, is a heritable disorder. In humans, there is a 30% concordance for T1DM among monozygotic twins; and in the BB-rat model, about 70% of the animals develop diabetes in colonies that have been inbred for many generations, indicating that factors other than genetics must play a role. It is most likely that the mode of inheritance of BB-rat diabetes involves an autosomal-recessive gene or gene cluster with incomplete penetrance (approximately 50%), leaving room for environmental factors to influence the expression of the
genes or their product. Furthermore, diabetes in the BB rat also shows a major histocompatibility complex association.

**Disease Mechanisms**

As in humans, diabetes in the BB rat is believed to be an autoimmune disease. Three main causes contribute to this conviction: (1) involvement of the humoral immune system, (2) involvement of the cellular immune system, and as previously discussed, (3) involvement of a genetic factor, that is, the association with the major histocompatibility complex (MHC). The exact series of events that initiates diabetes is still hypothetical.

**The Humoral Immune System**

A phenotypic feature of diabetic and diabetes-prone (DP) BB rats is the presence of autoantibodies of the IgG class, which bind to smooth muscle, thyroid colloid, and gastric parietal cell antigens.\(^{10,11}\) Although there is high concordance between the presence of diabetes, thyroiditis, and autoantibodies, 50% of animals without thyroiditis evidence antithyroid colloid antibodies. Perhaps more important is that beta islet cell surface antibodies (ICSA) have been detected as early as 40 d of age. Complement-fixing islet cell antibodies (CF-ICA) have also been detected and may be present 2 weeks before the onset of diabetes. Thus, these two autoantibodies actually antedate the manifest disease. Antilymphocyte antibodies are also prevalent in diabetic animals.\(^{12,13}\)

**The Cellular Immune System**

As mentioned, the BB rat is lymphopenic, and this can be recognized before the clinical onset of diabetes.\(^{14}\) Lymphopenia is characterized by a marked decrease in the number of T lymphocytes in the peripheral blood, lymph nodes, and spleen.\(^{15}\) Although all T-cell subsets are diminished, the CD8+ T-cell subset (cytotoxic/suppressor) is the most diminished.\(^{16}\) In addition, the RT6 differentiation alloantigen, which normally is expressed on about half the peripheral T cells (but is absent in bone marrow and thymocytes), is absent in rats with lymphopenia.\(^{17}\)

Pancreatic lymphocytic insulitis is observed in young asymptomatic BB rats with normal levels of blood glucose and insulin, so insulitis actually precedes overt diabetes. Studies have shown the lymphocytic infiltrate to consist of B cells, CD8, and CD4 T cells, as well as macrophages and natural killer (NK) cells. Macrophages are believed to be the first cells invading the islets, an important cell type both for cytokine production and antigen presentation.\(^{18}\) Additionally, it has been demonstrated that NK-cell activity is increased in acutely diabetic as well as DP BB rats, and that islet cells can serve as target cells for these large granular lymphocytes in vitro, NK cells being capable of lysing islet cells.\(^{19}\) The exact role of the various cell types is not clarified.

Within a very short time after the detection of hyperglycemia, insulitis rapidly decreases and finally disappears with the appearance of the so-called end-stage islets, consisting almost exclusively of glucagon, somatostatin, and pancreatic polypeptide-synthesizing islet cells.

The presence of lymphocytic thyroiditis in a large proportion of BB rats also suggests that this organ is the target of a cell-mediated autoimmune attack. Lymphocytic thyroiditis occurs in diabetic and normoglycemic BB/W rats but is more frequent among diabetic animals. However, the thyroiditis is not followed by clinical thyroid disease.

Further evidence for the involvement of cellular immunity in the pathogenesis of diabetes in the BB rat is found in the fact that DP rats have been protected from developing diabetes by neonatal thymectomy. Another study has shown incomplete thymectomy to influence the incidence, indicating that the mass of functional thymic tissue is a factor in the pathogenesis.\(^{20}\) Neonatal bone marrow allografts,\(^{21}\) sublethal whole-body irradiation,\(^{22}\) and total lymphoid irradiation\(^{23}\) have also been shown to protect DP rats from diabetes. Administration of antilymphocyte globulin alone prevents
diabetes when given to prediabetic animals, and will cure diabetes in approximately one third of BB rats treated on the day that diabetes is detected. Also, transfusions of whole blood or peripheral T lymphocytes from the diabetes-resistant (DR) subline of BB rats have been reported to prevent the appearance of diabetes in the DP rat. Conversely, Concanavalin A (ConA)-activated splenic lymphocytes have been shown to adoptively transfer insulitis and diabetes upon injection into young DP BB/W-rats or into otherwise DR BB rats and Wistar-Furth rats that have been pretreated with cyclophosphamide. Administration of cyclosporin A will effectively reduce the frequency of diabetes but does not cure the disease. Cyclosporin A itself is not cytotoxic but is believed to act by inhibiting T-lymphocyte proliferation in response to antigenic stimulation. Cyclosporin A is able to protect the β cell from injury caused by the cytotoxic effect of interleukin-1 and probably also interleukin-6, which functionally and structurally has been shown to modify beta cells in vitro. Cyclosporin A is used to treat prediabetic rats when needed for breeding but cannot be used in humans because the side effects (especially nephrotoxicity) are too serious. On the other hand, Freund's Adjuvant, which causes immunostimulation, lowers the diabetes incidence, maybe because of an influence on the suppressor T cells, in accordance with the fact that elimination of infectious agents from the environment actually increases the frequency and accelerates the tempo of spontaneous diabetes among DP rats.

The Question of Self-Tolerance

As mentioned, diabetes is believed to be an autoimmune disease. Failure to induce islet tolerance may be caused by (1) thymic antigen-presenting cells in DP animals being defective in their ability to present β cells to establish islet tolerance, or (2) the fact that islets from rat neonates, the age at which self-tolerance is normally induced, lack certain antigenic determinants that develop later, leaving them susceptible to destruction by their own immune system. A study has shown that diabetes in BB rats can be prevented by neonatal stimulation of β cells, a procedure that is thought to induce or enhance antigen expression on the β cells, which facilitates the ability of the immune system to develop self-tolerance. The neonates were stimulated for the first 6 d after birth by glucose accompanied by glucagon or arginin, the immature β cells producing only a basal amount of insulin and being unresponsive to glucose alone in order to accelerate β-cell maturation and possibly to induce antigen expression and tolerance. Over the first 200 d of life, only about 40% of the treated rats developed diabetes, compared with 65% of untreated controls. This may explain the observation that children of mothers who have T1DM are three times less likely to develop the disease than are children of fathers with T1DM. Earlier maturation of the β cells during the diabetic pregnancy may thus protect against diabetes in later life.

Intrathymic injections also have been carried out. This was done on the assumption that the introduction of islet cells into the thymus might directly induce islet tolerance — a mechanism for the establishment of self-tolerance might then be an enhancement of the activity of the above-mentioned antigen-presenting cells. The islets needed for injection were isolated from DR rats. In fact, only 35% of the rats that had an intrathymic injection of islets developed diabetes, compared with 88% of the control sham-operated rats. Thus, it seems that exposing the cells of the thymus directly to islet antigen can prevent an autoimmune attack, induce tolerance, and significantly reduce the incidence of the disease.

Environmental Factors

The concordance of only about 30 to 50% in human monozygotic twins and the fact that the incidence of diabetes varies from 50 to 80% in highly inbred BB rat colonies can be considered very strong arguments for the involvement of environmental factors. They may either trigger the autoimmune process or modify its course.
An environmental influence operating on a basis of genetic susceptibility may be the diet. There has been clearly shown to modify the frequency of diabetes among BB rats; substitution of a defined diet for rat chow lowers the frequency of disease to about half of that seen for rats fed normal rat chow, and feeding a diet containing only a casein hydrolysate further decreases the frequency of disease. It is unknown whether the lower incidence is secondary to removal of a specific dietary protein or whether it is caused by the removal of many components (e.g., fibers, lectins, viral and bacterial toxins) that may be present in chow and thus affect the gut of the young weanlings.

Other environmental factors have been evaluated. Castration, vagotomy, hypophysectomy, and stress produced by ultrasound, for example, could not prevent diabetes.

Administration of nicotinamide, a precursor for the synthesis of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD), has proven to be able to delay the onset of diabetes. Histological examinations of pancreata collected from treated animals showed a reduction of insulitis and preservation of the number of β cells and the overall islet architecture. Moreover, treatment with large doses of nicotinamide from the first day of glucosuria precipitated the disappearance of glucosuria and an improvement of glucose tolerance during the treatment period.

Exogenous insulin treatment is another way of trying to influence the incidence through environmental factors: reduction of diabetes incidence of BB rats has been seen with early prophylactic insulin treatment of DP animals. In a specific study, BB rats were given insulin from day 50 to day 142 of age. At withdrawal, this group was compared with a control group of rats given insulin only from the first day of glucosuria. The incidence in the prophylactically treated group was 22%, compared with 44% among the controls. The findings of this study suggest that administration of exogenous insulin to BB rats during the prediabetic period could render the β cells, characterized by a low rate of insulin synthesis, less vulnerable to immune aggression. Specifically, a reduction of endogenous insulin secretion might reduce the amount of antigens on the β-cell surface that is recognized by the immune system to such a level that the autoimmune cascade is either not initiated or is alleviated.

In another study, when insulin treatment was started earlier in life (day 35), the diabetes incidence was reduced from 56 to 2%.

Another study concerning prophylactic insulin treatment has been carried out using the DR BB rat, in which diabetes and thyroiditis occur in less than 1% of the animals and the RT6 alloantigen is present on about 60% of the T cells. Thirty-day-old DR rats were treated with anti RT6 monoclonal antibody, exogenous insulin, or both, until the age of 60 d. In vivo depletion of RT6 T cells by giving cytotoxic monoclonal antibodies induced diabetes and thyroiditis in more than 50% of treated animals by 60 d of age. Co-administration of insulin during this prediabetic period prevented nearly all cases of diabetes, but not thyroiditis. Spleen cells from these insulin-treated and RT6-depleted nondiabetic DR rats were still capable of adoptive transfer of diabetes.

The precise mechanism of insulin action is unproven, but the possibility exists that the action could take place either at the β-cell level or at the T-cell level (vaccination). On the other hand, as is obvious from, for example, the case of prophylactic insulin treatment not being able to prevent thyroiditis, a great deal of evidence exists that insulin treatment acts on the β-cell level, where it suppresses insulin secretion: prolonged insulin treatment means prolonged hypoglycemia, which again causes reduced β-cell mitotic activity and suppressed endogenous insulin production, secretion, and stores. Such depression of β-cell metabolic activity might very well render the β cells resistant to the cytotoxic effect of cytokines such as interleukin-1 released in the course of the autoimmune process. Interestingly, prophylactic insulin treatment does show effect in the BB rat only when given in metabolic doses.

As already partly discussed, alteration of antigens that are targets of the autoimmune process could also occur in response to exogenous insulin keeping the blood glucose low. Studies have been carried out that demonstrate that islet cells incubated at different glucose concentrations showed different labeling with specific autoantibodies. Labeling was found to be more frequent...
and more pronounced in islet cells incubated at high glucose concentrations. The labeling was of cell surface antigens, which were detected by the β-cell-specific monoclonal antibody IC2, and A2B5, the latter directed against a ganglioside. Thus, β-cell antigen expression very likely depends on the functional state of the cells.

**The Non-Obese Diabetic Mouse**

Like the BB-rat model, the non-obese diabetic (NOD) mouse model is a genetically determined model and the NOD mouse is in many ways the mouse equivalent to the BB rat. The ultimate effector mechanisms, however, are different.

The pedigree of the NOD mouse is as follows. In 1966, a cataract-prone mouse arose from outbred ICR mice and gave rise to the CTS strain. Because cataract is frequent in diabetic patients, the suspicion of a pathogenetic relationship to diabetes arose. Selective breeding was carried out and two sister strains, one euglycemic and the other slightly hyperglycemic, arose after 13 generations of breeding. The mouse that developed non-obese diabetic symptoms was obtained in the 20th generation and ironically in the euglycemic sister strain. The mouse was female and exhibited polyuria, severe glycosuria, and weight loss. The strain was established in 1974 by Makino et al. in Osaka, Japan. Breeding was continued using offspring selected for both spontaneous diabetes and reproductive ability, leading after the 6th generation to the NOD mouse, which is not cataract-prone.44,45

In 1980, the original NOD strain had a cumulative diabetes incidence by 30 weeks of age of 60 to 80% in females versus only about 10% in males.45 The main period of diabetes manifestation was between 80 and 200 d.46 A corresponding nondiabetic substrain was also maintained, to serve as a control strain and termed non-obese normal (NON).

**Clinical Course of the NOD Diabetic Syndrome**

Many NOD lines have been established around the world and they differ significantly in diabetes incidence, time of onset, and degree of female preponderance. Apart from a higher frequency, NOD females also exhibit permanent hyperglycemia at an earlier age than males: peak onset between 16 and 20 weeks as compared with between 21 and 28 weeks in males.47 Gonadal sex steroids are important modulators of pathogenesis: castrated males show a higher incidence of diabetes and oophorectomized females a lower incidence.48 Castration of mice up to the age of 7 weeks results in an increase in males and a decrease in females.49

The clinical features of the diabetes syndrome in NOD mice are quite similar to human T1DM and characterized by hypoinsulinemia, hyperglycemia, glycosuria, hypercholesterolemia, ketonuria, polydipsia, polyuria, and polyphagia. The blood glucose rises from a normal level of approximately 7 to 9 mM to permanent hyperglycemia, that is, a blood glucose level greater than 25 mM over a period of 3 to 4 weeks, and in contrast to the BB rat, the NOD mouse can survive quite a long time without insulin treatment (i.e., 1 to 12 weeks).47,48

**Histopathology**

Despite the sex difference in incidence, almost all animals (>95%) display mononuclear cellular infiltration insulitis.50,51 In fact, 80% of males and 30% of females show insulitis without developing diabetes up to the 30th week of age. So somehow a much higher frequency of male NOD mice avoid pancreatic lesions severe enough to cause overt glycosuria.

The pathological features of lymphocytic infiltration become evident at about 4 to 5 weeks of age;51,52 by week 6, initial insulitis is seen in greater than 50% of NOD mice; at 8 weeks, the lymphocytes begin to invade the islets,53 and the insulitis process is virtually completed as the
animals approach 12 weeks of age. Overt glycosuria (i.e., manifest disease) appears several weeks after the completion of insulitis.

The earliest change is periinsulitis adjacent to the pancreatic ducts, followed by invasion of the islet capsule by small lymphocytes that penetrate the islets. The final stage is characterized by small islets from which β cells have disappeared, with resolution of insulitis. The different stages of the process can, however, be found within the same pancreas at any time, so intact islets may be seen not far from severely affected ones. Phenotyping of lymphocyte subsets involved in insulitis has produced conflicting results. Monocytes, NK cells, and B lymphocytes, as well as CD4 and CD8 T-cells, are the predominant cell populations.

The NOD mice lymphocytic infiltration is not restricted to islets but also occurs in the submandibular glands, as well as in the lacrimal, thyroid, and adrenal glands, suggesting a wider disturbance of immune tolerance in this animal. Human T1DM has also been associated with other endocrine abnormalities; however, infiltration of salivary glands has not been described.

**Genetics**

Basically, the genes involved are recessive because animals of the F1 generation from mating between the NOD and a non-diabetic strain do not develop diabetes or insulitis. From backcross experiments with, for instance, C57BL mice and the NON strain, a minimum of three recessive genes have been suggested. One is MHC (H-2)-linked and is not needed for insulitis to evolve but is necessary for the development of diabetes. The dominant H-2 types are H-2K\(^d\) and H-2D\(^b\).

A second recessive gene controls the development of severe insulitis and the third gene is involved in the progression to diabetes, perhaps via a lack of specific regulator cells.

Because NOD mice can be considered genetically identical, but not all develop diabetes, it is susceptibility to diabetes that is inherited rather than the expressed disease, as is also the case in humans (identical twins) and the BB rat.

**Disease Mechanisms**

There is every indication that the spontaneous diabetic syndrome of the NOD mouse is an autoimmune disorder because there is (1) involvement of the humoral immune system, (2) involvement of the cellular immune system, and (3) involvement of a genetic factor.

**Humorally Mediated Immunity**

One of the immunological observations in the NOD mouse is the occurrence of autoantibodies. Islet cell antibodies (ICA) have been described in about 50% of NOD mice up to the 21st week of age. Islet cell surface antibodies (ICSA) appear at 3 to 6 weeks and reach peak incidence and titer at 12 to 18 weeks. The ICA as well as the ICSA tend to respectively disappear or decline later on. The question is whether these autoantibodies are primarily involved in β-cell destruction or are secondary to islet cell destruction/damage and massive leakage or expression of antigens. The last suggestion could be correlated with the time course of insulitis.

The presence of insulin autoantibodies (IAA) before development of diabetes has been reported. A study showed that IAA were only found in sera from NOD mice with insulitis and not from those without insulitis. This study showed that the prevalence of IAA was 0% before the appearance of insulitis, 80% at 12 to 14 weeks of age, and 30% after 20 weeks of age in females. In males, IAA were found in 45% at 12 to 14 weeks of age and 20% after 20 weeks. The IAA were detected by the polyethylene glycol method. Two different studies, however, report that IAA could be detected by an ELISA assay before insulitis developed. Antilymphocyte antibodies also appear, most frequently at 3 weeks of age, and decrease thereafter.
Cell-Mediated Immunity

Strong evidence for the involvement of the cellular immune system is found in the fact that neonatally thymectomized and nude NOD mice do not develop diabetes. This means that T lymphocytes are required for diabetes pathogenesis, but the T-lymphopenia characteristic of the BB rat is not found in the NOD mouse, or for that matter in human diabetics. On the contrary, a markedly increased concentration of T lymphocytes in the spleen and peripheral blood is found in NOD, but not in NON mice. This is reflected in an enlargement of thymic cortex and lymph nodes. The increase in T-cell number appears to include both Lyt1+ and Lyt2+ phenotypes. This lymphoproliferation is very likely the result of an underlying immunoregulatory defect.

If the insulitis and overt diabetes observed in the NOD mouse are based on cellular mechanisms, the disease should be transferable with lymphocytes. Direct demonstration of the involvement of the cellular immune system was actually made in a study concerning transfer of splenocytes from overtly diabetic NOD to non-diabetic NOD mice:

Splenocytes from overtly diabetic NOD mice were unable to transfer diabetes to very young (<7 weeks) irradiated NOD mice, but effectively transferred the disease to irradiated mice more than 6 weeks of age; overt diabetes was induced within 12 to 22 d in greater than 95% of the recipients. This transfer to young mice induces them to become diabetic at a higher frequency and at a younger age than their untreated littermates. An explanation of the failure to induce diabetes in the very young mice could be that the immune or hormonal system of the recipient must reach a certain degree of maturation before the transfer can be accomplished. Another very likely possibility is that the beta cells of the very young mice may not express the critical antigenic determinants for which the transferred splenocytes are specific until about 6 to 7 weeks after birth.

Not only the age of the recipient seems important, because spleen cells obtained from 7-week-old non-diabetic mice were unable to transfer diabetes, presumably reflecting that an insufficient number of effector cells are present in the spleen at this age. On the other hand, non-diabetic mice donors more than 15 weeks of age have high levels of intraislet insulin but their ability to transfer diabetes is variable, suggesting that in at least some older non-diabetic NOD mice, either an insufficient number of effectors are present in the spleen or suppressor cells can interrupt effector cell function. NOD mice that have been insulin dependent for 2 months presumably lack β cells and fail to express the antigenic stimulus for the autoimmune response. A splenic transfusion from these animals, however, showed retained ability to transfer diabetes, indicating that long-lived memory cells are present for at least several months after the destruction of β cells.

It is noteworthy that transfer of diabetes, as mentioned above, was not limited to female donors and recipients; splenocytes from diabetic males consistently induced diabetes in non-diabetic NOD males. This is of interest as male mice display a lower spontaneous incidence of diabetes than females, as already mentioned. All the transfers were carried out with as few as $5 \times 10^6$ spleen cells, which did not have to be stimulated by ConA in advance, as is necessary in similar spleen transfusion experiments performed in BB rats.

Notable also is the fact that treatment with anti-Thy 1.2 mAb (T cells) prevents diabetes but does not influence the progression of insulitis. Prevention of diabetes as well as insulitis is obtained by administration of L3T4 (CD4) mAb. The necessity of the presence of CD8 cells and macrophages for the development of insulitis was proved by admission of anti-Lyt2 antibodies and silica particles, thereby preventing β-cell destruction.

Immunotherapy and Other Environmental Factors

Cyclosporin A can prevent the onset of diabetes and reduce insulitis in the NOD mouse. By contrast, cyclophosphamide strikingly enhances diabetes development, especially in males, perhaps via depression effects on regulator cells. The effect of cyclophosphamide can be prevented by...
admission of nicotinamide. Nicotinamide and cyclosporin A are discussed further in the BB-rat section. Nicotinamide itself reduces the incidence of insulitis and diabetes in NOD mice and the blocking of the cyclophosphamide effect is probably brought about by inhibition of ADCC.

As was the case with the BB rat, prophylactic insulin treatment of NOD mice during the prediabetic phase has been shown to prevent and/or delay the clinical onset of the disease. Insulin therapy has also proven to be able to protect non-diabetic NOD mice from the effects of transferred splenocytes. In this last study, the maximum tolerable dosage of fast-acting insulin was given until 30 d after the cell transfer. The diabetes incidence of the insulin-treated group was about 27%, compared with 83% in a control group.

Diet can also influence the incidence; the amount of fat especially seems to be important for the development of the syndrome in the male NOD mouse, that is, a diet reduced in fat can strongly increase incidence. In contrast, administration of gluten-free diet dramatically reduces the diabetes incidence. The admission of γ-interferon to NOD mice did not alter diabetes development and treatment with interleukin-2 could only reduce blood glucose values slightly. A preparation of group A streptococcus pyogenes, however, protects mice from diabetes and insulitis. Generally, it is a problem for the NOD mouse that prevention of diabetes in this model is may be too easy to obtain and is seen after treatment with many different compounds.

**Low-Dose, Streptozotocin-Induced Diabetes**

Streptozotocin (SZ) is a naturally occurring broad-spectrum antibiotic produced by *Streptomyces acromogenes*. The drug possesses oncolytic, oncogenic, as well as diabetogenic properties, diabetogenesis being mediated by pancreatic β-cell destruction, and is widely used as a method for induction of diabetes in experimental animals.

SZ consists of a nitrosamine group linked to a glucose molecule. The glucose moiety is apparently the essential component that specifically leads SZ into the β cell. SZ is rapidly cleared from the bloodstream with a serum half-life of 15 min. In 1963, SZ was conventionally administered as a single dose (200 mg/kg body weight), causing complete β-cell necrosis and diabetes within 24 h. The islets, however, were virtually inflammation-free. In 1976, Like and Rossini presented a new model where multiple subdiabetogenic doses to mice were applied. The result was a delayed onset of hyperglycemia, which for reasons of kinetics could not be due to the direct and rapid toxic activity of the drug. Fortunately, this new model also showed islets with insulitis; and until the discovery of the two spontaneously occurring models (the BB rat and the NOD mouse), this model provided one of the few experimental ways to study insulitis.

The mouse strain used by Like and Rossini was outbred CD-1 mice. The dosage used was 40 mg per kilogram body weight and was administered for five consecutive days, that is, a total dose equal to the single dosage used previously. Seven days after the completion of injections, the animal evidenced mild hyperglycemia, and plasma glucose elevation became progressively more pronounced 10 to 25 d after the last injection, that is, long after SZ was cleared from the bloodstream and the short-lived SZ β-cytotoxic activity was completed. Severe insulitis and disruption of islet cytoarchitecture was noted by experimental day 11. Light microscope examination revealed large numbers of lymphocytes, moderate numbers of macrophages, and few neutrophils surrounding and permeating the islets of Langerhans. Ultrastructural studies unexpectedly showed the presence of large numbers of type C virus particles within the many partially degranulated β cells, a discovery that was not made in usually well-granulated β cells, nor in α, δ, or inflammatory cells. Obviously, SZ was somehow responsible for the activation of virus replication.

Gender seemed to be an important modifier of the diabetogenic action of SZ because only males were susceptible. Later investigations confirmed this by showing that orchidectomy of CD-1 males depressed the level of hyperglycemia induced by SZ, whereas testosterone treatment restored
full sensitivity. Testosterone treatment of both ovariectomized and normal CD-1 females also increased hyperglycemic responsiveness to levels comparable with those observed in intact males.\textsuperscript{80}

**Mechanisms of Action**

There appear to be two ways by which the low-dose streptozotocin model can produce diabetes; one does not exclude the other: (1) by direct cytotoxic effect of SZ and (2) by immune mechanisms (possibly autoimmune).

**Direct Cytotoxic Action of Streptozotocin**

The very specific toxicity of SZ within islets for $\beta$ cells is linked to the capacity of the drug to accumulate rapidly in these cells. It seems probable, although not proved \textit{in vitro}, that SZ binds with a glucose recognition site on $\beta$ cells, because 3-O-methylglucose and at a higher dose D-glucose (partially) protect against streptozotocin.\textsuperscript{81} Once inside the cell, SZ decomposes to other components, one of which is a highly reactive carbonium ion that is able to alkylate various cellular components such as DNA or protein. Lesions in DNA of this type are removed by excision repair. Part of this excision repair process is the activation of the enzyme poly(ADP-ribose) synthetase to form poly(ADP-ribose) using nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) as a substrate. It is probable that the enzyme becomes activated to such an extent in the beta cells that NAD becomes critically depleted, resulting in a cessation of cellular function and ultimately cell death.\textsuperscript{82} Perhaps SZ, on entering the cell, alkylates not only DNA but also important components necessary for the generation of ATP (e.g., glycolytic and mitochondrial enzymes). A drop in ATP generation would further impair the resynthesis of NAD, causing this key component to drop below critical levels.\textsuperscript{83}

**Immune Mechanisms**

There is also the possibility of SZ causing point mutation. This type of lesion could cause the expression of a repressed gene that codes for a protein or other hapten not normally recognized by the immune system, for example, a fetal protein or a retrovirus.\textsuperscript{91} In support of the latter is the finding of the low-dose SZ model inducing the expression of type C retrovirus (or type A in the C57BL/KsJ strain). Although there seems to be little cytotoxic activity of these vira, they may increase islet cell antigenicity. Alkylation of DNA bases or the phosphate backbone could, if not repaired, cause conformational changes in DNA. These conformational lesions could alter the binding of a repressor protein and lead to the expression of a normally silent gene, which could elicit an immune reaction. SZ could also cause the expression of neoantigens by simply altering surface proteins on the $\beta$ cell surface directly. These altered surface proteins are very likely to be immunogenic.

The involvement of the immune system is supported by the fact that (1) T-cell-deficient mice do not develop hyperglycemia\textsuperscript{84–87} and that (2) conventional immunosuppression protects from diabetes: irradiation, prednisolone, cyclophosphamide, anti-lymphocyte serum and antibodies to T-cells.\textsuperscript{88–94} Cyclosporin A, however, is not able to inhibit diabetes development, probably because it is also $\beta$-cytotoxic in mice and might thereby amplify the effects of streptozotocin.\textsuperscript{95}

Involvement of immune processes normally leads to an immunological “memory,” that is, transfer of diabetes from diabetic SZ-treated mice to normal mice should be possible. However, permanent hyperglycemia has not been convincingly transferred into normal mice receiving splenocytes from SZ-treated donors.\textsuperscript{91} This is explainable if one considers that the memory cells are specific for $\beta$ cells only when the $\beta$ cells have been modified by streptozotocin. This is not an autoimmune mechanism in the classical sense because the organism has not lost tolerance to normal cells, but immune mechanisms have been induced by altered cells. A normal mouse not treated with SZ does not, of course, possess these altered cells.
Several investigations have examined susceptibility to SZ in different mice strains. Studies have shown “BALB/cBOM-nu+/” males to be susceptible and nu/nu males to be resistant unless reconstituted with T-lymphocyte-enriched splenocytes from euthymic donors,29–31 clear demonstrations of the diabetogenic potential of T lymphocytes. On the other hand, studies have also shown BALB/cBOM-nu/nu males to be as sensitive to SZ as euthymic littermates, using 60 mg/kg for 5 consecutive days.32 Yet another study of low-dose streptozotocin showed nude mice of the C57BL/KsJ background to develop blood glucose levels not significantly lower than their thymus-intact littermates.33 Possible explanations for this variety include different dosage regimes (as already mentioned); different contents of the α and β isomers of SZ, α having the highest β-cell cytotoxicity; and (genetically) different sensitivity among different mouse strains.

**Virus-Induced Diabetes: The EMC Virus**

A viral agent has been suggested as a trigger of diabetes. This is based on the seasonal trend, the presence of viral antibodies with rising titers in paired sera from newly diagnosed T1DM patients,98 the presence of inflammatory cells in the islets of Langerhans, the decrease in the number of β cells, and the concordance of only about 30% between monozygotic twins, which speaks in favor of an ethiological importance of the environment — this might very well be viral.

Evidence that viruses may be involved in β-cell destruction comes from experiments in animals. The experimental model most extensively studied has been the diabetogenic encephalomyocarditis (EMC) virus introduced by Craighead and McLane in 1968.99 The EMC virus is a small RNA virus belonging to the picornavirus family and is categorized as an enterovirus. It is a panotropic virus, which can attack all organs, but only the laboratory-selected M-variant of the virus has a specific tropism for β cells. When inoculated into mice, the virus attacks and destroys the β cells, and a diabetes-like syndrome evolves. However, the development of diabetes by EMC-M virus varied with different virus pools and passage history of the virus: plaque purification of the EMC-M virus resulted in the isolation of two stable variants, the highly diabetogenic EMC-D and the non-diabetogenic EMC-B.100,101 A new variant, EMC-DV1, which is non-diabetogenic, was, however, recently obtained by plaque purification of the EMC-D variant stock pool and comparison between nucleotide sequence and biological characteristics of the three variants made it likely that only two amino acids (one on the leader peptide, the other on the capsid protein) are responsible for the diabetogenicity of the EMC virus.102

Tissue culture experiments showed that EMC-D induced little, if any, interferon, whereas substantial amounts of interferon were produced by EMC-B.103,113 These results suggested that the interferon system might be one of the factors limiting the number of β cells that become infected and thereby might inhibit the induction of diabetes. In support of this, studies have shown that repeated administration of interferon or an interferon inducer reduces the development of diabetes in mice infected with the D variant.104 Mice treated with the interferon inducer had less virus, fewer pathological changes, and higher concentrations of immunoreactive insulin in the islets of Langerhans in comparison with untreated mice. In this study the normally non-diabetogenic EMC-B variant was also inoculated into mice given antibody to interferon. The result was an increased content of EMC-B virus in islets and other tissues, which resulted in diabetes in about 40% of the surviving animals. This result demonstrates that EMC-B is, in fact, able to infect islet cells, which therefore probably have receptors for both the EMC-B and EMC-D variants.

Although interferon clearly influences diabetes incidence, the importance of the cytokine has been seriously questioned by the fact that the EMC-DV1 variant is neither diabetogenic nor interferon inducing.115 Actually, it has been proposed that the protection against diabetes by interferon is merely strain dependent and not the cause of the different diabetogenicity of the B and D variants. The difference in diabetogenic properties of the D and B variants might, however, be related to the affinity of the vira for β-cell receptors. Thus, a study has shown that up to six times more EMC-D than EMC-B virus attaches to primary β cells extracted from male ICR-Swiss mice.105 As
mentioned, two amino acid changes between the B and D variants might be responsible for the diabetogenicity and one of the changes, a change from Thr (EMC-B) to Ala (EMC-D), has been shown to reduce the hydrophilicity of the region by 37%. Thus, this change unique to EMC-D may be responsible for the diabetogenicity of the EMC-D virus by increasing the efficiency of viral attachment to the β cells of mice. The resistance of certain mouse strains to the diabetogenic effects of the EMC-D virus could be due to genetically determined modifications in virus receptors on the surface of β cells.

Clinical Course of the Diabetes-Like Syndrome

After subcutaneous inoculation, the virus multiplies under the skin and disseminates in the blood, but viremia is transient (48 to 72 h). The infected mice develop necrotizing lesions of the β cells and immunofluorescence studies have demonstrated viral antigens exclusively in the islets of Langerhans. During the acute stages of infection, virus multiplication is associated with degranulation of the β cells and the release of insulin into the circulation. Promptly thereafter, blood levels of insulin fall and hyperglycemia develops.

A variable number of animals survive the infection, and mortality during the acute stages varies with animal age, dosage, and strain.106 Surviving animals either recover, exhibit abnormal glucose tolerance, or develop chronic hyperglycemia and a frank diabetes-like syndrome.107 Metabolically, many appear normal although they were hyperglycemic at some time during the first 2 weeks after virus inoculation.

Histological changes of the pancreatic islets become evident after about 4 d. At this time disruption of the overall architecture of the islets can be found. Mononuclear cells appear around the islets; in particular, macrophages are present in the tissue early in the course of infection. The inflammatory response varies from islet to islet and is relatively transient because foreign mononuclear cells are rarely found after the second week of infection.119 Other things being equal, the insulitis in the EMC virus model is more moderate than described in the other animal models of diabetes.

Genetic Susceptibility and Environmental Factors

When mice are infected with EMC virus (D or M variants), only certain inbred strains such as C3H/J, SJL/J, SWR/J, DBA/1J, and DBA/2J are susceptible and develop diabetes, while other strains such as C57BL/6J, CBA/J, and AKR/J remain unaffected.108 As mentioned previously, there seem to be considerable genetic variations among certain well-characterized BALB/c substrains: the BALB/c/BOM mouse is susceptible to EMC-virus infection109 while the BALB/cJ mouse is resistant.110 Backcross studies have indicated that susceptibility is inherited as an autosomal recessive trait.

It appears that although mice seem uniformly susceptible to EMC regarding diabetes development, the insular tissue of some strains is more readily damaged by the virus. The course of the infection in two susceptible strains, DBA/2J and C3H/J, has been compared; it was found that the amounts of virus in the pancreas of the two strains were similar, but the morphological changes in the islets of Langerhans differed because the β cells of the DBA/2J animals were strikingly degranulated and exhibited evidence of necrosis, whereas the insular cells of C3H mice were less severely affected.119

As it is only the susceptibility to EMC-induced diabetes that is inherited, it is not surprising that environmental factors also influence the expression of diabetes. Metabolic stress, for instance, has been shown to influence the severity of the disease; by inducing hyperphagia and thus obesity in mice by administration of gold-thio-glucose, which has a damaging effect on the satiation center of the hypothalamus, hyperglycemia occurred more often and was of greater severity than in infected non-obese controls. Corticosteroid hormones are able to increase the severity of the pancreatic
lesions of the EMC virus; the islets often exhibit frank necrosis and significantly greater amounts of insulin are found in the blood than in controls.¹¹⁹

**Immune Mechanisms**

The importance of the immune system in this animal model is a highly interesting question. Does the diabetic state occur predominantly on the basis of direct islet-cell destruction by the beta tropic virus, or are immune mechanisms, especially T cells, involved in the pathogenesis? Using the M-strain of the EMC virus (originating from Craighead), Buschard et al. in 1976 demonstrated the absence of a diabetogenic effect of EMC virus in nude mice of the C57/B16 strain.¹¹¹ These mice did not, like heterozygotic littermates and homozygotic mice, develop diabetes as shown by abnormal glucose tolerance. Diabetes in the latter developed 2 to 3 weeks after administration of the virus, at a time when the virus could no longer be isolated from the mice. Similar investigations in support of the role of an immune mechanism have been carried out using other strains.¹¹²,¹¹³ Thymectomy¹¹⁴ and irradiation¹¹⁵ have also been shown to prevent the development of diabetes in DBA/2 mice after EMC-virus inoculation, whereas treatment of the same mice with antilymphocyte serum reduced both the degree and duration of hyperglycemia.¹¹⁶ Thymectomized and irradiated BALB/cBy mice also fail to develop diabetes when infected.¹¹⁷,¹¹⁸ Interestingly enough, Buschard et al.¹²⁶ observed that the thymus-intact BALB/c mice developed not only diabetes, but also paresis (like in the Guillain–Barré syndrome) after administration of EMC-M virus, suggesting that neural and islet tissue have antigenic components in common. Another study, in which mice (BALB/cByJ) were treated with the anti-T-lymphocyte monoclonal anti-L3T4 and anti-Lyt 2.2 antibodies before virus inoculation, showed that mice depleted of L3T4⁺ cells exhibited a reduced incidence and severity of diabetes compared with both untreated and anti-Lyt 2.2-treated animals. All mice sustained pancreatic infection, but islet lesion with β-cell degranulation only occurred in immune intact and anti-Lyt 2.2-treated animals.¹¹⁹ These data clearly support the involvement of the immune system, especially suggesting a pivotal role for helper T lymphocytes in the pathogenesis of the disease.

On the basis of studies showing that depletion of lymphocytes failed to alter the incidence of diabetes,¹²⁰ and that athymic nude mice infected with EMC-D virus showed a response nearly identical to the diabetogenic response of heterozygous littermates,¹²¹ Yoon et al. did not find a primary role for the T cells in pathogenesis using their strain of virus. What seems important in this connection is that the passage histories of the virus used by Buschard and Yoon are different; the virus used by Yoon is passaged in β-cell cultures, a process known to increase direct β-cell toxicity, whereas the virus used by Buschard is passaged in mouse fibroblast cultures. Using very β-cell toxic vira, the direct action of the vira on the beta cells overrules a role of the T-immune system, which is obvious when less β-cell toxic vira are used. The model using the very toxic EMC virus makes an interesting experimental model, but the T-cell-dependent model is probably more relevant to human T1DM because the human disease very seldom has an acute onset, as would be expected from the actions of a toxic virus.

However, even Yoon demonstrated immune mechanisms to be involved in his experimental model.¹³⁴ It was determined by various MAbs against mouse immunocytes that Mac-2-positive macrophages were predominant at an early stage of viral infection, whereas helper/inducer T cells and cytotoxic/suppressor T cells were present at intermediate and late stages of viral infection. Because it has been reported that Mac-2 expression is induced only by strong inflammation stimuli and appears to be specific for mononuclear phagocyte subpopulations, it was examined whether macrophages truly play a role in destruction of β cells. This was done by depleting mice of macrophages by administration of silica, and long-term (but not short-term) treatment with silica resulted in complete prevention of diabetes in animals given a low dose of the virus.
ANIMAL MODELS OF TYPE 2 DIABETES

Type 2 diabetes (or T2DM) is responsible for 75 to 90% of the cases of diabetes seen and a growing problem in the Western world today. The disease was formerly predominantly seen in persons above the age of 45 years but today an increasing number of young people, including children, are diagnosed.

It seems to be caused by a reduced sensitivity to insulin rather than a reduced production of insulin. Some of the animal models show an increased production of insulin in the early stages that develops into a significantly decreased production of insulin in the late stages. In some models, the disease is connected with obesity.

The clinical signs of type 2 diabetes can be significantly altered by environmental factors. Infections, nutritional content of the diet, and chemical factors are known to be able to influence the development of the disease.

No sharp division between type 1 and type 2 diabetes can be made in animal models. However, most models resemble one type more than the other.

Type 2 diabetes is an inherited condition in several strains but it can also be induced in rats by different methods: neonatal injection of streptozotocin, partial pancreas ectomy, and chronic infusion of glucose. The plasma insulin levels differ in the three models. The streptozotocin-induced model is hypoinsulinemic, the pancreas ectomized model is normoinsulinemic, and the glucose-infused model is hyperinsulinemic.

Diabetes mellitus has been described in several species but the following will concentrate on rodents commercially available.

The Obese Diabetic Mice (ob/ob)

The obese diabetic mouse is characterized by marked obesity, hyperphagia, transient hyperglycemia and markedly elevated plasma insulin concentration associated with an increase in the number and size of the β cells in the islets of Langerhans.

The obesity is linked to an autosomal recessive mutation on chromosome 6 (ob), which occurred in the Jackson Laboratories as early as 1949. The mutation was propagated in C57BL/6J, but also in C57BLKS.122 Homozygous obese (ob/ob) animals developed hyperglycemia, hyperinsulinemia, and obesity. From about 26 d of age, ob/ob animals can be phenotypically distinguished from littermates on the basis of body weight, while heterozygous ob/+ or homozygous +/+ are lean animals and phenotypically normal.

Obese mice reach a maximum body weight of 60 to 70 g at an age of 7 to 8 months, while lean littermates reach their maximal weight of 30 to 40 g in 3 to 4 months.123,124 A decrease in thermogenesis can be recognized by 10 to 18 d of age.125,126

Genetic Background — The mutation was spread before the backcrossing was completed, and several colonies with obese mice carrying the mutation on different genetic backgrounds are maintained.

Obese mice are kept both on an inbred and non-inbred background, for example, the Bom:Umeå-ob is maintained as a non-inbred strain. The more common C57BL/6JBom-ob is congenic with the C57BL/6J strain and maintained by inbreeding.

The diabetes-like syndrome seems to be more severe in some non-inbred stocks of obese mice than in the more common inbred C57BL/6J obese mouse. Because the metabolic abnormalities are dependent on the interaction between the mutation itself and the genetic background,127 it is necessary for the interpretation of experimental data to mention the source and genetic background of the obese mouse studied.
Phenotypically, the obese mouse (C57BL/6J ob/ob) is identical with the diabetic mouse (C57BLKS db/db); however, the syndrome in C57BLKS db/db is far more severe than in the C57BL/6J ob/ob mouse. The clinical picture is dependent on the background strain in which the gene is expressed. If the ob gene is transferred to C57BLKS, this strain will develop a more severe form of diabetes than that observed in the C57BL/6J strain, indicating that these two strains differ in their capacity to adapt to diabetogenic stimuli.  

Metabolism — Serum insulin level is increased by day 17 to 21 and hypoglycemia develops. However, by the rapid increase in serum insulin level, hyperglycemia soon becomes a prominent feature of the obese mouse (350 to 450 mg%, 19 to 22 mmol/l). Marked insulin resistance associated with loss of insulin receptors in several tissues follows hyperinsulinemia. Decreased glucose tolerance also precedes the appearance of obesity. Serum insulin level reaches a peak by 6 to 8 months (200 to 400 microU/ml, 25 to 30 ng/ml), and the blood glucose level seems to normalize.

Food intake is greatly increased; however, this might first be evident 2 to 3 weeks after weaning. Hyperphagia is accompanied by an increased efficiency of energy utilization. The rate of lipogenesis in the liver and adipose tissue is more than doubled, and both intraperitoneal and subcutaneous deposit of fat is increased. The fat deposit continues despite food restriction and exercise in young ob/ob mice, indicating a more efficient absorption from the intestine and a higher metabolic utilization of the nutrient.

Gluconeogenesis is enhanced despite the hyperinsulinemic state in obese mice. The adrenal glands of obese mice are enlarged compared with controls; the enlargement is related to the cortical part; and there is an increased synthesis of corticosterone. Caloric deprivation leads to regression of the adrenal cortex assuming that the hypercorticism is a secondary phenomenon in this syndrome.

The secretion of glucagon is also elevated and it has been suggested that the hyperfunction of the α-cells in the pancreas of obese mice is involved in the pathogenesis of the obese-hyperglycemic syndrome. The morphological appearance of the pancreas in the obese mice is characterized by a marked hypertrophy and hyperplasia of the islets of Langerhans. Both β and α cells are increased in number and size; however, up to 90% of the cells in the islets are β cells. The size of the islets is related to body weight, and the islets will decrease in size after caloric deprivation.

The lack of thyroid-dependent Na⁺-K⁺-ATPase in the tissue of ob/ob mice has been suggested to explain the observed abnormalities in this mutant, including the failure to thermoregulate, the increased metabolic efficiency, the hypothalamic defects that contribute to hyperphagia, the hypogonadism, and the hypothyroidism.

Breeding of ob/ob Mice — Infertility is characteristic of the ob/ob females, the ovaries and uterus being atrophic. The ob/ob male will occasionally breed. The level of LH and FSH in serum is lower in obese mice compared with their lean littermates. It has been suggested that there is a persistent immaturity of the hypothalamic–pituitary axis in obese mice.

Therefore, the breeding is performed by mating heterozygous (ob+/+) animals. As there is no phenotypical difference between the lean ob/+ and +/+, the PCR (polymerase chain reaction) is used to identify the presence of the ob gene when selecting breeders.

The Diabetic Mouse (db/db)

The diabetic mouse C57BLKS (db/db) is an inbred strain that, despite the name, is also obese and phenotypically very close to the ob/ob mouse.

The condition is linked to an autosomal recessive mutation on chromosome 4 and is characterized by obesity, hyperphagia, temporary increased plasma insulin level, degeneration of the
β cells, and hyperglycemia. Several alleles of independent origin, \(db^{ad}\), \(db^{3J}\), \(db^{2J}\), and \(db^{Pas}\), are known and described. The alleles are probably similar, and no differences in clinical manifestations have been observed when the different alleles are transferred to the same genetic background.

The clinical features of the \(db\) mouse can be divided into two phases: a hyperinsulinemic phase (phase I), followed by a hypoinsulinemic phase at age 2 to 3 months (phase II).

An increased food consumption (hyperphagia) leads to an increase in body weight and obesitas can be recognized as early as the age of 4 weeks. The body weight increases quickly during the next 5 weeks to 40 to 60 g, but does not increase any further. Increased plasma insulin level is seen at an age of 10 d and increases until the age of 2 to 3 months (phase I), at which time it decreases abruptly to normal levels. The blood glucose content is close to normal in phase I (7.7 to 8.8 mmol/l [140 to 160 mg%]) or slightly elevated (8.8 to 16 mmol/l [160 to 300 mg%]). However, at the age of 2 to 3 months (phase II), the blood glucose level shows a marked increase. The blood glucose is maintained at a high level until death at age 5 to 8 months.

**Genetic Background** — The syndrome in C57BLKS \(db/db\) is far more severe than in the C57BL/6J \(ob/ob\) mouse. The clinical picture is dependent on the background strain in which the gene is expressed. For further details, see "Genetic Background" of the obese diabetic mice.

**Metabolism** — The increase in body weight is a result of not only hyperphagia, but also an increase in the efficiency of food utilization and reduced physical activity. The mutant also exhibits intestinal hypertrophy, abnormalities in the nutrient absorption, and changes in the regulatory neuronal peptides of the intestine. The severity of clinical signs can be modified by food restriction and alterations in the composition of the diet. Food restriction and a diet with a low content of carbohydrate might prolong the life span of the \(db/db\) mouse.

Gluconeogenesis is increased as the enzyme activity of glucose-6-phosphatase, fructose-1,6-diphosphatase, pyruvatecarboxylase, and phosphoenol pyruvatecarboxykinase is elevated both in old and young animals compared with controls. Hyperfunction of the pancreatic α cells (glucagon) is also evident in the \(db\) mouse.

The clinical symptoms are far more severe in male mice than in female mice, suggesting an effect of sex steroids. Some substrate variation in this respect has been reported. In the initial phase (phase I), the size and number of β cells are markedly increased, probably as a compensatory reaction to a decreased sensitivity toward insulin in the peripheral tissue. The decrease in plasma insulin level is correlated with a degeneration of the pancreatic islets and destruction of the islet β cells. The clinical symptoms and course of the disease are more severe than in the \(ob/ob\) mouse, which explains the shorter life span of the \(db/db\) mouse.

**Immune System** — Abnormalities in the immune system are seen in the \(db/db\) mouse, supporting the theory that the immune system might be involved in the pathogenesis of the clinical symptoms observed in the \(db/db\) mouse. The \(db/db\) mouse has a diminished ability to reject skin grafts and to generate cytotoxic T lymphocytes. The lymphokine production is reduced and a depressed delayed hypersensitivity reaction is seen. An increased plaque-forming β-cell response is observed in the \(db/db\) mouse. Thymus involution is accelerated and there is T-cell lymphopenia. Cytotoxic antibodies against β cells and T cells isolated from the spleen inhibit insulin release from β cells in vitro.

Class II MHC autoreactive T cells found in the spleen and lymph nodes indicate the presence of ongoing autoreactivity in \(db/db\) mice, and treatment with anti-I-A\(^d\) monoclonal antibodies can prolong the life span compared with untreated controls. However, insulitis is not found, suggesting that the autoreactivity is not directed toward islet cells but may be a consequence of the disease. Moreover, diabetes does develop in the absence of T and B lymphocytes, as revealed by transfer
of genes causing an immune deficiency in \( db/db \) mice.\textsuperscript{158,159} The organ reactive autoantibody production may be modified by sex-linked factors.\textsuperscript{160}

Diabetic neuropathy is observed in the C57BLKS \( db/db \) mouse.\textsuperscript{161,162} Lesions are also seen in the kidneys,\textsuperscript{163} and the kidney function is impaired compared with controls.\textsuperscript{164} Myocardial disease has also been described.\textsuperscript{165}

**Breeding of \( db/db \) Mice** — The diabetic mouse is an inbred strain maintained by brother × sister mating of heterozygous \((db^+/-)\) animals because the homozygous animals are infertile.\textsuperscript{166}

A mutant coatcolor gene closely linked to the \( db \) gene has been incorporated into the C57BLKS \( db \) strain to facilitate the identification of heterozygotes for breeding. The recessive mutant gene misty (\( m \)) is linked to the wild (not diabetic) type of the \( db \) gene. This way, wild-type animals (+/+ ) will become lean and grey \((m/m)\); \((db^+/-)\) will become lean and black; and \((db/db)\) will become fat and black. The presence of the \((db)\) gene can also be identified using PCR.

**The New Zealand Obese Mouse**

The New Zealand obese (NZO) mouse is an inbred strain that was developed by Bielschowsky at the Otago University Medical School, New Zealand.\textsuperscript{166} It was bred for the purpose of developing a mouse strain for cancer research, and by chance it was found that a substrain became obese and diabetic.

The NZO strain is a model of type 2 diabetes and can be used for the study of obesity and islet dysfunction.

The median life span is about 460 d in males and 530 d in females.\textsuperscript{167} The coat color is agouti.

**Genetic Background and Metabolism** — The precise mode of inheritance is not understood; it is thought to be of a polygenic nature. Lesions are seen within the islets of Langerhans.\textsuperscript{168} The NZO mouse accumulates fat mainly within the abdomen, in contrast to the generalized fat distribution observed in other obese diabetic models \((ob \text{ and } db)\).\textsuperscript{169} Depositing fat starts at about 4 weeks of age, although divergence of growth curves between NZOs and controls is not detectable before about 2 to 4 months. At 5 to 6 months of age, the body weight is approximately 50 g.

Blood glucose varies with age and sex but rarely exceeds 300 mg/100 ml, corresponding to 16 mmol/l. A moderate hyperinsulinemia develops, and the plasma insulin level increases with age to reach levels up to 200 \( \mu \) U/ml before declining. The hypersecretion is associated with a marked hypertrophy of the islet tissue and an increase in pancreatic insulin content. The hyperinsulinemia and obesity are accompanied by an increasing insulin resistance. This is demonstrated by the loss of sensitivity of adipose tissue and muscle glucose metabolism to insulin stimulation and by the drop in insulin-receptor numbers on liver cell plasma membranes.\textsuperscript{170}

**Other Features of the NZO Mouse** — Other features of the NZO mouse include intermediate incidence of ovarian granulosa cell tumors, a high incidence of malignant lymphomas of Peyer’s Patches, and a high incidence of duodenal and lung tumors.\textsuperscript{171–174}

**The Goto Kakizaki Rat**

The GK (Goto Kakizaki) rat is a model of non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (T2DM), type 2 diabetes. The model shows a mild diabetes with several type 2-related characteristics, including fasting hyperglycemia, impaired secretion of insulin in response to glucose both *in vivo* and in isolated pancreatic cells, and hepatic and periferal insulin resistance.

Late complications such as retinopathy, microangiopathy, neuropathy, and nephropathy have been described in the literature.\textsuperscript{175–177}
Characteristics of the Strain

Contrary to other rodent models of type 2 diabetes, the GK rat is nonobese. Body weight is slightly lower than that of the Wistar rat. There is no difference in the weights of the pancreas and the liver, but that of the kidney is greater and that of the fat pad is lower than in the Wistar rat.

In the GK rat, changes are seen in the pancreas islets. The shape of these is oval or round at the age of 2 months; but at 3 months, the islets lose the smooth round or oval shape and become irregular with a starfish-like shape.

The mean islet area is not different from the Wistar rat but the number of endocrine cells per islet is significantly lower. Instead, it contains mostly fibrous tissue.

The number of $\beta$ cells decreases with age, and the insulin and glucagon contents of the pancreas are lower in the GK rat than in the Wistar.\(^{178}\)

Development of the Strain

The GK rat strain has been developed from normal outbred Wistar rats by repeated selective breeding using glucose intolerance as a selection index. This work was started in 1973 by Goto and Kakizaki at the Tohoku University, Sendai, Japan. The animals were exposed to an oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) and the grade of glucose tolerance was expressed as the sum of blood glucose values at five time points. This resulted in all offspring having a diabetic OGTT after the 10th generation. The strain had some difficulties in keeping a stable glucose tolerance level for some generations, probably due to disease outbreaks in the breeding units; but after moving the strain to new, clean facilities in 1983, the diabetic state became stable and the litter size stabilized.\(^{179}\)

A Heritable Condition

The genetics and physiology of T2DM is still poorly understood but it clearly has a heritable component and is believed to be of a polygenic nature.\(^{180}\)

Galli et al.\(^{181}\) found three independent loci involved in the disease. These loci were located on the chromosomes 1, 2, and 10. The locus on chromosome 1 showed the largest effect on postprandial hyperglycemia but no effect on the fasting level. This locus seems to affect early-stage insulin secretion. The loci on chromosome 2 and 10 affect both fasting and postprandial hyperglycemia.

The T2DM of the GK rat is reported to exhibit an excess of maternal inheritance.

Characteristics of the Disease

A wide range of parameters have been studied in the GK rat to explain the physiological background of the disease. Nagamatsu et al.\(^{182}\) tested the expression of the target receptor proteins (t-SNAREs) and found that a decreased expression of the t-SNAREs in isolated GK rat islets is, in part, the defect responsible for the characteristic impaired insulin secretion.

The exact mechanism of the progressive reduction of pancreatic islet $\beta$ cells in the GK rat is not clear but it can be inhibited by treatment with Voglibose, an alpha-glucosidase inhibitor. GK rats treated with Voglibose show progressive loss of cells but it is mitigated by the treatment. Voglibose does not seem to stimulate $\beta$-cell proliferation but has an effect via a reduction of the hyperglycemia.\(^{183}\)

Chronic hyperglycemia results in oxidative stress which damages the pancreatic $\beta$ cells. Administration of the antioxidant $\alpha$-tocopherol (vitamin E) has resulted in a significant increment of insulin secretion and a significant decrement of blood glucose levels.\(^{184}\)
Development of the Disease

In this strain, 100% of the animals develop diabetes at an early stage; and at the age of 2 months, the postprandial blood glucose level is often greater than 10 mmol/l.

The blood glucose level in fasting GK rats is relatively stable but the level of fed animals is constantly rising during the first 6 months of their lives, indicating the impaired insulin secretion/insulin resistance typical of type 2 diabetes (Figure 9.1).

Polydipsia and polyuria are seen but the general health of the GK rat is good, and it is able to breed without any treatment although the number of pups per female is smaller than that of the normal Wistar rat.

Substrains of the GK rat have been developed and differences in the diabetic symptoms are seen.

Oral Glucose Tolerance Test

The GK rat has developed on the basis of selective breeding of animals with a positive oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT). Fasting animals are treated orally with a glucose solution at a dose of 2 g/kg and the blood glucose level is measured at 0, 30, 60, and 120 min after the application. The results can be seen in Figure 9.2. Among other characteristics, the GK rat has a slower metabolic decomposition rate of glucose than the normal Wistar rat.

Late Complications

Retinopathy — The GK rat is a model of the retinopathy seen in T2DM. Several authors have described retinal proliferative changes and many parameters were evaluated to explain this. Some of these are the glutathione level, ocular vascular endothelial growth factor, endothelial/pericyte ratio, and retinal microcirculatory alterations.185–187

Miyamoto et al.188 evaluated the microcirculatory conditions of the GK rat compared with age-matched controls. This was tested over an extended period of 5 months.
The eye dilution technique with scanning laser ophthalmoscope-based fluorescein angiography was used to evaluate the circulation in GK rats. Retinal mean circulation times (MCTs), retinal segmental blood flows (SBFs), and vessel diameters were determined by computer-assisted image analysis on a frame-by-frame basis.

Miyamoto et al.\textsuperscript{188} found that the MTCs were significantly prolonged and the SBFs significantly reduced in the GK group. No significant differences were observed in the retinal arterial and venous diameters between the two groups.

However, the GK rat did not exhibit dense cataract, and morphological changes of diabetic retinopathy did not develop during the 5-month period, indicating that retinal circulatory abnormalities are found before observable retinopathy development in GK rats.

This pathological picture makes the GK rat a useful model of T2DM for the evaluation of retinal circulation over an extended time period.\textsuperscript{188}

Neuropathy — The GK rat also serves as a model of neuropathy seen as a chronic complication of T2DM. Nerve conduction velocity of the nerves of the GK rat is significantly slower than that of age-matched normal Wistar rats and morphological abnormalities are described.\textsuperscript{189}

Wada et al.\textsuperscript{190} investigated the peripheral nerve function and structures of the GK rat. The chronic hyperglycemia in T2DM is implicated in the pathogenesis of the late complications seen but it is not well known how and to what extent the development of neuropathy is inhibited by blood glucose control. To address this, Wada et al.\textsuperscript{190} investigated the effects of an α-glucosidase inhibitor (Voglibose; Vg) on neuropathic changes in the GK rat.

Motor nerve conduction velocity (MNCV) and the structure of the peripheral nerves were examined and compared with Wistar controls. The treatment significantly lowered the blood glucose levels. The MNCV in the GK rat was 80% of the normal controls and Vg treatment inhibited this delay by 24% at 24 weeks and 57% at 36 weeks of age. The Vg treatment also reduced the development of demyelinating nerve fiber abnormalities.\textsuperscript{190}

Nephropathy — Diabetic nephropathy is one of the most common causes of end-stage renal failure in the Western world, and the mechanisms underlying its development seem very complex and unfortunately still incompletely understood.

The GK rat shows several pathological changes resembling nephropathy in human type 2 diabetes.

Phillips et al.\textsuperscript{191} showed definitive renal structural changes. Thickening of the glomerular and tubular membrane was seen, as was glomerular hypertrophy. There was evidence of immunohistochemical podocyte injury and an increase of interstitial monocyte/macrophage influx. Macrophage infiltration was also seen in the glomeruli.
There is some dispute as to whether or not the GK rat is a model of progressive kidney disease. Riley et al.\textsuperscript{192} describe the GK rat as a model in which progressive kidney disease does not develop spontaneously, whereas Marcelo et al.\textsuperscript{193} consider it a model of progressive renal disease.

**Influence of Environment** — The severity of the T2DM of the GK rat can be influenced by external factors. As seen in other diabetes models, the nutritional contents of the feed can change the course of the disease.

A high-fat diet is known to increase hyperglycemia in the GK rat. In F2 progeny of an intercrossing between the GK and the F344 rat, the incidence of diabetes increased 3.7 times after 4 weeks of treatment with a high-fat diet. Four loci on different chromosomes have been found responsible for this effect.\textsuperscript{194}

Early dietary restriction has been found to lower the weight gain but not aggravate basal hyperglycemia or glucose intolerance, despite a decrease in basal plasma insulin level. Also, glucose uptake mediated by insulin in the peripheral tissues was clearly improved.\textsuperscript{195}

**REFERENCES**


102. Bae, Y.S., Eun, H.M., Pon, R.T., Giron, D., and Yoon, J.W., Two amino acids, Phe 16 and Ala 776, on the polyprotein are most likely to be responsible for the diabetogenicity of encephalomyocarditis virus, *J. Gen. Virol.*, 71, 639, 1990.


CHAPTER 10

Animal Models of Skeletal Disease

Kurt D. Hankenson, Christi M. Cavaliere, and Ryan P. Frank

INTRODUCTION

The current decade, 2000 to 2010, has been designated the “Bone and Joint Decade” by the World Health Organization. One of the four goals of this initiative is “advancing understanding of musculoskeletal disorders through research to improve prevention and treatment.”1 Two chronic, age-associated conditions, osteoporosis and osteoarthritis, are particularly problematic because...
(1) the natural history of the diseases is extremely complex and poorly understood, and (2) no treatments have been devised to reliably restore complete function once the diseases have clinically progressed. Because musculoskeletal conditions are often age associated, it is anticipated that the prevalence of skeletal-related diseases across the entire population will reach epidemic proportions as the average life expectancy of the population climbs. However, musculoskeletal conditions are not only age-related, chronic disorders. Acute bone and joint trauma, as well as developmental and heritable conditions of bone and cartilage, represent significant causes of pain and disability across all of society.

Animal models have contributed significantly to our understanding of skeletal development, function, pathology, and healing. Specifically, genetically engineered murine (GEM) models and spontaneous mutations in rats and mice have provided insight into molecular mechanisms that regulate skeletal development, homeostasis, and disease. As well, induced skeletal pathology in various laboratory animals, from birds to non-human primates, can be used to successfully mimic human disease. This chapter reviews common animal models of bone and cartilage disorders, focusing specifically on GEM models and on inducible systems that can be adapted for studies using rodents. Obviously, it is not possible to include all skeletal models nor all pertinent GEM models, but we will highlight representative models in Tables 10.1 through 10.14 and make reference to review articles throughout the text. As well, a comprehensive volume, Animal Models in Orthopaedic Research, covers the topic of animal models of skeletal disease in much greater detail and highlights topics that are not within the scope of this chapter.

When choosing a skeletal animal model, it is essential that a number of points be considered. First, how well the animal model mimics the disease condition in humans must be addressed. For instance, although the induction of bone resorption after estrogen removal may mimic postmenopausal bone loss, whether the model adequately mimics other causes of osteopenia must be considered. As well, although mice and rats are ideal models for studying molecular mechanisms and gene expression, depending on the goals of the study, higher mammals more accurately mimic human skeletal disease at the organ level and may be a better choice. Second, whether the animal model can be exploited to understand events at the molecular level irrespective of the events at the whole organ must be considered. For example, although the disease state between humans and mice may differ significantly, using GEM models to study molecular mechanisms may still be the best option. Second, whether the animal model can be exploited to understand events at the molecular level irrespective of the events at the whole organ must be considered. For example, although the disease state between humans and mice may differ significantly, using GEM models to study molecular mechanisms may still be the best option. Third, skeletal studies, whenever possible, should be conducted with the contralateral limb acting as a negative control. This not only improves statistical power but also reduces the number of animals. The limb chosen should be selected randomly.

Finally, because skeletal tissues are slowly remodeled organs, the time course of experiments and sampling must be considered.

**BONE**

**Overview**

Bone is a mineralized collagenous tissue. It functions to support and protect the soft tissues of the body, enables ambulation by functioning as the lever to the action of skeletal muscle, acts as a calcium store, and is the primary site for adult hematopoeisis. Bone develops via two developmental processes: intramembranous bone formation and endochondral bone formation. The appendicular skeleton is composed primarily of endochondral bone, whereas craniofacial bones are primarily intramembranous in origin. Endochondral bone growth occurs secondary to vascular invasion into a cartilage anlage. Chondroclastic cell activity occurs coincident with vascular invasion, and bone is formed on the remnants of the cartilage template by osteoblasts (OBS). This primary bone is then modeled throughout development and growth to achieve a functional homeostasis. In general, modeling of long bones results in resorption at the endosteal surface and formation...
at the periosteal surface. This leads to a mechanically superior bone. Trabecular modeling results
in bony trabeculae that are aligned along the axis of maximum load.

In response to a variety of normal and pathological processes, properly modeled bone is
continuously remodeled throughout an animal’s life. Bone is removed by monocytic-lineage osteo-
clasts (OCLs), followed by bone deposition by OBs on the resorptive surface.\textsuperscript{6,7} Remodeling is a
dynamic process that, under normal circumstances, results in the replacement of older bone with
new bone. In adult humans, 10% of bone is resorbed and replaced every year; thus, it is estimated
that complete skeletal turnover occurs every 10 years.\textsuperscript{8} Bone metabolic units (BMUs) are the
hallmark of remodeling in humans and most other species. However, rodents lack traditional BMUs;
therefore, it is debatable whether the coupled processes of formation and resorption that occur in
mice and rats represent true remodeling.\textsuperscript{9} As well, rodents lack osteons, which are the cortical
manifestations of BMUs. Defects in bone modeling or remodeling that result in either greater bone
production or reduced bone resorption lead to increases in bone content (osteosclerosis), whereas
modeling or remodeling defects that result in reduced bone production or increased resorption
result in decreased bone mass (osteopenia).

OBs and OCLs are under the influence of mechanical load and a variety of humoral and local
factors that affect cell maturation, cell proliferation, protein synthesis, or degradation. These two
counteracting cell types can control the development, function, and apoptosis of one another.
Increases in mechanical load result in a net increase in bone deposition.\textsuperscript{10} Systemic factors, such
as parathyroid hormone (PTH), estrogen, vitamin D, and growth hormone (GH), regulate both bone
resorption and formation. As well, a wide variety of growth factors, such as the bone morphogenetic
protein (BMP) family, fibroblast growth factors (FGF), and insulin-like growth factors (IGF), and
inflammatory mediators, such as prostaglandin E\textsubscript{2} and interleukin 1 (IL-1), influence bone remod-
eling.\textsuperscript{11,12} Components of the extracellular matrix (ECM) also control bone matrix production.

OBs are derived from undifferentiated mesenchymal progenitors.\textsuperscript{13,14} At the periosteal bone
surface, the OB progenitors are associated with the fibrous periosteum, whereas in the endosteal
compartiment, OB progenitors are mesenchymal cells located throughout the marrow cavity. Func-
tional OBs have three fates. They can become quiescent bone-lining cells, they can become
osteocytes surrounded by bone matrix, or they can undergo apoptosis.\textsuperscript{15}

OCLs are derived from common macrophage progenitors in the marrow cavity.\textsuperscript{16} The develop-
ment of these cells is dependent on a variety of cytokines, including the common cytokines,
granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), and macrophage colony-stimulating
factor (mCSF), but also on more specific cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and IL-6.
Recently, a TNF-related molecule that binds the RANK receptor, RANK ligand (RANKL), was
identified that is absolutely required for OCL formation. A soluble, RANK-like protein, osteopro-
tegerin (OPG), can bind to RANKL and limit its activity. OCLs are characterized as multinucleated,
tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase (TRAP)-positive cells that express the calcitonin receptor and
the proteolytic enzyme, cathepsin K.

Models of Increased Bone Mass

A number of heritable disease conditions in humans are associated with increased bone mass,
including sclerosteosis, osteopetrosis, and Paget’s disease. In sclerosteosis, there is an increase in
the amount of bone that forms, such that the marrow cavity of long bones can become ablated.
Osteopetrosis, on the other hand, is characterized by retention of primary trabecular bone and
cartilage because of a failure to remodel through OCL activity. Paget’s disease is an acquired bone
abnormality that is likely multietiologic and includes a heritable component associated with viral
infection. Disease progression results in proliferative osteogenic lesions characterized by both
increased bone formation and resorption.

The gene associated with sclerosteosis in humans was recently identified, SOST,\textsuperscript{17} and neither
knockout nor transgenic-overexpressing mice of this gene have been reported. SOST appears to
function in a normal state as an inhibitor of BMP activity; thus, it is assumed that the defect in SOST is a loss-of-function mutation. The knockout of the gene should provide key data regarding the natural history of this disease in humans and may represent a model that can be used to test treatment options for sclerosteosis. In addition, humans with a gain-of-function mutation in the LRP5 gene have high bone mass and resistance to fracture, although not clinical sclerosteosis. Mice with this gene knocked out show a decrease in bone mass, similar to the human disease osteoporosis pseudoglioma, which occurs in patients with a loss-of-function mutation in LRP5. On the basis of these findings, we speculate that mice overexpressing LRP5 will have enhanced bone mass and mimic the human disease.

Several GEMs show increased bone mass due to enhanced bone formation (Table 10.1; reviewed by Boyce et al. and McCauley). These include knockouts for the ECM proteins osteocalcin and thrombospondin-2. Mice overexpressing an inhibitor of G-coupled protein desensitizer, GRK, from an OB-specific promoter have enhanced bone mass, presumably because of the maintenance of PTH-related protein receptor (PTHRP) signaling in OBs. As well, mice with gene defects that are associated with lipid metabolism, including leptin- and leptin receptor-null mice, and mice lacking white fat, A-ZIP/F1 transgenic, all show increases in bone mass relative to WT controls.

Table 10.1 Murine Models with Increased Bone Mass

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Osteocalcin-null</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Defect in mineralization results in enhanced BFR</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombospondin-2 null</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Increased cortical bone, osteoprogenitor number, and BFR; OCL activity normal</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteopontin-null</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Mice maintain bone mass in response to OVX, unloading, and PTH</td>
<td>143, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob/ob — leptin deficient</td>
<td>Spontaneous mutation</td>
<td>In the absence of leptin, increased trabecular bone mass and BFR, but OB number is normal</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db/db — leptin receptor deficient</td>
<td>Spontaneous mutation</td>
<td>Similar to ob/ob</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-bone mass mice</td>
<td>Spontaneous — inbred line C3H/HeJ</td>
<td>C3H mice show a higher bone mass due to an increase in systemic IGF-1</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-ZIP/F1 mice</td>
<td>Transgenic overexpression of c-fos and c-jun transcription factor dominant negative in adipocytes</td>
<td>Low leptin levels that are present in these fat-deficient mice result in enhanced bone mass</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRK inhibitor overexpression — osteocalcin promoter</td>
<td>Transgenic overexpression in OBs of an inhibitor of G-coupled protein receptor desensitization</td>
<td>Increased bone density and trabecular bone volume; associated increases in OCL activity</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeltaFosB</td>
<td>Transgenic — tetracycline-regulated promoter</td>
<td>Bone formed at the expense of adipocytes in the endocortical compartment; increased OB differentiation</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fra-1</td>
<td>Transgenic overexpression</td>
<td>Progressive osteosclerosis due to increased endocortical BFR and MAR; OB proliferation unchanged, differentiation increased</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGF-1 — osteocalcin promoter</td>
<td>Transgenic overexpression in OB</td>
<td>Increased trabecular bone formation due to enhanced OB life span, but not an increase in OB proliferation</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D receptor — osteocalcin promoter</td>
<td>Transgenic overexpression in OB</td>
<td>Increased periosteal MAR; increased bone strength; endocortical resorption inhibited</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: BFR, bone formation rate; IGF, insulin-like growth factor; MAR, mineral apposition rate; OB, osteoblasts; OCL, osteoclast; OVX, ovariectomy; PTH, parathyroid hormone.
The importance of IGF-1 has also been revealed because mice overexpressing IGF-1 using the osteocalcin promoter have enhanced trabecular bone due to enhanced OB activity.

Models of osteopetrosis in small-animal species are plentiful; have been reviewed by Boyce et al., de Vernejoul and Benichou, and McCauley; and are outlined in Table 10.2. In these animal models, like in human osteopetrosis, bone is not properly resorbed, resulting in retention of cartilage and an inability to remodel bone. An absence of tooth eruption is a common abnormality that is associated with faulty resorption. Thus, these lines of mice are difficult to maintain because of malnutrition. In general, these models fall into one of three categories: (1) an absence of OCL precursor cells, (2) failure of precursors to develop into mature OCLs, or (3) a failure of mature OCLs to function. Defects at any point do not necessarily indicate an endogenous cellular defect and may rather be related to a loss of or inappropriate function of a supportive marrow stromal cell (MSC). A defect that is not correctable by marrow transplantation suggests that the abnormality is due to an MSC alteration. MSCs regulate OCL differentiation and are not transferred in marrow transplant. For instance, op/op mice do not produce m-CSF, thus marrow transplantation is ineffective at compensating for the abnormality. As well, marrow transplant would not be expected to correct the defect in OPG-overexpressing mice.

Four spontaneous murine lines have been used as models of osteopetrosis. The mutated gene has been identified in three of the models. The op/op mouse lacks mCSF, and virtually no OCLs form. The oc/oc mouse lacks a vacuolar adenosine triphosphatase, and although OCLs form, they do not function normally. Mice with microphthalmia (mi/mi) also develop OCLs, but the OCLs are immature. The mi locus codes for bHLH-zip transcription factor, mitf, which is required for OCL maturation. There are four recognized rat osteopetrosis models but the defective genes have not been identified in three of the models. The mutation in the tl/tl rat is a defect in mCSF. Spontaneous osteopetrotic rabbits have an unknown defect in OCL function and display the characteristics of normal osteoporosis; however, bone marrow transplantation is not effective at correcting the problem, thus mimicking the models of null mutations in mCSF. However, one difference from mCSF-deficient models is that in the os/os rabbit, OCLs form but are incapable of bone resorption. In animal studies of osteopetrosis, selection of the appropriate model is essential. For instance, if the goal of the study is to test a compound that may promote OCL number in osteopetrosis, then it would be shortsighted to select a model in which OCL function is abnormal.

To date, there are no reported animal models of Paget’s disease. It has been difficult to reproduce in animals because of the failure to isolate a linked gene and the likely contribution of secondary infectious disease. An elegant murine model that begins to mimic the OCL abnormality observed in Paget’s disease overexpresses the measles virus receptor (hCD46) in OCL, but a likely defect in OB function has not been identified.

Models of Decreased Bone Mass

A decrease in bone mass (osteopenia) occurs when bone resorption outpaces bone formation during remodeling. This may result from a down-regulation in OB activity or an increase in OCL activity relative to OB. The most widely recognized bone-loss condition in humans is postmenopausal osteoporosis. Osteoporosis is a clinical designation that is used when a patient has a decrease in bone mass of 2.5 standard deviations below the mean peak bone mass for the population. Osteoporotic patients have a significantly enhanced risk of fracture. For the sake of this discussion, we refer to all conditions of decreased bone mass, including osteoporosis, as osteopenia. It should be noted that the term osteoporosis has not been used as a clinical term to describe osteopenia in any animal because of the failure to recognize an increased risk of fracture clinically.

Osteopenia is a complex, multifactorial disease. Loss of bone is age associated, increased in cases of sex steroid deficiency (loss of estrogen or testosterone), secondary to unloading, and also occurs as a result of corticosteroid treatment. As well, decreases in bone mass have been documented after chronic alcohol and nicotine exposure. There is a heritable component to
osteopenia, and mutations in a number of known genes are associated with osteopenia, including collagen type I, vitamin D receptor, and estrogen receptor genes. Animal models of decreased bone mass can be used to better understand the complex molecular mechanisms regulating bone remodeling and represent a practical model for testing antiresorptive and anabolic therapeutics. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration requires that all antiosteoporosis therapeutics be tested

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Mutated Gene and Common Name</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Corrected by BMT</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>Osteosclerosis (oc/oc)</td>
<td>Vacuolar ATPase; no ruffled borders on OCLs</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>Microphthalmia (mi/mi)</td>
<td>Mutation in bHLH transcription factor</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>Grey-lethal (gl/gl)</td>
<td>Defect in formation of OCLs; unknown mutation</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>Osteopetrotic (op/op); mCSF null mutation</td>
<td>Equivalent to mCSF knock out; no OCL</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>src-null</td>
<td>Can not resorb bone due to the failure to form ruffled borders</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>c-fos</td>
<td>No OCL development</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Cathepsin-null</td>
<td>Can not resorb bone due to the absence of this key enzyme</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>RANKL-null</td>
<td>No OCL development due to the lack of production of a OCL inducing factor by MSC</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>RANK-null</td>
<td>No OCL development; OCL precursors lack required receptor</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>TRAP-null</td>
<td>Reduced bone resorption; OCL number increases, but cells are dysfunctional</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>TRAF6-null</td>
<td>No OCL development; gene product is an intermediate signaling molecule</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Beta3-null</td>
<td>OCLs unable to attach to bone due to dysfunctional integrin complexes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>mCSF receptor-null</td>
<td>OCL precursors lack required cellular receptor, no OCLs form</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>OPG overexpressor</td>
<td>Reduced OCL development</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>RANK-Fc soluble overexpressor</td>
<td>Decreased OCL development</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, spontaneous</td>
<td>Toothless (tl/tl)</td>
<td>Apparent alteration in CSF1; no OCL formation</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, spontaneous</td>
<td>Incisor absent rat (ia/ia)</td>
<td>Reduction in the number of formed OCLs</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, spontaneous</td>
<td>Osteopetrotic rat (op/op)</td>
<td>Defect localizes to chromosome 10; OCLs form ruffled borders, but they are ineffective at resorbing bone</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, spontaneous</td>
<td>Microphthalmia bland (mib/mib)</td>
<td>Mild osteoporosis that recovers with maturity</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit, spontaneous</td>
<td>Osteosclerotic (os/os)</td>
<td>No ruffled borders on OCLs; no bone resorption</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** ATP, adenosine triphosphate; BMT, bone marrow transplant; mCSF, macrophage colony-stimulating factor; MSC, marrow stromal cell; OCL, osteoclasts; OI, osteogenesis imperfecta; OPG, osteoprotegerin; RANKL, RANK ligand. 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Corrected by BMT</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>Vacuolar ATPase; no ruffled borders on OCLs</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>Mutation in bHLH transcription factor</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>Defect in formation of OCLs; unknown mutation</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>Equivalent to mCSF knock out; no OCL</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Can not resorb bone due to the failure to form ruffled borders</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>No OCL development</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Can not resorb bone due to the absence of this key enzyme</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>No OCL development due to the lack of production of a OCL inducing factor by MSC</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>No OCL development; OCL precursors lack required receptor</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Reduced bone resorption; OCL number increases, but cells are dysfunctional</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>No OCL development; gene product is an intermediate signaling molecule</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>OCLs unable to attach to bone due to dysfunctional integrin complexes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>OCL precursors lack required cellular receptor, no OCLs form</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>Reduced OCL development</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>Decreased OCL development</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, spontaneous</td>
<td>Apparent alteration in CSF1; no OCL formation</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, spontaneous</td>
<td>Reduction in the number of formed OCLs</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, spontaneous</td>
<td>Defect localizes to chromosome 10; OCLs form ruffled borders, but they are ineffective at resorbing bone</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, spontaneous</td>
<td>Mild osteoporosis that recovers with maturity</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit, spontaneous</td>
<td>No ruffled borders on OCLs; no bone resorption</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
in both small-animal and large-animal models. The large-animal model requirement is a function of the difference in remodeling between rodents and larger mammals.

Given the intense interest in developing new treatment modalities for osteopenia, a large body of literature has been generated on the use of various animal models. For a more in-depth discussion of these models, the reader is referred to excellent reviews by R.T.F. Turner et al.,35 Jerome and Peterson,36 Miller et al.,37 Thompson et al.,38 and Mosekilde.39 As well, the reader is referred to papers presented at the International Conference on Animal Models in the Prevention and Treatment of Osteopenia, held in 1995 in Cairns, Australia, and presented as a supplement to the journal Bone (Bone, Vol. 17 Suppl., 1995). The most common and reliable model for the induction of osteopenia is gonadectomy. This has been used as a model of osteopenia in the mouse,40 rat,41,42 rabbit, dog,43 sheep,44 and non-human primate.36 Typically, females undergo ovariectomy (OVX) in an attempt to mimic postmenopausal osteoporosis; however, orchidectomy in males also effectively induces bone loss. In most mammals examined, this results in a decrease in bone mass characterized by an overresorption of bone. In general, an increase in OCL activity is accompanied by an increase in OB activity that does not keep pace with the resorption. OVX has been used to test the efficacy of antiresorptive agents, such as bisphosphonates in these varying models. As well, OVX has been used to induce remodeling changes as a test of phenotype in a variety of GEM that did not otherwise show bone phenotypes. For instance, osteopontin-null mice do not have a bone defect unless challenged by OVX.35

OVX has varying bone effects that are dependent on the species selected and time points examined; thus, validation of bone loss in any chosen model, relative to established parameters of bone loss, is an essential consideration. Rats most frequently have been used as a small-animal model of osteoporosis, and the response of growing rats to osteoporosis has been extremely well characterized.41 In the rat model, an increase in serum markers of resorption is evident within the first week after OVX, and bone loss is evident within 2 weeks. It is interesting to note that OVX in the dog is not a particularly reliable inducer of bone loss but has been used with success in the primate.36 Although previous investigators have expressed concern over the reliability of primate OVX as an inducer of bone loss, changes in bone mass density, bone strength, and dynamic parameters have been demonstrated in a large number of published and unpublished studies. As well, a recent study by Stroup et al.46 showed that inhibition of gonadotropin-releasing hormone could mimic postestrogen bone loss in non-human primates.

There are several other models of induced bone loss in addition to gonadectomy. Bone loss can be induced by mechanical unloading (which is covered in the next section of this chapter, “Models of Mechanical Loading and Unloading”) or can be secondary to the systemic administration of a number of compounds. Long-term administration of PTH leads to a loss of bone in the rat.47 Interestingly, this contrasts with the case of intermittent PTH administration, which has been shown to increase endosteal bone mass.48 The administration of RANKL systemically enhances OCL formation and bone loss.49 Corticosteroid, cyclosporin-A, and calcium-restricted diets lead to bone loss in the rat.50,51,52,53

A surprising number of GEM show decreased bone mass, and representative models are outlined in Table 10.3. As well, the reader is referred to reviews that highlight transgenic and knockout mice that are shown to have osteopenic bone phenotypes.21,35,54 It is interesting to note that the affected genes cannot be classified into a single functional family. For instance, mice deficient in osteonectin (an ECM protein), FGF2 (a growth factor), and LRP5 (a lipoprotein cell receptor) all have a reduction in bone mass secondary to a decrease in the number of osteoprogenitors. Interestingly, most of the other GEM models have decreased bone mass, not because of OB insufficiency but because of greater OCL activity.

A special comment should be made regarding both the SAMP6 mouse model and low bone mass inbred strains of mice. SAMP6 is a spontaneous mutation that results in an age-associated decrease in bone.55 Low bone mass, C57/BL6, as opposed to high bone mass, C3H/HeJ, mice have been studied in an attempt to determine genetic factors that are involved in regulating bone mass.56
### Table 10.3 Murine Osteopenia Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model Type</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAMP6</td>
<td>Spontaneous</td>
<td>Low-turnover osteopenia; both decreased OB and OCLs with age</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LRP5</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Decreased OB proliferation in this knockout for a putative wnt cofactor</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatase</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Enzyme required for estrogen production; decreased bone in females</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estrogen receptor alpha and beta (double knockout)</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Low turnover osteopenia; gender-specific effects; decreased OB function</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteoprotegerin</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Greater OCL formation in these mice lacking a soluble inhibitor of RANKL binding</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c-Abl</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Defect in OB maturity; reduced mineral apposition; OCL normal</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRS-1</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Impaired OB proliferation, differentiation, and OCL support; IRS-1 mediates IGF-1 signaling</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biglycan</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Decreased bone formation due to decreased OB precursors; ECM protein</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteonectin</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Decreased OB precursors; ECM protein</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Klotho</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Low turnover; decreased OB and OCL</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MT-MMP</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Multiple connective tissue phenotypes in mice deficient in a required collagenolytic protein</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eNOS</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Decreased bone formation; no anabolic response to OVX</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FGF2</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Decrease in osteoprogenitor number leads to a decrease in bone mass</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGF-1</td>
<td>Targeted disruption</td>
<td>Reduced mouse size and decreased cortical thickness, but increased trabecular bone volume</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta1 integrin dominant negative</td>
<td>Transgene driven by osteocalcin promoter</td>
<td>Impaired adhesion of OBs to bone</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cbfa1</td>
<td>Transgene driven by collagen I promoter</td>
<td>Thinned cortical bone with increased endosteal compartment size; decreased trabecular bone volume; both OB and OCL defects present</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSV-thymidine kinase</td>
<td>Transgene driven by osteocalcin promoter</td>
<td>Gancyclovir administration ablates OBs in osteocalcin-TK expressing mice; OCLs are maintained</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAP</td>
<td>Transgene</td>
<td>Decreased trabecular bone</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGF-beta2</td>
<td>Transgene driven by osteocalcin promoter</td>
<td>Progressive bone turnover</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### OI (Osteogenesis Imperfecta) Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model Type</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mov13</td>
<td>Retroviral insertion in col1a1 first intron</td>
<td>Mimics human type I OI; decreased collagen transcription from mutated allele</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oim/oim</td>
<td>Spontaneous</td>
<td>No alpha2 chain of type I collagen; collagen forms as homotrimers</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fro/fro</td>
<td>Spontaneous</td>
<td>90% perinatal lethality similar to human OI type II subgroup A; 10% survive and are similar to human OI type III</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gly to Cys mutation in Col1A1 transgene</td>
<td>Transgene</td>
<td>Similar to OI type II</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gly to Cys mutation in Col1A1 minitransgene</td>
<td>Transgene</td>
<td>Disrupts trimer formation at the level of procollagen association; procollagen suicide; severe, lethal OI in high-expressing lines</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brtl1V</td>
<td>Cre/lox targeted substitution</td>
<td>Gly(349) → Cys mutation mimicking human type IV OI</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** ECM, extracellular matrix; MSC, marrow stromal cell; OB, osteoblasts; OCL, osteoclast; IGF, insulin-like growth factor, RANKL, RANK ligand; TRAP, tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase.
These low bone mass inbred strains show a reduction in circulating levels of IGF-1 and a decrease in OB progenitors. Any of the murine models would allow an investigator to study a variety of bone mass effectors, rather than the traditional OVX model, which mimics estrogen deficiency. This is an important distinction because the etiology of osteoporosis is multifactorial and not due to androgen loss exclusively.

A final consideration in discussing osteopenia is the human disease condition, osteogenesis imperfecta (OI). OI is an autosomal-dominant disorder characterized by a decreased bone mass resulting in fracture with minimal trauma due to a decrease in matrix quantity, quality, or both. Affected patients often have blue sclera, hearing loss, and associated dental abnormalities. OI typically results from a single base mutation in the α1 chain of type I collagen that results in a glycine amino acid substitution. The abnormally produced protein results in dominant-negative inhibition of the normal gene product produced from the other allele. Less severe cases of OI actually result from a stop codon in the procollagen alpha 1 gene and are the result of haploinsufficiency. Several murine models of OI have been identified and are listed in Table 10.3 (reviewed by Kuivaniemi et al.).\(^58\) Definitively, Forlino et al.\(^59\) introduced a germ-line mutation that specifically mimics a human mutation (BrtlIV). The targeted mutation was generated using Cre/LoxP. However, this is a fairly new model, and the other models of OI have been more extensively characterized. In fact, the oim/oim mouse and the mouse developed by Khillan et al.\(^186\) have been used in studies of OI treatment using cell replacement\(^60\) and gene therapy.\(^61\)

**Models of Mechanical Unloading and Loading**

Force plays a crucial role in normal bone metabolism. Alterations in both formation and resorption occur in response to applied loads and are dependent upon the magnitude, type, and location of the load. *In vitro* systems with bone cells stretched or subjected to fluid flow have provided valuable information regarding the mechanical-cellular response at the molecular level. However, whole-animal studies are necessary for investigating the complex interplay between mechanical force, endocrine function, age, gender, body weight, diet, baseline activity level, and possible pharmacological treatments. Experimental changes in force can be characterized as mechanical unloading or loading of the skeleton.

**Unloading Models**

Skeletal unloading occurs as a result of microgravity during space flight or as a result of immobilization, suspension, or paralysis. Models of microgravity include experimental rats that have been on numerous space missions for later study of bone structure and architecture (Table 10.4). Efforts to develop a ground-based model of microgravity led to the development of the rat hind-limb suspension (HLS) models (Table 10.4). In the HLS models, the back or tail is suspended from a pulley, leaving the animal’s head in a 30° downward tilt with the hind limbs mobile but bearing no weight.\(^62,63\) Studies reviewing HLS models using back suspension or tail suspension showed that the back suspension model was more stressful to the animal and resulted in poor weight gain and changes in bone mass that were unrelated to limb suspension.\(^64\) Tail suspension models are therefore more widely used and have been adapted for use in mice.

Animal models of immobilization have been studied to determine the effects of disuse on bone metabolism (Table 10.4). Methods of partial body immobilization include confinement in a small cage, casting or limb taping, bed rest, lower-body positive pressure, and water immersion (for review, see Morey-Holton and Wronski\(^65\)). Paralysis through nerve or spinal cord transection leads to denervation and total immobility. The effects of denervation are not completely understood, and a denervated limb may differ from a limb that has been mechanically immobilized. This factor must be taken into account when comparing study results. Total-body immobilization has been described using a body cast, body mold, or water immersion.
Table 10.4  Limb Immobilization Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Experimental System</th>
<th>Time Span</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Space Flight</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (male)</td>
<td>6–7 weeks</td>
<td>Vivarium: sham vs. adrenalectomy (ADX)</td>
<td>17-d space flight</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Flight chamber/normal gravity: sham vs. ADX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Flight: sham vs. ADX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>2–3 mo</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>18.5–19.5 d space flight</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Flight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nerve Transection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (male)</td>
<td>200 g</td>
<td>Sham-operated control</td>
<td>30 h–42 d</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unilateral tenotomy at knee joint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unilateral sciatic neurectomy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat (male)</td>
<td>200 g</td>
<td>Series of three experiments to determine whether immobilization acts directly on bone</td>
<td>3–7 weeks</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by altering load or systemically; tibial nerve transection to immobilize, demineralized bone implants placed subcutaneously</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Casting/ Taping</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canine, mongrel</td>
<td>1–2 years</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>16–48 weeks</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immobilized with bandage for 16 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immobilized for 16 weeks, then mobile for 16 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>then treadmill for 16 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (female)</td>
<td>9 mo, 310 g</td>
<td>Control at T = 0</td>
<td>2–26 weeks</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Age-matched control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>One-leg immobilization, leg taped to abdomen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primate (Macaca mulatto, male)</td>
<td>Juvenile</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immobilization in body cast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Internal Fixation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canine, Labrador</td>
<td>10 mo, 20 kg</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>12 weeks</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Internal immobilization: left knee, extra-articular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hind-Limb Suspension (HLS)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Adult, both sexes</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Fisher (female)</td>
<td>6 mo</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>2–4 weeks</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HLS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Confinement</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primate (Macaca nemestrina)</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>10 weeks–7 mo</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Semirecumbent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, kangaroo versus white (male and female)</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>Pretreatment control, kangaroo vs. white</td>
<td>6 weeks</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Posttreatment control, kangaroo vs. white</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Extreme confinement, kangaroo vs. white</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Confinement, kangaroo vs. white</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Exercised</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Kangaroo rat (*Dipodomys ordii*) is a bipedal rodent.
Loading Models

Skeletal-loading experiments have attempted to characterize changes in bone structure and bone metabolism during application of mechanical force. Information in this area has clinical relevance in osteoporosis research and in the prevention of bone loss that occurs with immobilization, paralysis, space flight, menopause, and extreme physical activity. Numerous animal models have been described with force applied using exercise (Table 10.5) or exogenous devices (Table 10.6).

Exercise models have attempted to reproduce human activities, including running, swimming, high-impact training such as jumping, and resistance exercise through training the animal to squat or forcing the animal to eat and drink while standing on its hind limbs. Experimental results vary, depending on animal species, age, hormone status, and exercise regimen, as reviewed in Table 10.5. Regimens are designed to be voluntary or forced, high-impact or low-impact, aerobic or resistance-type training. Exercise may occur during a single daily session or may be divided into shorter sessions throughout the day. The duration of training may be days or several weeks, and a period of increasing activity is often included to gradually teach the animal to perform the desired task. Given the variability of study designs, comparison of any two studies may be difficult. An experimental protocol with carefully planned controls and well-defined outcome measures must be clearly established.

Swimming provides forced activity with minimal impact. Buoyancy counteracts the force of gravity, and therefore muscle contraction exerts the dominant mechanical influence on bone. A swim tank should be sufficiently deep to prevent the animal from balancing on its tail. Water temperature must be carefully controlled because of potential impact on animal behavior.

Running may be voluntary or forced. Voluntary running occurs through placement of a running wheel in the cage. Voluntary running is quantified using video monitoring or a wheel from which data can be recorded. Forced running is performed with a motorized treadmill set to a particular speed (in meters per second) and incline (in degrees). Studies include a brief training period, and the speed and daily duration of exercise are gradually increased.

Jump training usually begins by placing animals in a specially designed box that delivers an electrical stimulus, forcing the animal to jump to avoid an unpleasant sensation. With time, the animal learns to jump when placed in the box. The height that the animal must jump to grab the side of the box gradually increases, allowing larger jump distances. A second type of jump training involves dropping the animal from a specified height to achieve greater impact on landing. Judex and Zernicke described a rooster model in which the animals were dropped from 50 to 60 cm with an in vivo strain gauge in place to quantify the mechanical environment.66

Resistance training requires teaching the animal to perform a task that includes the desired posture changes. A squatting-type exercise was used in studies by Westerlind et al.67 to determine the effect of resistance training on tibial cortical and cancellous bone. Animals were conditioned to press a high lever on one side of the cage and a lower lever on the opposite side of the cage. This squatting exercise was then performed, with the animal wearing a weight vest to increase resistance. Notomi and colleagues68 modified climbing exercises initially developed to study muscle.69,70 In this model, rats must climb a mesh tower to obtain food and water, making this a voluntary-resistance exercise model.

Bipedal stance leads to a shift in weight distribution and increased loading of the hind limbs in quadripedal animals. A raised-cage model was used in studies by Yao et al.71 and Chen et al.72 to evaluate the effect of bipedal stance on bone structure. The raised cage includes placement of the food supply at a specified height to force the animal to feed while standing on its hind limbs. Food must be within reach of the animal, or else weight loss begins to occur.

A number of devices that apply a controlled load to bone have been developed (Table 10.6). Noninvasive loading techniques include the rat tibia model described by C.H. Turner and colleagues.73 The loading device applies four-point bending to the tibia in a medial-lateral direction, causing compression on the lateral surface and tension on the anteromedial surface. This model
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Exercise Regimen</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (female)</td>
<td>12–24 mo</td>
<td>OVX + normal cage activity or swim</td>
<td>Swim 60 min/d, 5 d/week; 12-week study</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Wistar-Kyoto (WKY), stroke-prone hypertensive (SHRSP)</td>
<td>7 wks</td>
<td>Sedentary control WKY Sedentary control SHRSP Swim-trained SHRSP</td>
<td>Swim 60 min/d, 5 d/week; 12-week study</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sabra (female)</td>
<td>5 or 12 wks</td>
<td>Control or swim ± weight</td>
<td>Swim 1 h/d, 5 d/week; 12- to 20-week study</td>
<td>201, 202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse, DDY strain (female)</td>
<td>7 wks</td>
<td>Sham and OVX ± genistein ± exercise</td>
<td>Treadmill: 12 m/min, 30 min/d, 7 d/week (10° slope); 4-week study</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (female)</td>
<td>4 wks</td>
<td>8 or 12 weeks of exercise 8 or 12 weeks as sedentary control</td>
<td>Treadmill: 24 m/min, 60 min/d, 5 d/week; 8- and 12-week studies</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (female)</td>
<td>4 wks</td>
<td>Same as above + 8 weeks of exercise, then 4 weeks sedentary</td>
<td>Treadmill: 24 m/min, 60 min/d; 5 d/week (5° slope); 8- to 12-week study</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Wistar (female)</td>
<td>5 mo</td>
<td>1. Exercise 30 min/d 2. Exercise ± 50 g of weight</td>
<td>Treadmill: 20 m/min (duration based on group); 5 d/week; 17-week study</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Wistar (female)</td>
<td>3 mo</td>
<td>Similar to previous, run 15 min/d + 40 g of weight</td>
<td>Treadmill: 16.6 m/min, 15 min/d; 5 d/week (5° slope); 6-week study</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Wistar (female)</td>
<td>15 wks</td>
<td>Sham and OVX mice ± etidronate ± exercise</td>
<td>Treadmill: 30 m/min, 60 min/d; 5 d/week; 10-week study</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Wistar (female)</td>
<td>15 wks, 252 g</td>
<td>Sham and OVX, ± Ca-supplemented diet, ± exercise</td>
<td>Treadmill: 1080 m/d at 8 /min; 15 min exercise, 30-min rest; 5 d/week; 12-week study</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Wistar diabetic (female)</td>
<td>13 wks</td>
<td>Running + unilateral sciatic neurectomy</td>
<td>Treadmill: 60 m/min, 60 min/d; 5 d/week; 8-week study</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooster</td>
<td>9 wks</td>
<td>Normal activity High-speed running</td>
<td>Treadmill: 1.84 m/sec, 5 min, three times per day; 6 d/week; 8-week study</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Running — Voluntary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Exercise Regimen</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rat, virgin F344 (female)</td>
<td>14 mo</td>
<td>Baseline control Solvent vehicle Growth hormone Voluntary exercise Growth hormone + exercise Food restricted</td>
<td>18-week study Running wheel: 35-cm diameter attached to plastic cage, running activity noninvasively monitored 24 h/d, silent magnetic counter attached to wheel</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, F344 (female)</td>
<td>13 mo</td>
<td>Similar study to previous (same research group)</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Jump Training

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Exercise Regimen</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rooster, White Leghorn</td>
<td>12 wks</td>
<td>Normal activity or jump</td>
<td>Jumps: 200 drop-jumps per d (2.5 min/d); 5 d/week (dropped from 50–60 cm); 3-week study</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, F344 (female)</td>
<td>4 wks</td>
<td>Control, and 5, 10, 20, 40, 100 jumps per day</td>
<td>Jumps: 5 d/week (height gradually increased to 40 cm); 8-week study *Trained to jump using board box with electric stimulus</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
applies relatively small loads (<40 N) to achieve desired strains (1000–3000 microstrain), and its padded design minimizes any damage to soft tissues. Criticism of the tibial-loading model included the potential effect of direct pressure on the periosteum as a stimulus for bone formation. To establish a model of in vivo loading without periosteal pressure, Torrance et al. developed a device for axial loading of the rat ulna. The loading device consists of two padded brass cups that hold the olecranon proximally and the flexed carpus distally, avoiding periosteal pressure in the bone areas of interest. Gross and colleagues have recently developed a method of noninvasive loading of the mouse tibia. A loading device applies cantilever-like bending by fixing the proximal tibia and applying loads to the distal tibia just proximal to the ankle. Bending occurs with the medial surface in compression and the lateral surface in tension. A murine-loading device is particularly valuable given its potential use with GEM. These bending models are primarily used to evaluate the effect of load on cortical bone dynamics.

### Table 10.5 (continued) Exercise Studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Exercise Regimen</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (male)</td>
<td>10 wks</td>
<td>Control, sedentary, and resistance groups evaluated at 4 weeks and 8 weeks</td>
<td>Water placed at top of mesh tower; tower gradually raised from 20 cm to 200 cm; rat voluntarily climbed tower to reach water; 4-week study</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (female)</td>
<td>21 d; 28 wks</td>
<td>Control Young/exercise + tail weight Mature/exercise + tail weight</td>
<td>Custom-designed racks, 41 cm high with vertical rungs 1.46 cm or 0.9 cm apart, platform at top, animals trained to climb, 3x/week; 10-week study</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Resistance Training

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Exercise Regimen</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (male)</td>
<td>6 mo</td>
<td>Sham and OVX ± raised cage</td>
<td>Raised cage: food gradually raised to 35.5 cm, bipedal stance necessary for feeding in RC group; 12-week study</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (female)</td>
<td>6 mo</td>
<td>Sham and OVX ± raised cage ± estrogen</td>
<td>Similar to previous; 4–8 week study</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Bipedal Stance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Exercise Regimen</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (male)</td>
<td>13 wks</td>
<td>Sedentary control Low-intensity exercise control Low intensity exercise + sudden impact load</td>
<td>Exercise: walking mill at 10 cm/sec, 20 min/d; 5 d/week (50 impacts per session, gradually increased to 200 impacts; 9-week study</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Sudden Impact Loading

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Exercise Regimen</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (male)</td>
<td>10 wks</td>
<td>Control, sedentary, and resistance groups evaluated at 4 weeks and 8 weeks</td>
<td>Water placed at top of mesh tower; tower gradually raised from 20 cm to 200 cm; rat voluntarily climbed tower to reach water; 4-week study</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (female)</td>
<td>21 d; 28 wks</td>
<td>Control Young/exercise + tail weight Mature/exercise + tail weight</td>
<td>Custom-designed racks, 41 cm high with vertical rungs 1.46 cm or 0.9 cm apart, platform at top, animals trained to climb, 3x/week; 10-week study</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Note: OVX, ovariectomy.

### Table 10.6 Loading Devices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Structure Loaded</th>
<th>Invasive/Noninvasive</th>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Tibia</td>
<td>Noninvasive</td>
<td>Cantilever bending</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pig</td>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Invasive</td>
<td>Ulnar osteotomy</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Tail vertebra</td>
<td>Percutaneous pin</td>
<td>Vertebral compression</td>
<td>76, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, sheep</td>
<td>Whole body</td>
<td>Noninvasive</td>
<td>Vibration</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Tibia</td>
<td>Noninvasive</td>
<td>Four-point bending</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooster</td>
<td>Ulna</td>
<td>Invasive</td>
<td>Axial loading</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep</td>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Invasive</td>
<td>Removal of ulna</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Ulna</td>
<td>Invasive</td>
<td>Axial loading</td>
<td>79, 219</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chambers et al.\textsuperscript{76} and Chow et al.\textsuperscript{77} have developed a more invasive rat vertebral-loading model. Stainless steel pins are percutaneously inserted in the seventh and ninth tail vertebrae. The pins are attached to an external loading device that applies dynamic compression to the eighth vertebra. The eighth vertebra is not surgically altered, and therefore the effects of mechanical loading can be evaluated. This compression model is different from the previously mentioned bending models. The vertebral body has a greater amount of trabecular bone, and the load is received at the epiphysis rather than mid-diaphysis. It can be used to evaluate the effects of load on trabecular bone remodeling.

An ulnar axial-loading model has been used in studies involving the rooster\textsuperscript{78} and the turkey.\textsuperscript{79} The procedures require parallel transverse submetaphyseal osteotomies. Ends of the bone shaft are covered with stainless steel caps and pierced with parallel stainless steel pins. The pins are held with an external fixator that is removed during the loading procedure. This avian model results in a functionally isolated, externally loadable ulna preparation. The advantage of an avian model is the potential for haversian remodeling. Relative to developing haversian remodeling systems in mammals, these avian models are less expensive, and there are reduced animal welfare issues.

Whole-body vibration has been described for both small and large animals using an oscillating plate or other device that generates low-magnitude, high-frequency mechanical stimuli.\textsuperscript{80} Although further study is required, this involuntary, minimal-impact stimulus has possible clinical application in the prevention and treatment of human osteoporosis in those who are unable to exercise.

Quantitative studies of functional adaptation of bone have sought to demonstrate the relationship between increases in compressive strain and bone formation. Classic experiments in this area were performed by Goodship and colleagues in 1979\textsuperscript{81} and by Lanyon and colleagues in 1982.\textsuperscript{82} Experimental design included removal of the sheep ulna, followed by a period of excess loading of the radius. New bone formation in the radius was then characterized and quantified.

The isolated effect of growth factors and mechanical loading on bone formation can be studied using \textit{in vivo} bone chamber models.\textsuperscript{83–85} A hydraulic-loading design was used in studies by Moalli et al.,\textsuperscript{86} with the bone chamber placed in the proximal tibial metaphysis of adult male canines. After 8 weeks of infiltration, the loading mechanism was activated to apply a controlled compressive load to woven trabecular bone. Advantages of bone chamber models include potential for repeated harvesting of bone infiltrating the chamber, ability to mechanically isolate the bone while growth occurs in an \textit{in vivo} system, ability to deliver growth factors to a targeted location, and survival of the animals at the end of the experiment.

\textbf{Models of Fracture Healing}

Bone fractures are a common cause of pain and disability. In general, bone has a high regenerative capacity. Although bone regeneration mimics healing of other tissues, the process is more complex. Depending on the degree of stability, a fracture site contains many different tissue types (cartilage, old bone, new bone, fibrous marrow, blood vessels, hematopoiesis, inflammatory cells). The biological processes governing this complex reparative program are poorly understood, and fracture nonunion is relatively common.

The study of fracture healing requires animal models in which fractures can be reliably reproduced from animal to animal, both within a study and from study to study. In an attempt to meet this need, numerous animal models using both open- and closed-fracture techniques have evolved (Table 10.7). Open-fracture models generally include a surgical incision and sharp osteotomy or fracture under direct visualization. An osteotomy can be performed in almost any bone in any animal species. Closed-fracture models involve targeted injury to the bone, usually a long bone, using external force. Advantages of open techniques include more exact placement of the fracture site, nearly identical fractures in all experimental animals, controlled effects on adjacent structures, and the opportunity for open operative reduction and fixation. Disadvantages of open-fracture models include disruption of the hematoma, increased infection risk, and dissection of soft tissues.
surrounding the fracture site. For models in which a sharp osteotomy is created, the smooth bone ends do not interdigitate like most physiologic fractures and therefore may affect bony healing. Thermal damage from surgical power tools may also confound experimental results. With closed-fracture techniques, advantages include lower infection risk, a simpler procedure, and no need for surgical dissection or disruption of the fracture hematoma. Disadvantages of closed-fracture models include a less uniform fracture pattern, damage or crush injury to adjacent skin and soft tissues, need for stabilization, and need for additional surgical access for operative intervention.

Selection of the appropriate fracture model is based on experimental objectives and experimental design. For studies in which hardware is to be used for fixation or tested for potential human use, larger animals with bone structure similar to that of humans must be considered. Cortical thickness and structure of the marrow cavity vary across species, making screws, plates, and intramedullary nailing impossible in some small animal models. The dog is a popular animal model for the study of fracture fixation techniques. The tubular structure and cortical thickness of long bones in rabbit and cat models have also led to their use in studies involving hardware placement. Rats are used in numerous studies involving intramedullary fixation with thin steel wires; however, rigid fixation is difficult and the bones are too small for use with plates and screws, but an external fixator can be used instead. Other animal models that have been described include chicken, pigeon, sheep, goat, horse, pig, and non-human primates (for review, see Nunamaker, 199887). Because of cost, animal size, housing requirements, and animal cooperation, these animal models are impractical and rarely used.

If the main objective is a histological or molecular study of fracture healing under experimental conditions, a large-animal model is usually not necessary. Use of small animals or rodents will allow an increase in sample size, reduce costs, and enable molecular and genetic analysis, given the availability of antibodies and genetic information for the rat and mouse. For studies of haversian remodeling in fracture healing, the dog, cat, rabbit, and avian models are more appropriate.

Several investigators have used closed-fracture models, with the simplest and most reproducible techniques used for the majority of studies (Table 10.7). Fracture production can occur through manual pressure,88 three-point bending,89 or use of guillotine-like devices. Manual techniques do not produce a uniform fracture location or pattern and as a result are infrequently used. Three-point bending devices generally do not apply a standard force and result in variable crush injury and a less reproducible fracture pattern than guillotine techniques. In recent years, the majority of closed-fracture models have used a guillotine. In 1970, Jackson and colleagues90 described a pneumatically driven guillotine used to fracture the rat femur after intramedullary wiring. The wire bridges the fracture defect and provides intramedullary fixation to minimize displacement and angulation. In a similar investigation, Greiff91 demonstrated a reproducible guillotine fracture of the rat tibia after intramedullary wiring. Bonnarens and Einhorn92 described a method of closed rat femur fracture using a weight-driven guillotine ramming system. An intramedullary Kirchner wire was placed percutaneously before fracture. This technique was modified in 1994 by An and colleagues93 to include the rat tibia instead of the femur. The subcutaneous location of the tibia with minimal overlying soft tissue allowed easier placement in the fracture device and creation of a nondisplaced transverse midshaft tibia fracture. Closed-fracture models in the mouse provide a smaller amount of fracture tissue but have the advantage of application using transgenic mouse strains. Hiltunen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Bone</th>
<th>Fracture Technique</th>
<th>Fixation</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Tibia</td>
<td>Guillotine</td>
<td>Intramedullary wire</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Tibia</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>88, 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Femur</td>
<td>Three-point bending</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Femur</td>
<td>Pneumatically driven guillotine</td>
<td>Intramedullary wire</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Tibia</td>
<td>Guillotine</td>
<td>Intramedullary wire</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Femur, tibia</td>
<td>Weight-driven guillotine</td>
<td>Intramedullary wire</td>
<td>92, 93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and colleagues described a mouse model of intramedullary wiring and guillotine fracture of the tibia. This model has been used with alpha-1 integrin knockout mice to demonstrate that alpha-1 integrins are required for progenitor cell proliferation after fracture.

**Distraction Osteogenesis**

Since its initial description by Ilizarov, distraction osteogenesis (DO) has become an important research topic. Clinically, DO is used for bone lengthening and for closure of segmental bony defects. Animal models include studies in dogs, sheep, goats, rats, and mice (Table 10.8). DO has been applied to long bones as well as bones of the craniofacial skeleton in humans and animals. Although hardware placement is more challenging in mouse models, Isefuku and colleagues described a murine model of DO using a ring fixator and tibial osteotomy. This unique model of DO will provide valuable information when applied to GEM models.

**Special Considerations**

Losses and gains of bone mass, as well as healing responses, can be visualized in whole bone, either *ex vivo* or *in vivo*, using a variety of nondestructive methods. Radiography and microradiography permit the two-dimensional visualization of the skeleton using relatively inexpensive, easy-to-operate equipment. Dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA) is used to determine quantitative changes in bone density in two dimensions. DEXA differs from traditional radiographs in that bone is differentiated from soft tissue based on the x-ray penetration from two different radiation sources, a high-energy and a low-energy source. In this manner, an image is generated that excludes soft tissue, and the content of bone in two dimensions is analyzed digitally. Computerized tomography (CT) is arguably the most sensitive method to evaluate alterations in bone geometry and loss and gains. Specifically, microcomputerized tomography (microCT) can be used at less than 10-µm resolution to digitally reconstruct a scanned bone in three dimensions. Unfortunately, because of the extremely high radiation dose, high-resolution CT can only be used *ex vivo*. As well, high-resolution micro-CT devices are extremely expensive and require extensive training to operate. A lower resolution CT instrument referred to as peripheral quantitative CT (pQCT) can be used at ~100-µm resolution to examine longitudinal changes in bone geometry. In addition to DEXA, pQCT is used in humans for the evaluation of osteoporosis. The choice of imaging modality is

---

**Table 10.8 Distraction Osteogenesis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Age Indicator</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Regimen</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Canine, mongrel</td>
<td>5 mo</td>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>10-d latency; 1 mm/d, 20 d</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goat, Spanish-cross (M)</td>
<td>Immature, 9–10 mo</td>
<td>Tibia</td>
<td>5-d latency; automatic distracter; 0.75 mm/d total, divided over 1 to 720 times</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse, MF1 (M)</td>
<td>Adult, 30–40 g</td>
<td>Tibia</td>
<td>7-d latency; 0.25 mm, twice per day, for 10 d</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M)</td>
<td>400- to 500-g breeder</td>
<td>Femur</td>
<td>3-d latency; 0.5 mm/d, 4 d; weight bearing alters the expression of collagen types I and II, BMP2/4, and osteocalcin</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley (M)</td>
<td>1 yr; 500 g</td>
<td>Femur (bilateral)</td>
<td>6-d latency; 0.5 mm/d, 12 d OR 1.5 mm/d, 4 d — 6 mm total</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley</td>
<td>4–24 mo, 350–700 g</td>
<td>Tibia</td>
<td>1-d latency; 0.2 mm, twice per day, for 14 or 20 d; 5.6- or 8-mm gap</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, Sprague-Dawley</td>
<td>Adult, 350–400 g</td>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>Variable latency, rate, rhythm; 5-mm total distance</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep, Wethers</td>
<td>Growing</td>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>Variable latency; 0.5 mm, twice per day, 20 d</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
dependent on the size of the animal and the time course, as well as the desired resolution. The two methods most commonly used for quantitative assessment are DEXA and micro-CT. If an investigator is primarily interested in changes in bone density over time, without examining changes in geometry, then DEXA is probably appropriate. However, if an investigator is most interested in single-time-point, high-resolution comparisons, then micro-CT is the instrument of choice.

Determining changes in bone structure, geometry, and density is not sufficient to understand the \textit{in vivo} function of the bone. In most cases, a study of geometry should be accompanied by a determination of mechanical function. Bone can be loaded under compression, tension, or torsion. Each loading regimen can be used to generate a stress–strain curve that provides different characteristics about the mechanical function of bone.

Two additional techniques that provide dynamic data include histomorphometry of undecalcified bone and serum- and urine-based assays for systemic factors. Both of these assay types provide a greater degree of detail concerning cellular functionality than do the static measurements previously discussed. Dynamic histomorphometry is the gold standard for evaluating bone formation and was developed in the 1960s. Serum- and urine-based bioassays can be used to demonstrate both bone resorption and formation (bone turnover) over a time course; however, these assays generally lack a high degree of sensitivity. In general, these assays are based on the liberation of specific collagen degradation products, or OCL enzymes (i.e., TRAP), to measure bone resorption; or on collagen fragments that are generated during collagen maturation (amino propeptide) or osteocalcin, which are measured to determine bone formation.

\section*{CARTILAGE}

\subsection*{Overview}

There are three types of cartilage — hyaline, fibrous, and elastic. Herein, we focus on abnormalities associated with hyaline cartilage because of its importance in the development of bone and in the function of joints. Hyaline cartilage is morphologically amorphous, relatively acellular, and contains abundant extracellular matrix that is composed of type II, rather than type I, collagen, as well as secondary collagens such as IX, X, and XI. Cartilage also contains a large amount of negatively charged polysulfated glycosaminoglycans. The most prevalent polysulfated glycosaminoglycan is aggrecan. The matrix of cartilage entombs cartilage cells, termed \textit{chondrocytes}. Relative to bone, cartilage is avascular and typically nonmineralized. These two distinctions are essential to fully appreciate cartilage biology, pathology, healing, and repair.

Hyaline cartilage is found at two primary sites: articular surfaces and sites of endochondral ossification. On the joint surface, cartilage absorbs and distributes load to prevent damage to bone and provides a gliding surface for joint motion. Endochondral ossification is the process by which bone is formed from a cartilaginous anlage to direct growth. Condensations of cartilage undergo mineralization and then vascular invasion leading to bone formation. Growth plates represent a specialized type of endochondral ossification responsible for longitudinal bone growth.

\subsection*{Endochondral Ossification Defects}

The generation of bone occurs via two distinct processes. Intramembranous bone growth — which encompasses neoplastic, trabecular remodeling, craniofacial development, and diaphyseal growth — is not be considered in this section. Rather, endochondral ossification, a process using a cartilaginous anlage to direct growth, is the subject of this discussion.

A tight interrelationship of genes and the microenvironment governs the development of long bones. The shaping of the bony precursors during skeletal patterning occurs in undifferentiated mesenchyme. Gene expression results in intracellular signals that induce site-dependent liberation
of morphogens, such as BMP. These extracellular mediators are distributed in a gradient that directs target cells in a concentration-dependent manner.\textsuperscript{103,104} During embryonic development, cellular condensations transdifferentiate into cartilage segment and branch into rudimentary limbs. After the development of cartilage in limb rudiments, the cartilage anlage undergoes vascular invasion. Blood vessel ingrowth initiates bone formation by providing ingress for OBs, which develop from MSC. The process by which the cartilage skeleton develops into bone is not completely understood; however, the process requires two essential OB transcription factors, cbfa1 and osterix, for the induction of OB development and activity.\textsuperscript{105}

Growth plates are formed at the metaphyseal regions of the developing long bone and act as sites of longitudinal bone growth. Growth plates are highly structured cartilage condensations. At least four morphologic zones are recognized in the growth plate: (1) resting (progenitor cells), (2) proliferative, (3) hypertrophic, and (4) mineralized. Vessels invade calcified cartilage to initiate bone formation in a process similar to that observed in embryonic endochondral bone formation.

Endochondral ossification is a complex developmental process that requires the coordination of chondrocyte proliferation and hypertrophy, vascular ingrowth, chondroclastic activity, and OB development. Defects in endochondral ossification are common and represent a spectrum of human disorders referred to as osteochondrodysplasias (OC).\textsuperscript{106} These conditions are manifested by abnormal modeling of the cartilage anlage, resulting in abnormally shaped bones and shortened limb length and generally lead to dwarfism and craniofacial malformation. OC may develop because of errors in cell-to-cell or hormonal signaling, embryonic organization, gene expression, cellular replication, or ECM structure. Through detailed molecular and genetic analysis of human OC, a number of themes have been revealed regarding the genetics of abnormal skeletal development: (1) conditions are often autosomal dominant; (2) when the conditions are associated with haploinsufficiency, there are graded phenotypic alterations; (3) the principal abnormality is the appearance of an abnormal protein or the absence of a necessary protein in the cellular milieu; and (4) the quality of ECM molecules can be affected by various defects in posttranslational maturation.\textsuperscript{103,107,108}

The vast majority of identified OC have generalized defects in either chondrocyte differentiation and proliferation or in the matrix produced by the cells. It should be emphasized that growth and development of the cartilaginous skeleton is not only affected by the intricate interplay of morphogens and the ECM but also by mechanical stresses; thus, mechanical strain on the cartilage can result in significant disruption of molecular signaling.\textsuperscript{109}

Animal models are important tools in the evolution of our understanding of the specific alterations that initiate aberrant skeletal development. There are a number of acquired OC mutations observed in animals such as the dog, pig, rat, and chicken (Table 10.9). As well, numerous GEM and spontaneous mutant mice have been identified that have OC defects. Mouse models of OC are highlighted in a number of reviews.\textsuperscript{54,106,110,111} A number of these models, many of which mimic human disease, are highlighted in Table 10.9. In at least one case, “knock-in” mice have been generated that have a targeted mutation that recapitulates a mutation found in the human disease achondrodysplasia (FGFR3-targeted mutations).\textsuperscript{112} Other models have used a transgenic approach to overexpress a gene that may code for a protein that acts in a dominant-negative manner (collagen X mutants).\textsuperscript{113} Finally, a number of GEM models with targeted disruptions reveal the absolute requirement of a given gene for endochondral bone formation. In fact, a number of the null models show haploinsufficiency (Sox9).\textsuperscript{114} Caveats to the use of GEM models for studying OC include the fact that these models often show reduced life span and that potential functional overlap of genes may lead to erroneous conclusions. In addition to genetic models of OC, defects in endochondral ossification have been induced using various methods, including trauma, retinoid administration, and radiation exposure (Table 10.10).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal, Model Type</th>
<th>Model (Gene Mutation)</th>
<th>Modeled Human Condition</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Canine, spontaneous</td>
<td>Canine: miniature poodles (autosomal recessive)</td>
<td>Pseudoachondroplastic dysplasia</td>
<td>Lamellar inclusions of rough endoplasmic reticulum in physeal chondrocytes; metaphyseal flaring; decreased longitudinal growth of long bones</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chick, spontaneous</td>
<td>nanomelia (absent aggrecan)</td>
<td>Chondrodystrophy</td>
<td>Cleft palate; shortened limbs/tail/snout; die at birth; NL type II collagen levels</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>cmd/cmd (autosomal recessive; absent aggrecan)</td>
<td>Chondrodystrophy</td>
<td>Cleft palate; shortened limbs/tail/snout; die at birth</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, spontaneous</td>
<td>ocd/ocd (autosomal recessive)</td>
<td>Osteochondral dysplasia</td>
<td>Short domed head; decreased trunk length; shortened bones; decreased GAG content</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>(Link protein-null)</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Die at birth; delayed bone formation; short limbs; craniofacial abnormality; small epiphyses; flared metaphyses of long bones</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>(Perlecan-null)</td>
<td>Similar to thanatophoric dysplasia</td>
<td>Die at birth; micromelia; bowed long bones; severely disorganized physes; decreased chondrocyte proliferation; decreased collagen fibers and GAGs</td>
<td>233, 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>(MMP9-null)</td>
<td>Chondrodysplasia</td>
<td>Decreased invasion of growth plate by vasculature, compensates by maturity</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>(PTHrP-null)</td>
<td>Blomstrand chondrodysplasia</td>
<td>Decreased chondrocyte proliferation; increased differentiation; die at midgestation</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>(PTHrP/PTH receptor-null)</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Early death; accelerated differentiation; increased cortical bone; decreased trabecular bone; defective mineralization</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>sox9 ± on CD-1 (autosomal dominant)</td>
<td>Campomelic dysplasia</td>
<td>Die at birth; decreased col2a1; increased hypertrophic zone; premature mineralization; skeletal hypoplasia; bowing/ angulation of limbs</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Atf-2 ± (autosomal dominant)</td>
<td>Hypochondroplasia</td>
<td>Short limbs and spine — more severe in proximal segments; clustered chondrocytes in physes; decreased vascularity of physes</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Collagen II null (Col2a1)</td>
<td>Achondrogenesis type II</td>
<td>Dwarfism; shortened long bones; misshapen axial skeleton; soft bones; disorganized hyaline cartilage and physes</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Type X collagen</td>
<td>Schmid metaphyseal chondrodysplasia</td>
<td>Coxa vara; reduced resting zone thickness; ECM abnormalities in growth plate</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 10.9 (continued)  Representative Chondrodysplasias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal, Model Type</th>
<th>Model (Gene Mutation)</th>
<th>Modeled Human Condition</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted mutation</td>
<td>(Constitutively active FGFR3; missense mutations at K644)</td>
<td>Achondroplasia or thanatophoric dysplasia</td>
<td>Decreased long bone growth; overgrowth of cartilage in nasal septum, ribs, and trachea; bowed long bones; decreased maturation and ossification of physes</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>HKr-k-H232R (autosomal dominant; PPR constitutively active)</td>
<td>Jansen-type metaphyseal chondrodysplasia</td>
<td>Decreased differentiation of chondrocytes; delayed vascular invasion</td>
<td>241, 242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>GDF5 driven from Col II and Col IX promoters</td>
<td>Hunter-Thompson</td>
<td>Shortened limbs; joint malformations; chondrodyplasia; expanded physes; increased hypertrophic zone; decreased proliferative zone</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>FVB/NCr (increased IFN gamma)</td>
<td>Osteochondral dysplasia</td>
<td>Short, wide deformed long bones; thickened physes; irregular metaphyseal borders; spontaneous fractures; degeneration of articular cartilage</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>(Collagen X dominant interference)</td>
<td>Schmid metaphyseal chondrodysplasia</td>
<td>Dwarfism; compression of hypertrophic zone of chondrocytes</td>
<td>110, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine, spontaneous</td>
<td>(Type X collagen deficiency; missense mutation)</td>
<td>Schmid metaphyseal chondrodysplasia</td>
<td>Dwarfism; metaphyseal dysplasia of long bones</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, spontaneous</td>
<td>ocd/ocd (autosomal recessive)</td>
<td>Osteochondral dysplasia</td>
<td>Short domed head; decreased trunk length; shortened bones; decreased GAG content</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 10.10  Induced Osteochondrodysplasias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model Type</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Modeled Human Condition</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chicken</td>
<td>Chick: radiation exposure</td>
<td>Associated morbidities of radiation therapy</td>
<td>Increased intracellular calcium of chondrocytes; increased apoptosis; increased caspase-3</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea pig</td>
<td>Retinoid agonist via osmotic pump or intraperitoneal injection for 10–14 d</td>
<td>Side effect of retinoid therapy</td>
<td>Dose-dependent stunting; loss of basophilic staining of ECM; OCL invasion into physes</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine</td>
<td>Mechanical/surgical: insult to proximal tibial metaphysis</td>
<td>Physal trauma</td>
<td>Ossified bridge</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovine</td>
<td>Surgical grafting of transphyseal bony tether</td>
<td>Physal trauma</td>
<td>Premature ossification</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat</td>
<td>Mechanical/surgical: transection of foveal artery</td>
<td>Perthe’s disease</td>
<td>Necrotic bone with resorption; neovascularization and fibrogenesis of epiphysis; flattened femoral head; osseous bridging of physes</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: ECM, extracellular matrix; OCL, osteoclast.*
Arthritis

Articular cartilage lacks the highly ordered structure of growth plate cartilage, but specific zones that show differing chondrocyte morphology and matrix-staining characteristics have been identified. Chondrocytes are isolated in the matrix in aggregates referred to as chondrons. Like growth plate cartilage, specific patterns of gene expression and proteoglycan synthesis are observed in articular cartilage dependent on the morphologic zone. For instance, a protein referred to as superfluous zone protein is produced by superfluous zone chondrocytes. The importance of the various morphologic zones of articular cartilage in function and disease is virtually unknown, relative to the more well-defined roles in growth plate cartilage. The purpose of articular cartilage is to absorb and dissipate load and to provide a gliding surface for joint motion.

Arthritis is a generalized term used to refer to inflammation of a synovial joint. Although tissues other than cartilage are affected in arthritis, such as joint capsule and ligaments, the end result of chronic arthritis is cartilage damage. In arthritis, the quantity of proteoglycan and cartilage ECM decreases, leading to a loss of cartilage function. Because of the avascular nature of cartilage and the paucity of chondrocytes, damaged cartilage is unable to mount an effective healing response. Thus, early damage inevitably progresses to severe, chronic damage; loss of function; and chronic pain. There are a number of different classifications for arthritis, and models for these conditions are presented.

Osteoarthritis

Osteoarthritis (OA) is the most common arthritic condition and the second-most common cause of disability in the United States. The occurrence of OA increases exponentially with advancing age. OA occurs secondary to incidental macrotrauma, repetitive microtrauma, underlying systemic conditions, and joint deformity. In many cases, a causative factor in OA cannot be discerned; thus, the development of OA is affected by genetic factors working in concert with environmental effects. The process is thought to be modulated by autocrine and paracrine cytokines (TNF-alpha, IL-1), which induce a cascade of events leading to decreased synthesis of ECM constituents, chondrocyte apoptosis, and matrix degradation by metalloproteinases.115 Gross examination of the articular surface reveals superficial-to-deep fibrillation. These morphologic irregularities occur coincident with a loss of glycosaminoglycans (GAGs). The articular surface ulcerates, leading to eburnation and crepitus. Radiographic hallmarks of OA include cysts, bony sclerosis of the subchondral plate, osteophyte growth, and a narrowing of the joint space.

A number of animal models have been developed to investigate the pathogenesis of OA (Table 10.11; reviewed by Schwartz116 and van den Berg et al.117) Historically, rabbits, guinea pigs, and dogs have been the animals of choice, although rodents and birds have been used as well. Methods of induction include direct surgical damage, biomechanical alterations, and chemical exposure of the articular cartilage. A number of GEM models develop spontaneous OA. For instance, collagen IX knockout mice, mice lacking a single collagen II allele, and MMP13-overexpressing mice all develop degenerative arthritis with increased age. As well, certain inbred strains of mice are more prone to develop chronic OA.

A number of the models presented use direct cartilage injury to induce OA (Table 10.11). Although the pathogenesis of OA development secondary to injury is different from the primary (idiopathic) human OA, which is a generalized defect and not a focal injury, the reproducibility, predictability, and similarity of outcomes support the use of these models. Variations in cartilage permeability and Poisson’s ratio can drastically affect the mechanical behavior of cartilage. As well, alterations in the subchondral bone can impact the response of cartilage to direct trauma.118 Because these three parameters differ among species, they must be considered when using an injury model to study OA.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal, Model Type</th>
<th>Model Description</th>
<th>Time Course</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Canine (beagle), induced</td>
<td>Knee, direct injury; condylar cartilage grooves</td>
<td>10 wks</td>
<td>Increased MMP; mild osteophytes; loss of matrix proteoglycan; increased denatured collagen</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canine, induced</td>
<td>Knee, ACL transection</td>
<td>10 wks</td>
<td>Increased collagenolysis</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canine, induced</td>
<td>Knee, transarticular load</td>
<td>6 mo</td>
<td>Initially an osteochondral fracture; progression to decreased collagen thickness; fibrillation of articular cartilage and matrix</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea pig, induced</td>
<td>MCL/ACL-deficient knee</td>
<td>16–18 wks</td>
<td>Decreased cartilage PG; osteophytes; decreased link protein</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea pig, induced</td>
<td>Knee, altered biomechanics by unilateral resection of gluteal muscle, or transection of infrapatellar ligament</td>
<td>10–24 wks</td>
<td>Increased cartilage water content; narrow joint space; sclerosis of subchondral bone; osteophytes; loss of chondrocytes and matrix</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea pig, spontaneous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Knee arthritis</td>
<td>12–30 mo</td>
<td>Predilection for medial compartment of tibio-femoral joint; cartilage fibrillation</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine (B6C3F1), spontaneous</td>
<td>Ankle arthritis</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Loss of articular cartilage; erosions; osteophytes; eventual ankylosis</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine (STR/ORT), spontaneous</td>
<td>Medial compartment secondary to medial patellar displacement</td>
<td>15 mo</td>
<td>Erosion; osteophytes; subchondral bony sclerosis; loss of proteoglycan; affects 100%</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Absent type IX collagen; Col9alpha3-null; spontaneous knee arthritis</td>
<td>At least 4 mo</td>
<td>After 4 mo, develops severe noninflammatory arthritis</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>Overexpression of truncated Col9alpha1 chain from collagen II promoter; spontaneous knee arthritis</td>
<td>6 wks</td>
<td>Opaque corneas; early OA changes; mild proportionate dwarfism</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, targeted disruption</td>
<td>Collagen II-null Col2alpha1 hetero- and homozygous null mice ± voluntary running</td>
<td>15 mo</td>
<td>Inactivation of a single allele results in softer collagen with greater OA changes; exercise improves OA</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine, transgenic</td>
<td>MMP13 driven from a tetracycline-controlled collagen II promoter</td>
<td>5 mo</td>
<td>MMP13 induced after doxycycline removal; loss of cartilage; focal erosions</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit, induced</td>
<td>Knee; chemical exposure - intra-articular estradiol injection</td>
<td>9–12 wks</td>
<td>Erosion; cysts; thinning and fibrillation of cartilage</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit, induced</td>
<td>Knee; lateral meniscus and LCL deficient</td>
<td>12 wks</td>
<td>Fibrillation; ulceration; erosion of cartilage; osteophytes; chondrocyte loss</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit, induced</td>
<td>Knee; ACL, PCL, MCL, flexor digitorum longus, and meniscus deficient</td>
<td>6 mo</td>
<td>Decreased chondrocyte number; decreased proteoglycan; fibrillation of cartilage; increased degradative enzymes</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit, induced</td>
<td>Knee, repetitive impulse loads</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Subchondral bone sclerosis before cartilage changes</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit, induced</td>
<td>Knee; chemical exposure — intra-articular collagenase injection</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Degenerative cartilage; transient degeneration of synovium</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat, induced</td>
<td>Knee, partial meniscectomy with high-impact loading</td>
<td>60 d</td>
<td>Increased MMP-3; apoptosis of chondrocytes</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat (Wistar), induced</td>
<td>Knee; injury from continual strenuous running</td>
<td>6 wks</td>
<td>Dose-dependent effect of running on OA development; increased MMP-3;</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep, Induced</td>
<td>Knee; meniscus deficient; post-operative loading or unloading</td>
<td>16 wks</td>
<td>Effusions, synovial hyperplasia, erosion and fibrillation of medial compartment in active animals</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep, induced</td>
<td>Hip; denuded articular cartilage ± subchondral bone penetration</td>
<td>12 wks</td>
<td>Acute onset of destructive disease subchondral fracture; osteophytes; cysts; erosions</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rheumatoid Arthritis

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) affects 1% of the world’s population, with women having a three- to fivefold greater risk. RA is an immune-mediated symmetric polyarthritis. The disease is chronic and progressively destructive. Bony erosions, periarticular osteopenia, inflammation, and ultimately, joint disintegration are characteristic. Most RA patients have autoimmunity to type II collagen as well as polyclonal anti-Fc IgG. Early in the disease, a dense perivascular (CD4+ T-cell population) infiltrate develops as the synovium thickens and neovascularizes. The hyperproliferative synovial lining, or pannus, begins to creep over the articular surface. Nodular aggregates of polyclonal T cells direct the inflammatory process, liberating inflammatory mediators. These molecules, IL-1, TNF-alpha, and TGF-beta, elicit collagen and proteoglycan degradation, activate OCL-directed resorption of bone, and stimulate fibrogenesis.

The study of RA has progressed significantly since the inception of collagen-sensitization techniques in mice, rats, and primates. These models have been used extensively to investigate the pathogenesis of RA (Table 10.12). In the collagen-sensitization model, heterologous type II collagen is injected, and the development of autoimmunity drives the arthritic process. Collagen-induced arthritis (CIA), although differing slightly from RA, supports the biological plausibility that an autoimmune reaction to a cartilage component (specifically, type II collagen) leads to chronic, destructive polyarthritis. Similar to the case with RA, synovitis and erosions are the hallmarks of CIA. CIA can be induced across species with similar result; affected animals exhibit a chronic autoimmunity to collagen, exemplified by changes in major histocompatibility complex (MHC) and the induction of rheumatoid factor titers (anti-Fc IgG). Generally, rats are more susceptible than mice to CIA. Use of these models has been extensively reviewed; and although we have provided a few examples in Table 10.12, the reader is referred to the aforementioned articles for more detail.

Another model of RA is adjuvant-induced arthritis (AIA; Table 10.12). Animals injected with adjuvant display a classic T-cell-dependent arthritis. The AIA reaction, at a histological level, is equivalent to CIA. This reactivity often proceeds to involve an inflammatory response within various joints.

Transgenic models are particularly useful in the study of RA because of the known link between disease and class II MHC haplotypes. The HLA-DR (HLA = human leukocyte antigen) association has led to the development of mice that express human MHC. These mice have been used to determine the association between suspect alleles and RA development (Table 10.12). By studying these models, the association between genetic determinants of immunity and the appearance of disease is now well understood. In addition, these models have been useful for testing various RA treatment modalities. Current research is focused on elucidating the inciting events in RA.

Reactive Arthritis

Reactive arthritis occurs secondary to a predisposing infection — typically a gastrointestinal or genitourinary (GI or GU) bacterial infection. The arthritic event is sterile, and there is no evidence of residual infectious agent. However, polymorphonuclear leukocytes and macrophages with intracellular inclusions can be found within the synovial fluid. Reactive arthritis often develops 2 to 4 weeks after the original infection. The presentation is asymmetrical and oligoarticular, most commonly affecting the joints of the lower extremity and lumbar spine. The joint disease is usually self-limiting (3 to 12 months), but 15% of cases possess chronic or destructive features, and another 10 to 15% are relapsing. There does appear to be an immunologic link to MHC class I allele human leukocyte antigen (HLA) B27, but its significance is not fully understood.

When evaluating potential models for reactive arthritis, several factors must be considered. Not only is the pathogenesis important, but the temporal course of disease should be similar to the human clinical disease. The anatomical sites that are frequently affected should correspond across
Table 10.12  Rheumatoid Arthritis Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal, Model Type</th>
<th>Immunizing Agent</th>
<th>Disease Parameters</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Canine (Shetland sheep dog), spontaneous</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Chronic; progressive; symmetric polyarthritis</td>
<td>Pannus; synovial proliferation; lymphocyte infiltrate</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (many strains)</td>
<td>FCA injection into footpad</td>
<td>Chronic; progressive</td>
<td>RF not increased; synovial thickening and villus; formation with erosions</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (many strains), CIA</td>
<td>Native CII</td>
<td>Chronic; progressive; variable joints affected</td>
<td>AutoAb deposits on collagen fibers; high titers of anti-CII and RF</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (NZB/KN), spontaneous</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>2-month onset; chronic; progressive; fore/hindpaws affected</td>
<td>Decreased life span due to systemic immune disease (lupus-like syndrome); destructive arthritis; 75% mice affected</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (MRL/Mp-lpr/lpr), spontaneous</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>5- to 6-months onset; chronic; progressive; symmetric polyarthritis</td>
<td>Strong Ab response to murine CII; symmetric polyarthritis; mononuclear infiltrate; pannus; cartilage erosions</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (HLA-DQ8± H-2Ab0), transgenic, CIA sensitive</td>
<td>Bovine CII with booster 28 d later</td>
<td>25- to 40-d onset; chronic; progressive; fore/hindpaws affected</td>
<td>Strong Ab response to murine CII; symmetric polyarthritis; mononuclear infiltrate; pannus; cartilage erosions</td>
<td>276, 277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (HLA-DQ8+/DR4/Ab0), transgenic, CIA sensitive</td>
<td>Porcine CII with booster</td>
<td>Chronic; progressive; fore/hindpaws affected</td>
<td>Strong Ab response to murine CII; symmetric polyarthritis; mononuclear infiltrate; pannus; cartilage erosions.</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (DBA1/TCR-beta Tg), transgenic, CIA sensitive</td>
<td>Bovine CII</td>
<td>19-d onset; chronic, relapsing; progressive; fore/hindpaws affected</td>
<td>Extensive pannus; PMN and lymphocytic infiltrate; periarticular erosions, necrotic chondrocytes</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (KRN X NOD), transgenic cross of NOD and T-cell receptor, spontaneous</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>25- to 35-d onset; chronic; progressive; symmetric polyarthritis: knee, ankle, fore/hindpaws, not in hip</td>
<td>Severe erosive arthritis; hyperplastic synovium; few viable chondrocytes; lethal at 9–10 weeks</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murine (DBA/1), transgenic, spontaneous</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>TNF-alpha transgene constitutively expressed; knee, spontaneous OA</td>
<td>Severe erosive arthritis; hyperplastic synovium; few viable chondrocytes; lethal at 9–10 weeks</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primate, CIA</td>
<td>CII in Freund's complete adjuvant (FCA)</td>
<td>3–6 weeks onset; acute; transient; phalangeal joints affected</td>
<td>Spontaneous remission with minor deformities; high anti-C2 titer; high death rate</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep, CIA</td>
<td>Native bovine CII, subcutaneous injection with FCA, booster after 14 d</td>
<td>21-d onset; hock joint affected</td>
<td>Anti-CII Ab; synovial T-cells; macrophage and CD4+ T-cells infiltrate; thickened synovium</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat (many strains), AIA</td>
<td>Pristane, single intradermal injection</td>
<td>2- to 3-week onset; chronic; progressive; severity varies with haplotype; ankles and paws are the affected joints</td>
<td>Joint inflammation; pannus; T-cell infiltrate; joint erosions; relapsing; gradual deformation</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat (Wistar), AIA</td>
<td>FCA footpad injection</td>
<td>9- to 10-d onset; chronic; progressive</td>
<td>RF absent, macrophage and PMN infiltrate, synovial hyperplasia, cartilage and bone destruction</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
species, and the nature of inflammation at the discrete locations should be similar. As well, because the time frame for development of the reactive arthritis is important, a 2- to 4-week gap between primary infection with the GI/GU bacteria and the development of arthritis should be present. In recognition of the association between HLA-B27 and reactive arthritis, a number of studies have used HLA-B27 transgenic mice to study disease pathogenesis.132 Several different examples of reactive arthritis models are provided in Table 10.13.

### Septic Arthritis

Septic arthritis is caused by the entry of an infectious agent into the normal sterile environment of a diarthroidal joint space. It causes significant morbidity in both pediatric and joint-replacement populations. In pediatric patients, premature degenerative-joint disease results from a rapid consumption of articular cartilage. Once bacteria gain entry into the joint, they form microabscesses, alter chondrocyte metabolism, and generate an autoimmune response by the antigenic conversion of native articular cartilage.133

Appropriate animal models of septic arthritis should recapitulate the natural pathogenesis of the human disease. A wide variety of models have been used, and they involve either the injection of an infectious agent into the joint or the systemic administration of an agent to evaluate hematogenous spread. Several examples are highlighted in Table 10.13. These highlighted studies and others have been useful in identifying bacterial virulence factors as well as host-associated risk factors. Specifically, the use of hematogenously disseminated *Staphylococcus aureus* (LS-1) in rodents has increased our knowledge of septic arthritis secondary to staphylococcal infection. Rats, hamsters, and non-human primates have been used to study the development of arthritis secondary to *Borrelia burgdorferi* infection (Lyme disease), as listed in Table 10.13.

### Hemorrhagic Arthritis

Although high-energy trauma, osteochondral fractures, and even anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) tears provide dramatic examples of hemarthroses, hemophilia is the leading cause in humans. Eighty percent of bleeding events in hemophiliacs occur in the joints, usually the knee, ankle, and elbow.134 High intra-articular pressure results in a decreased range of motion and pain. Although the pain typically resolves with clotting factor replacement, the stiffness remains as a function of the turgid joint capsule.135 These symptoms often lead to ligamentous laxity and muscle weakness, predisposing the joint to further damage.135 Repeated or prolonged exposure to blood products leads to iron-laden macrophages and synoviocytes. Inflammation is stimulated and the synovium becomes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal, Model Type</th>
<th>Immunizing Agent</th>
<th>Disease Parameters</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rat (Sprague-Dawley, Wistar), CIA</td>
<td>Native chicken CII from xiphoid, intradermal injection; booster after 21d.</td>
<td>20-d onset; chronic; progressive; bilateral ankle, tarsus, paws affected</td>
<td>40% develop inflammatory polyarthritis; severe, complete destruction of joint with eventual ankylosis; 20% relapsing or transient variety</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat (env-pX on LTR promoter), transgenic spontaneous</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>5-week onset; chronic; progressive; fore/ hindpaws affected</td>
<td>Bilateral ankle inflammation; synovial hyperplasia; pannus; erosion of cartilage; bone destruction</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: CIA, collagen-induced arthritis; AIA, adjuvant-induced arthritis; CII, collagen type II; NOD, Non-obese diabetic; RF, rheumatoid factor; NA, not applicable.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal, Model Type</th>
<th>Model Description*</th>
<th>Disease Parameters</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reactive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamster</td>
<td><em>E. coli</em> lipopolysaccharide; subcutaneous injection for 5 to 21 d</td>
<td>3-d onset; acute transient course; 3-week persistence; recovery 1 week after stopping injections</td>
<td>Symmetric polyarthritis symptoms; ankle joint most prominent; exudative synovitis; juxta-articular periostitis</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (DBA/2 and BDF1)</td>
<td><em>Y. enterocolitica</em> intravenously; injection of 10⁹ organisms</td>
<td>3-d onset; peaks at 7 d, resolved 21 d; acute; transient course</td>
<td>Hindpaws more severely affected than forepaws; mononuclear infiltrate</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (HLA-B27, transgenic)</td>
<td>Requires exposure to pathogenic organisms and environmental antigens</td>
<td>Acute</td>
<td>Spontaneous tarsal anklylosis; enthesitis</td>
<td>132, 288, 289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat (LEW)</td>
<td>Intravenous injection of <em>Y. enterocolitica</em></td>
<td>1- to 2-week onset; acute, relapsing</td>
<td>Sterile arthritis in 70%</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat (several lines on LEW and F344)</td>
<td>Spontaneous occurrence; HLA-B27 with hB₂⁹m</td>
<td>6- to 10-week onset; acute; progressive</td>
<td>50% affected; systemic inflammatory disorder; destructive synovitis; peri-articular osteogenesis; enthesitis at vertebral endplate</td>
<td>291, 292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infectious</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamster (LSH/SsLak)</td>
<td>Hindpaw injection of 10⁶ <em>B. burgdorferi</em>; some hamsters preirradiated with doses of 100–700 rads</td>
<td>5- to 11-d onset, shorter time with higher radiation dose; transient infection, but can persist up to 50 d with higher doses of radiation</td>
<td>Acute transient synovitis; diffuse PMN infiltrate in synovium; effusion; symptoms increase with pre-irradiation</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (Swiss and Balb/C)</td>
<td>Intravenous administration of 10⁷ <em>S. aureus</em> cells (LS-1); isolated from spontaneous arthritis in NZB/W</td>
<td>3-d onset; acute; progressive</td>
<td>80–90% affected; early PMN infiltrate followed by monocytic infiltrate; increased interleukin-6 and tumor necrosis factor-alpha, severe peri-articular bone erosions</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse (C3H/He)</td>
<td>Inoculated with skin biopsy from infected human</td>
<td>Chronic</td>
<td>Severe inflammation of ankle joint; widespread spirochete dissemination</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primate (rhesus monkey)</td>
<td><em>B. burgdorferi</em> inoculation via tick vector</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Necrosis of articular cartilage; knee and elbow most consistently affected; synovial hyperplasia; mononuclear/lymphocyte infiltrate</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit (NZW)</td>
<td>Intra-articular injection of <em>S. aureus</em></td>
<td>3-week onset; acute arthritis</td>
<td>50% loss GAG and 33% loss collagen, persists for 7 weeks</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rat (LEW/N)</td>
<td>Intraperitoneal injection of <em>B. burgdorferi</em></td>
<td>Onset 14 d; chronic</td>
<td>Arthritis associated with presence of spirochetes; polyarthritis</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hemarthrosis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canine (beagle)</td>
<td>Intra-articular injection of autologous blood into the knee</td>
<td>16-d follow-up; acute arthritis</td>
<td>Decreased proteoglycan synthesis and content by 4 d (more severe in young); at 16 d PG synthesis has partially recovered (better recovery in older cartilage)</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canine (immature mongrel)</td>
<td>Popliteal artery anastomosis with knee joint</td>
<td>1–8 d; acute; progressive arthritis</td>
<td>Total destruction of articular cartilage and subchondral bone; transient arthritis in 6%</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
proliferative. Villous extension of the synovium can predispose to further injury and bleeding. Over time, the joint becomes fibrotic.

There are few reports of animal models of hemarthrosis (HA) (Table 10.13). The majority have used exogenous blood injected directly into the joint cavity. Although this does in part mimic human HA, it does not recapitulate the bleeding that occurs over time into the joint. Although there are a number of animal models that develop hemophilia, reports of hemarthrosis in those animals are lacking. Perhaps the exploitation of an animal model of hemophilia by inducing chronic bleeding into the joint would more successfully mimic human HA.

**Articular Cartilage Defects**

Articular cartilage has very low healing potential. If repair tissue does form, it usually consists of fibrous tissue, fibrocartilage, and small amounts of low-proteoglycan-content hyaline cartilage. One factor that contributes to the lack of regeneration is the avascularity of articular cartilage. When a defect is made that extends into the subchondral bone, there is a greater healing response, although the repair tissue remains abnormal. This second finding suggests that there may be an inherent defect in the ability of chondrocytes to repair. Skeletally immature individuals seem to have a greater capacity for regeneration of the joint surface, and adult chondrocytes, *in vivo* and *in vitro*, have a limited capacity for self-replication. Thus, an inability to generate sufficient new chondrocytes for repair may be an additional factor limiting healing. Investigators have proposed that if chondrocyte precursors could be obtained from extracartilaginous sources, then healing could be improved. The focus of current research on the healing of articular cartilage defects is validation of cells, matrices, and treatment regimens that may promote the engraftment, proliferation, and chondrogenic differentiation of exogenous precursor cells.

Although it would seem relatively simple to induce an injury in articular cartilage, the use of animal models to investigate defect healing presents a unique challenge. Species differences in the content of subchondral bone, the effect that subchondral bone has on overlying cartilage, the nature of chondral lesions, and biped vs. quadriped biomechanics are all confounding factors. Any of these considerations may adversely impact the use of a cartilage injury model. As well, histological, biochemical, and material properties of cartilage can vary significantly between species. Humans have thicker articular cartilage with a decreased cell density; in addition, permeability of the matrix and its Poisson’s ratio are quite different from those of other frequently used animal models. Even within the same species, different anatomical sites may exhibit distinct mechanical properties because variations in water content can translate into changes in hardness and permeability of the cartilage layer. Thus, the anatomic site of investigation must be carefully considered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal and Model Type</th>
<th>Model Description</th>
<th>Disease Parameters</th>
<th>Pathology Description</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit (NZW)</td>
<td>Autologous blood injected intra-articularly in knee</td>
<td>1–10 d</td>
<td>Decreased PG content; thickened synovium; hemosiderin-laden macrophages; mild surface fibrillation</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit (NZW)</td>
<td>Intra-articular injection of autologous blood into the ankle</td>
<td>10–28 d; acute arthritis</td>
<td>Increased joint stiffness at 10 d; hypertrophic synovium; hemosiderin-laden macrophages; darkened articular cartilage</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal, Model Type</th>
<th>Model Protocol</th>
<th>Time Course</th>
<th>Pathological Observations</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Canine (mongrel), adult, knee</td>
<td>4-mm diameter × 2-in femoral trochlea; 10-d postoperative immobilization</td>
<td>15 d</td>
<td>Unpredictable healing (partial at best); some hyaline cartilage; ± seams at margins; mostly fibrous ingrowth; some developed osseous injury</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canine, adult, knee</td>
<td>Used ceramic chisel; osteochondral fragments: 19 × 6.5 × 6-mm defects; replaced after hemostasis</td>
<td>200 d</td>
<td>Unstable fragments (33%) — fatty necrosis and fibrous invasion of marrow, all with fibrocartilage bridge; stable fragments (67%) — sclerosis of bony segment with no discernable interface</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canine, adult, knee</td>
<td>Chondral abrasion</td>
<td>6 mo</td>
<td>Repair cartilage with decreased PG, hydroxyproline, cellularity, types II, IX, XI collagen; increased types I and IV collagen</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goat, adult, knee</td>
<td>4 osteochondral defects per joint; no immobilization</td>
<td>1 yr</td>
<td>&lt;50% with complete regeneration (defect filled)</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse, 9-d-old foal, knee</td>
<td>12-mm diameter defect; femoral trochlea; subchondral infraction; limit postoperative exercise</td>
<td>4–8 mo</td>
<td>At 8 months, some bone still exposed; no synovitis; decreased synovial fluid GAGs and chondroitin</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini-pig (Goettinger), adult, knee</td>
<td>5-mm cubic defect; femoral trochlea; partial thickness</td>
<td>6 wk</td>
<td>Sporadic patches of fibrous mesenchymal cells; no chondrogenesis</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit (NZW), adult, knee</td>
<td>6-mm diameter drill, 5- to 6-mm depth into femoral trochlea; subchondral injury; immobilized 3 weeks</td>
<td>2–44 wk</td>
<td>2 weeks — fibrous/cellular clot; bony in-growth into clot; fibrocartilage at margins 6 weeks — sparse hyaline nests; progressive fibrous in-growth weeks 44 weeks — full fibrous coverage; no hyaline cartilage, subchondral sclerosis</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit (NZW), adult, knee</td>
<td>3-mm diameter; full-thickness patellar “punch” defect; subchondral bone preserved; no immobilization</td>
<td>6 wk</td>
<td>No healing evident; synovitis; “cell nests” at margins of defect; about 15% healing (located at periphery); 30% osteophyte and cartilage color change</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit (NZW), adult, knee</td>
<td>4-mm diameter; 8-mm depth cores into medial femoral condyle; subchondral infringement; no immobilization</td>
<td>12 wk</td>
<td>Degenerative changes: osteophytes, focal fibrillation; thin layer of soft repair tissue; partial coverage; no neocartilage; bone core necrotic</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbit (NZW), adult, knee</td>
<td>1-mm wide, 2-mm deep, 4- to 6-mm-long defects; custom instrumentation; femoral trochlea; partial thickness</td>
<td>48 wk</td>
<td>Sporadic patches of fibrous mesenchymal cells; no chondrogenesis</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep, knee</td>
<td>Denuded femoral trochlea</td>
<td>2 yr</td>
<td>Chondral erosion; early degenerative changes; profound resorption of subchondral bone plate; patchy resurfacing with loose fibrous or fibrocartilaginous tissue</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Despite these drawbacks, animal models represent a vital tool in the development of therapeutic options for lesions of articular cartilage. A variety of animal models of chondral injury are presented in Table 10.14 (reviewed by Hunziker). By and large, the most common animal model that has been used is the rabbit. Rabbits have been the traditional small-animal model of choice for research on articular defects; mice and rats have greater anatomic variation in articular cartilage and subchondral bone thickness (relative to humans). As well, experimental surgeries to create reliable, large-scale defects are more difficult with mice and rats because of their small size and the limited articular cartilage surface area.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

Over the past 10 years, significant progress has been made in understanding the development and biology of musculoskeletal tissues. Much of this has been derived from studies of GEM models. Targeted gene disruptions and transgensics have revealed key regulators in OCL development and function, and have validated the functional significance of known gene mutations in the development of osteogenesis imperfecta, osteopetrosis, osteochondrodysplasias, and rheumatoid arthritis. Despite these advances, appropriate GEM models for a number of skeletal abnormalities are either underdeveloped or incompletely characterized.

A thorough understanding of the complex interactions that occur during fracture healing has yet to be revealed by animal models; thus, reliable biologically based treatments to improve fracture healing have not been devised. As well, molecular mechanisms that enhance OB performance to restore bone mass in osteopenia are poorly described. This is partly governed by our inability to fully comprehend the complex process of OB development from osteoprogenitors. Although genetic elements that control osteoprogenitor number and differentiation have been explored, there is a paucity of information that seeks to fully describe the complex processes governing OB development and function. The molecular mechanisms that seek to explain a bone’s response to loading and unloading are also not well described. It is postulated that osteocytes respond to mechanical signals, and that the signals are processed and then transferred to the osteoprogenitor, but the molecules that are involved in this process have not been revealed. One hopes that with the recent development of in vivo loading and fracture models in mice, as well as of GEM models of osteopenia and osteosclerosis, novel genes controlling OB biology will be elucidated.

Although GEM models have provided key insight into the process of endochondral ossification and have revealed the significant role of molecules such as FGF receptor (FGFR), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), and matrix metalloproteinase 9 (MMP9), there is still much to be learned about the process and the role of various components. For instance, humans with a mutation in cartilage oligomeric matrix protein (COMP) have a dwarfing syndrome, pseudoachondrodysplasia (PSACH); however, mice with the COMP gene deleted have no reported phenotype. Thus, a complete understanding of the significance of the human mutation will only be revealed by a targeted mutation in the mouse gene that mimics the known human mutation. In this way, the significance of mutations in FGFR3 in human chondrodysplasia was revealed. Iwata et al. created a targeted mutation in FGFR3 that recapitulated a single amino acid shift at position 644. In a similar manner, a murin- targeted gene mutation (knockin) that mimics the mutation found in COMP may reveal crucial mechanistic information concerning PSACH.

One of the biggest problems that the musculoskeletal research community faces is developing treatment options for cartilage repair, either in chronic OA or in acute injuries. Unfortunately, animal models have provided few answers. By exploiting common models of OA and cartilage injury that have been used in the rat, rabbit, and dog for use in GEM models, novel genes (or novel gene functions) that govern cartilage healing will likely be revealed.
Although GEM models are powerful tools when used to explore gene function and disease mechanism, in many cases mice may not be the best model for many human skeletal disease conditions because of physiological differences in cartilage and bone when comparing mice and humans. In that respect, studies with larger mammals are still quite useful and often more appropriate. The development of transgenic technology for use in larger animal species will likely be beneficial for future skeletal studies. As well, traditional knockouts and constitutively overexpressing mice ignore the importance of temporal and spatial relationships in gene function. Ablating a locus early may have a dominant effect, suppressing an important gene function that is not necessary until a later time point. However, this caveat can be addressed using transgenes that are inducible or expressed in a tissue-specific manner. As well, using Cre/LoxP technology, targeted mice can be generated with a mutation (deletion, nucleotide shift, etc.) that occurs in a tissue- and temporal-specific manner.

REFERENCES


168. Li, B. et al., Mice deficient in Abl are osteoporotic and have defects in osteoblast maturation, *Nat. Genet.*, 24(3), 304, 2000.


239. Li, S.W. et al., Transgenic mice with targeted inactivation of the Col2 alpha 1 gene for collagen II develop a skeleton with membranous and periosteal bone but no endochondral bone, *Genes Dev.*, 9(22), 2821, 1995.


CHAPTER 11

Animal Models in Cancer Research

Jørgen Rygaard

CONTENTS

Introduction ....................................................................................................................................226
Origin of Experimental Cancer Research......................................................................................226
   Chemical Carcinogenesis .....................................................................................................226
   Viral and Other Carcinogens............................................................................................227
   Spontaneous Tumors ............................................................................................................227
   Oncogenes.............................................................................................................................227
Heterotransplantation Models ...........................................................................................................228
   Immunomodulation...............................................................................................................228
      X-Ray and Cytostatic Treatment......................................................................................228
      T-Cell Modulation .......................................................................................................229
      B-Cell Modulation .......................................................................................................229
   Spontaneous Immunodeficiency Models .............................................................................229
      The Athymic \textit{(nude)} Mouse ..................................................................................230
      The Athymic \textit{(nude)} Rat .........................................................................................230
      The \textit{beige} Mouse .....................................................................................................230
      The \textit{xid} Mouse .......................................................................................................230
      The SCID Mouse .........................................................................................................230
Heterotransplantation .....................................................................................................................231
   Transplantation Techniques ................................................................................................231
      Mode of Growth and Metastases ...............................................................................231
      Regional Growth Differences ....................................................................................231
      Age-Dependent Differences in Tumor Take ...............................................................232
      Tumorigenicity ..........................................................................................................232
      Monitoring Tumor Growth .......................................................................................232
Transgenic Animal Models ............................................................................................................232
Discussion and Recommendations ................................................................................................233
Acknowledgments ..........................................................................................................................233
References ......................................................................................................................................233
INTRODUCTION

Cancer is a common term for all malignant tumors. Cancers can be divided into main groups, depending on their origin. Tumors originating from the mesenchyme are called sarcomas. They comprise malignancies arising from connective tissue, muscle, endothelial and related tissues, and blood. Carcinomas are derived from epithelial cells. They contribute the main part of malignancies in humans, such as tumors of the skin, breast, lungs, and the gastrointestinal and urinary tracts. Also, malignant melanomas are usually included in this group, which poses the most serious problems in the clinic and therefore is given special emphasis in the experimental laboratory.

Basic characteristics of cancers in humans and in other vertebrates are the same. They show autonomous growth, disregarding the social order of the multicellular organism from which they arise. They invade locally, destroying neighbor cells and tissues; and most seriously, they can spread in the organism and form metastases. If left untreated, cancers will almost inevitably lead to the death of the individual that they form part of. Humans and animals alike fall victim to this. Therefore, animal models of cancer can be considered relevant tools in biomedical research. They can help us understand what causes cancers, how cancers develop, and, one hopes, how they can be treated. It should be stressed that much of our present-day knowledge has been achieved in the test tube or tissue culture flask, thanks to the fact that cell lines can be propagated in such circumstances and will respond to cancer-provoking stimuli, carcinogens, and therapeutic agents in much the same way as they do in the intact organism. One important aspect is lost, however, namely the interaction between the tumor and the host organism. This can be remedied by working with transplantable animal tumors in animals. But still, laboratory animals are animals and extrapolations have to be made from the animal model to the human situation.

This dilemma can be solved midway by using human tumor material heterotransplanted into and maintained in animals with spontaneous or induced immunodeficiencies, primarily the athymic nude mouse and rat and the severely combined immunodeficiency (SCID) mouse.

After giving a brief outline of the roots of experimental cancer research, this presentation focuses on the laboratory mouse, thereby omitting some animal models such as rat, hamster, rabbit, and dog often used in long-term carcinogenesis studies because these applications may be of more interest in toxicology.

As pointed out by Sivak, the single most cogent reason for the use of mice is the availability of a wide variety of inbred strains of markedly different properties. The use of these inbred strains, with their wide range of properties relevant to the induction of cancer, and the ability to obtain genetically known hybrid strains of mice to examine the hereditary basis for these properties, make available a unique animal resource among the small rodents that are used in carcinogenesis research.” The same arguments can be expressed in relation to tumor biology studies and experimental cancer therapy. Since the statement was made, the mouse-based models have been supplemented with transgenic mice, some of which are of major interest in cancer research.

Also, successful research is strongly dependent on ready access to relevant chemicals, which today mean well-defined monoclonal antibodies and reagents to demonstrate mediators such as cytokines, probes for in situ hybridization, etc. The range of such reagents directed against mouse cells and molecules by far outdoes what is available against the cells and molecules of other animal species, which is another pragmatic argument for focusing on the mouse in cancer research.

ORIGIN OF EXPERIMENTAL CANCER RESEARCH

Chemical Carcinogenesis

Experimental cancer research using laboratory animal models started in 1914 with the observation by Yamagiwa and Ichakawa that repeated painting of rabbits’ ears with tar would lead to
the formation of carcinomas of the skin, similar to squamous cell carcinomas in humans. Those investigators may have gotten their inspiration from the finding by Pott\(^1\) 140 years earlier that former chimney-sweeper boys who had been exposed to tar and soot during infancy would in many cases develop cancers of the scrotum, again squamous cell carcinomas. The knowledge of chemical carcinogens increased over the next few years, leading to the identification of various carcinogens, such as the polycyclic hydrocarbon compound DMBA (7,12-diimethylbenz(a)anthracene), which is still one of the most used chemical carcinogens, and showing that mice also would develop skin tumors after exposure to tar products.\(^4\) This initiated the leading role of the laboratory mouse in cancer research. Further experiments demonstrated that the efficiency of chemical carcinogens could be increased if the exposed skin was pretreated with a substance that could induce hyperplasia but that was not necessarily carcinogenic itself.\(^5\) One such promoter that is still widely used is croton oil, which contains 12-o-tetradecanoylphorbol-13-acetate (TPA). This finding led to the establishment of the so-called two-stage or initiation–promotion model.\(^6\)

**Viral and Other Carcinogens**

Today we know a range of viruses that can cause cancer \textit{in vitro} and \textit{in vivo}.\(^1,7\) They comprise both DNA and RNA viruses in many species, ranging from frog to chicken, mouse, rabbit, dog, cow, and man. Although the evidence for viral carcinogenesis in man is weak, Burkitt’s lymphoma is associated with the presence of Epstein-Barr virus, and some types of human papilloma virus are suspected of causing cancer of the uterine cervix.

Other well-known techniques for inducing cancers in laboratory animals include irradiation and hormone treatment.

**Spontaneous Tumors**

A wide range of spontaneous tumors are known to arise in laboratory animals, with the highest frequency in some inbred strains of mice,\(^8\) but also in the laboratory rat, again showing some strain difference.\(^9\) Spontaneous animal tumors metastasize with a species- and strain-dependent frequency that is generally lower than that of tumors in man. A large number of well-defined cultured cell lines has been established from spontaneous animal tumors and forms an important tool in experimental cancer research. The scope of this chapter does not allow detailed information on spontaneous and induced tumors in mouse and rat; that must be sought elsewhere.\(^8,9\)

The latest addition to the field of cancer research is the demonstration of oncogenes and techniques for producing transgenic animal models with defined genetic changes that may enhance or inhibit the development of cancer. This, combined with the recently acquired knowledge of the human genome and the mouse genome, will offer research opportunities limited only by human imagination.

Readers who are particularly interested in these aspects will find ample general information in textbooks on pathology and cancer as well as on the Internet; see recommendations at the end of this chapter.

**Oncogenes**

In the late 1970s, a prominent group of cancer-related genes, the proto-oncogenes, was discovered; and during the next decades, several members of this group were identified. Today, more than 100 such proto-oncogenes have been described. Most oncogenes were discovered in one of the following two ways: they were the transforming genes of certain viruses able to cause cancer in laboratory animal models\(^10,11\) or they were genes identified in DNA extracts from cancer cells that could be shown to transform mouse fibroblasts \textit{in vitro} into cells with certain malignant characteristics.\(^12,13\) The oncogenes were later shown to have a normal counterpart, called a proto-oncogene,
present in all nucleated normal cells. They appear over a wide span of evolution, indicating that their functions are essential for the survival of cells.

The next step was the discovery in the early 1980s that many of the proto-oncogenes are, in fact, identical, with genes coding for growth factors, such as platelet-derived growth factor and epidermal growth factor receptor. Other proto-oncogene products have been identified as membrane-bound kinases, signal transducers, or regulators of transcription. Also, genes with a growth restriction function, which may indirectly promote growth when inactivated, have been foreseen and later described. The first member of this group, the retinoblastoma gene, \( Rb \), was molecularly cloned in 1986.\(^{14} \)

Genes belonging to this group are also termed \textit{anti-oncogenes} and \textit{tumor-suppressor} genes; the latter is a somewhat misleading designation as it implies that the main role of such genes is to prevent tumors from arising. For a review, see Bishop.\(^{15} \)

The genetic mutations most frequently described in human cancers occur in the p53 tumor-suppressor gene. This mutation has been constructed in transgenic mice, which have become of great importance in cancer research, as have several other transgenics.

Again, readers wanting details about these models are referred to the library services via the Internet, where one can find frequently updated lists of publications and available models.

**HETEROTRANSPLANTATION MODELS**

In early attempts to transplant human malignant tumors into animal hosts, the anterior eye chamber of the rabbit or the brain of heterologous species\(^ {16} \) and the hamster cheek pouch\(^ {17} \) were used for implantation. Success was reasonable as regards take, but growth time was limited, and observation of the implant was difficult. Whole-body-irradiated animals\(^ {18} \) or corticosteroid-treated hosts\(^ {19} \) rendered better possibilities for implantation in places in which the fate of the implant could be monitored, but both irradiated and hormone-treated animals were affected by the treatment, which could also influence the growth of the implants. The introduction of the athymic nude mouse in the late 1960s, of the athymic nude rat, and the SCID mouse in the early 1980s, followed by the development of the SCID-hu model, has provided important animal model possibilities for cancer research.

The following discussion describes immunomodulated and spontaneously immunodeficient models and comments on their applicability in cancer research.

**Immunomodulation**

Immunomodulation is an urgent issue in experimental cancer research, in part as a tool in tumor immunologic intervention but also for the establishment of heterotransplantation models.

**X-Ray and Cytostatic Treatment**

Agents that have a general inhibitory effect in the multicellular organism will also possess immunosuppressive characteristics. X-ray irradiation is a potent proliferation inhibitor and was — and to some extent still is — widely used as an immunosuppressant. In laboratory animal models, lethal or sublethal irradiation can be combined with transplantation of bone marrow or selected lymphocyte subpopulations. In this respect, irradiated animals are similar to animals with some congenital immunodeficiencies; see below. Side effects may occur because of irradiation of tissues or organs other than the immune system.

Drugs with a wide spectrum of action, such as cytostatic drugs and corticosteroids, will affect immune responsiveness. Their action is dose dependent within certain limits. They may however, as is the case of x-irradiation, have undesirable side effects.
Therefore, more specific approaches, depending on the part of the system that one wishes to influence, can be recommended. Such procedures will be described in relation to the cellular components of the immune system.

**T-Cell Modulation**

T cells are responsible for cell-mediated immune responses and are necessary to initiate B-cell responses to thymus-dependent antigens. Because T cells mature in neonatal life in the thymus (although some extrathymic development may take place), neonatal thymectomy can delete T-cell responses, as demonstrated by Miller; foreign grafts are accepted; and immune responses to many antigens are poor, resulting in wasting and death at a young age. In the adult mouse (or other laboratory animal), T cells have spread to the whole organism. Adult thymectomy must therefore be combined with irradiation to remove mature T cells. Because the irradiation, as already mentioned, will damage not only T cells but other cells, including B cells, irradiation must be followed by the transfer of B-cell-containing bone marrow to establish B competence.

A more specific removal of T cells can be achieved by treatment with anti-lymphocyte serum or better, anti-thymocyte serum — polyclonal sera from rabbits or other species. Also, drug treatment can be used to abort T-cell responses. The most promising example of this category is cyclosporin A, which has a pronounced anti–T-cell activity and fewer side effects on other components of the immune system, although not totally free of side effects in other organs, such as the kidneys. The introduction of monoclonal antibodies in experimental and clinical work may offer an improved treatment. Using monoclonal antibodies, highly specific subsets of lymphocytes can be defined (the CD system) and isolated.

Because thymus is the organ responsible for T-cell maturation, thymic hormonal factors have been introduced under various names. Results from experimental and clinical investigations are discordant; and with a more detailed knowledge of the processes involved in maturation of T cells in the thymus, the research in this area has lost impetus but is still active. More steady results can be obtained with lymphokines (e.g., interleukins, interferon), which can now be produced in large amounts using recombinant techniques. A wide range of interleukines has been isolated and their actions identified, providing biomedical research with unique tools for both *in vitro* and *in vivo* work.

Specific T-cell potentiation in the experimental setup can be obtained with transfer of specific T cells, educated and sorted, or selected by cloning procedures. Priming with tumor cells can be used to specifically boost T-cell responses and dendritic cell action.

**B-Cell Modulation**

B-cell responses in the neonatal mouse can be suppressed totally or to a wide extent by treatment with anti-\(\mu\) immunoglobulin directed against heavy chains of IgM immunoglobulin. Potentiation of B cells follows the same general line as that of T cells: priming and lymphokine treatment.

**Spontaneous Immunodeficiency Models**

Immunodeficient laboratory animal mutants have been known for more than 30 years. Their genetically determined deficiency does not include the side effects seen in irradiated or heavily drug-treated models. They are highly susceptible to microorganisms from the environment and therefore call for optimal housing conditions. In the following, some immunodeficient mutants are described, with primary emphasis on the athymic *nude* mouse and the SCID mouse.
The Athymic (nude) Mouse

The athymic (nude) mouse has been used in biomedical research since 1968,22–24. The athymic condition is due to a recessive autosomal mutation, nude, the symbol for which is nu. On the basis of the genetics of the mutation, various breeding schemes can be set up. In proper microbiological conditions, nude females are fertile but they have difficulty in weaning their young. Nude males are generally fertile, although infections in the genital tract may cause infertility.

Breeding of nude mice can be based on the mating of heterozygous males and females, or, preferably, on the mating of homozygous males with heterozygous-haired females, which will give a 50% nude offspring in contrast to heterozygous–heterozygous matings, in which only an average of 25% are athymic.

Because of its lack of T-cell responses, the nude mouse accepts grafts of allogeneic and xenogeneic tissue, including malignant tumors. Full immunocompetence can be established with a thymus graft, and partial immunocompetence with spleen cells or selected T-cell subpopulations. The natural killer (NK) cell was first described in the nude mouse. In 1975, Kiessling et al.25 and Herberman et al.26 gave simultaneous descriptions of this cell type, which appears in various percentages in nude mice, depending on their genetic background. Much interest has focused on NK cells and their suggested anti-cancer potential. The hypothesis of immunological surveillance27 predicted that thymus-dependent cell-mediated immune responses were responsible for the constant removal of malignant cells, which were postulated to be generated continuously in the organism, in mouse as well as in man. Observations in athymic nude mice, which do not develop malignant tumors with a higher frequency than do normal mice of the same genetic background,28 strongly advocated against the immune surveillance hypothesis. Today, despite much conflicting experimental evidence, and although by definition not belonging to the immune system sensu stricte, the NK cell seems to have taken over the role of immune surveillance from the T lymphocyte.

The Athymic (nude) Rat

The athymic (nude) rat29,30 has characteristics similar to those of the nude mouse, including the ability to host human malignant tumors. Immunocompetence can be established in part or totally with thymus grafts or selected T-cell subpopulations. See also the “Discussion and Recommendations” section near the end of this chapter.

The beige Mouse

The beige mouse31 has no NK-cell activity. Double mutants of nude and beige mice can be bred, lacking both NK- and T-cell functions.

The xid Mouse

The xid mouse32 has an x-linked immunodeficiency with a partly impaired B-cell function.

The SCID Mouse

The SCID mutation33 has a severe combined immunodeficiency involving both T and B cells. A low percentage of SCID mice are leaky; that is, they have polyclonal B-cell activation, leading to the production of high levels of (nonsense) immunoglobulin. The SCID mouse accepts grafts of human malignant tumors and — most important — also grafts of normal human lymphoid cells so that a human immune system can be constructed in it (SCID-hu).34 This combination of mouse and human offers highly interesting possibilities for immunomodulatory studies and not
least for the study of specific cell-mediated immune responses against (even) autologous tumor tissue.

**HETEROTRANSPLANTATION**

Human malignant tumors transplanted into *nude* mice and later into SCID mice have been widely used in many areas of cancer research. For an early review, see Boven and Winograd\(^\text{35}\) and consult the Internet for updates. Tumors retain their human characteristics: histological and cytological morphology, karyotype, molecular structures including oncogenes,\(^\text{36}\) and the ability to express clonal evolution. These heterotransplantation models have found widespread application. During an 18-month period starting in January 2001, some 700 and 230 publications for transplants into *nude* and SCID mice, respectively, have been included in the PubMed database (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/PubMed), documenting the continued interest in these models despite the availability of highly specific transgenic models.

**Transplantation Techniques**

Since the first human malignant tumor was implanted subcutaneously in *nude* mice in 1969, the subcutaneous tissue seems to have been the most popular site for implantation,\(^\text{23}\) as based on a survey of the literature, and this seems to hold also for the limited experience in SCID mice. Tumors can be implanted s.c. (subcutaneous) as solid blocks, as needle biopsies by use of a trochar, or as cell suspensions. In all instances, a space is easily prepared, either by surgical procedures or by the pressure of the trocar or the inoculated cell suspension. The area is richly vascularized so that blood supply and lymph drainage can be easily established. The free mobility of the skin allows expansion over the growing tumor.

**Mode of Growth and Metastases**

In the *nude* mouse, tumors implanted s.c. will in nearly all cases grow locally, encapsulated in a connective tissue capsule, thus mimicking the growth mode of benign tumors in humans. Only in rare instances have metastases been observed. In the SCID mouse, tumors will be locally invasive; and a few weeks after implantation, metastases can be demonstrated in the peritoneum, spleen, lymph nodes, and lungs.\(^\text{37}\) This difference in growth pattern between the *nude* and SCID mouse is a striking feature that must be taken into consideration when choosing a heterotransplantation model. A recently identified *nude* mutant substrain on a partly BALB/cA background allows a range of human malignant tumors to metastasize with a frequency close to that of SCID mice. Early results indicate that the ability to accommodate metastases is due to a recessive gene, presently under study in our laboratory.

When looking for metastases, one must use a highly sensitive detection system because metastases in lungs or lymph nodes are usually very small. Even small metastases from tumors tagged with the lacZ gene\(^\text{38-40}\) or with the green fluorescent protein (gfp) gene\(^\text{41}\) are easily detected, as are lymph node micrometastases using contrast-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging.\(^\text{42}\)

**Regional Growth Differences**

Tumors implanted into *nude* mice show pronounced regional growth rate differences. This fact was also noticed in murine tumors grown in their syngenic hosts by Aurbach et al.\(^\text{43}\) There seems to be a significant predeliction for tumor growth in the anterior (occipital) region of the mouse trunk as opposed to the posterior (caudal) region. Anterior tumors may grow three to four times
as rapidly as posterior tumors. Also, there is a growth difference between tumors transplanted in the dorsal and in the ventral region, with ventral tumors developing more rapidly than dorsal tumors. There are no differences between the right side and left side of the mouse trunk. The reason for the difference in growth in the various regions is not known. Obviously, immunological factors cannot account for the difference. It is important to be aware of this phenomenon, particularly when comparing tumor sizes.

**Age-Dependent Differences in Tumor Take**

Tumor grafts are more readily accepted in young animals than in older animals. It has been shown that cancer cell lines were accepted significantly more often in young compared with adult animals, and the maximum tumor size in young mice was found to be twice that in adult mice. In *nude* mice, lymphoid cells with T-cell markers are found with increasing frequency with age, but it is not clear whether this phenomenon accounts for the difference in take rate between young and old. The difference should be kept in mind when working with tumor transplantation in this model.

**Tumorigenicity**

On the basis of observations of extensive materials, it is obvious that some tumor types are extremely difficult to establish in *nude* mice and also that several factors such as background strain of the mice, age of host, site of inoculation, addition of feeder cells with the implant, etc., may influence the outcome. This is of importance because tumorigenicity in *nude* mice is used as a characteristic of tumor cell lines, for instance in the American Tissue Culture Collection Catalog and also in oncogene studies. From what has been mentioned, it becomes obvious that tumorigenicity in the unadulterated *nude* mouse is not an absolute value. A more well-defined model for tumorigenesis may be needed. The SCID mouse may actually represent a better tumorigenesis model; but at the present time, evidence is still too scarce to allow final conclusions.

**Monitoring Tumor Growth**

Traditionally, the size of subcutaneously implanted tumors has been described by measurement with a slide caliper in two, or in some instances, three dimensions. There can be several objections to this. The measurement in only two dimensions (length × width) does not, of course, mathematically describe the volume of the tumor but only the two measured dimensions. By using suitable formulas, the two measurements can be transformed into an approximation of tumor volume. For discussion of this, see Boven and Winograd.35

**TRANSGENIC ANIMAL MODELS**

Mutations in the p53 tumor-suppressor gene are the most frequently observed genetic lesions in human cancers. The normal physiological role of the gene seems to be in the regulation of the cell cycle. Donehower et al.44 introduced a null mutation into the gene by homologous recombination in murine embryonic cells. Mice homozygous for the mutation appeared normal but developed a variety of neoplasms by 6 months of age. Those investigators concluded that the absence of the p53 gene predisposes to neoplastic disease and further that an oncogenic mutant form of the p53 gene is not obligatory for the genesis of many types of tumors.

Tumors have been observed already from the age of 8 weeks in these transgenic mice, and the spectrum is very wide, most tumors observed so far having been sarcomas. These mice, GenPharm® TSG-p53 transgenic mice, are commercially available and of great interest in both toxicology and cancer research. Heterozygous TSG-p53 mice are also available. They have a low spontaneous
level of tumorigenesis but a shorter latency period in carcinogenesis experiments compared with nontransgenic mice. Several types of transgenic mice of interest to cancer research have appeared, supplying cancer research with more refined tools “than dreamt of in our philosophy.”

DISCUSSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS

Is it reasonable in a presentation of animal models in cancer research to focus so relatively narrow-mindedly on heterotransplantation models? In the author’s opinion, such models represent the closest approximation to the human situation when used with due consideration. After more than 30 years in laboratory use, they have not given definitive clues to an overall understanding of cancer or to a miracle cure — nor has any other model or test system during the same period.

Since this handbook first appeared, two major events have made research in general much easier and much more complicated: the access to an overwhelming amount of information via the Internet and the mapping of the human and the murine genomes. What can an unexperienced cancer researcher do to benefit from these opportunities? The PubMed database (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/PubMed) allows searching for several parameters at the same time, giving all available references to, for instance, *nude mouse tumor transplant metastasis*. By carefully selecting, it is possible to have an update on the area in which one is interested. When it comes to laboratory animals, the databases of the Jackson Laboratory (Bar Harbor, ME)\(^6\) include the laboratory’s own data — updated weekly — and links to other databases, also including material on rats. The Jackson Laboratory also maintain the list, “Mouse Models for Cancer Research,” which by Spring 2002 included 427 different strains under headings such as “Growth Factors, Increased Tumor Incidence, Oncogenes, etc.”; a special database of transgenics; and the Mouse Genome Database, which lists some 400,000 mouse DNA sequences. Various bioinformatics tools\(^57\) are available to use these data.

The basis for experimental cancer research has never been more solid!

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The experimental work in our laboratory underlying this presentation was supported by the Danish Medical Research Council, the Danish Cancer Society, Ejnar Willumsens Mindelegat, Meta & Håkon Baggers Legat, and Simon Spies Fonden. My son, Kåre Rygaard, cand. med., dr. med., was a helpful sparring partner during the preparation of the manuscript.

REFERENCES

3. Pott, P., Chirurgical observations relative to the cataract, the polypus of the nose, the cancer of the scrotum, the different kinds of ruptures, and mortification of the toes and feet, Hawes, Clarke and Collins, London, 1775, reprinted in *Natl. Cancer Inst. Monogr.*, 10, 7, 1963.
CHAPTER 12

Animal Models in Oral Health Sciences

Björn Klinge and Jörgen Jönsson

CONTENTS

Introduction ....................................................................................................................................238
Animal Models in Dental and Maxillofacial Research.................................................................238
Oral Health and Disease Trends in Humans .................................................................................239
Developing Rat Teeth.....................................................................................................................239
Tooth Eruption ...............................................................................................................................240
Craniofacial Malformations ...........................................................................................................240
Orthodontic Tooth Movement........................................................................................................241
Bone Healing..................................................................................................................................241
    Heat-Induced Bone Injury ............................................................................................................241
    Jawbone Healing in Rabbits .......................................................................................................243
    Management of Craniotomy in Young Rabbits ........................................................................244
    Skull Bone Defects in Rats and Rabbits ....................................................................................245
    Bone Growth Chamber .............................................................................................................246
    Bone Harvest Chamber .............................................................................................................246
Gingivitis and Periodontitis ...........................................................................................................246
    Periodontal Disease in Rats .......................................................................................................248
    Periodontal Disease in the House Musk Shrew .......................................................................248
    Gingivitis and Periodontitis in the Dog .....................................................................................248
    Periodontal Research in the Ferret ............................................................................................251
Guided Tissue Regeneration ..........................................................................................................251
    The Capsule Model ....................................................................................................................251
    Dental Implants ........................................................................................................................252
    Vital Microscopy and Microcirculation .....................................................................................253
    Tissue Integration .....................................................................................................................253
    Intra-osseous Anchorage of Dental Prostheses .......................................................................254
Biocompatibility Testing of Dental Materials ................................................................................256
Dental Caries Animal Models .......................................................................................................257
Salivary Glands .............................................................................................................................258
    Experimental Autoimmune Sialadenitis in the Mouse ..........................................................258
    Salivary Gland Transplantation in Rats ....................................................................................259
    Rat Model Gene Transfer to Salivary Glands .........................................................................259
References ......................................................................................................................................259
INTRODUCTION

This review describes selected animal models used in oral health sciences (OHS).

Successful research is seldom limited to an anatomical region, like the soft and hard tissues of the mouth for OHS. Relevant models are often used to answer more general biological questions. To study bone formation with application to the maxillofacial skeleton as an example, the long bones or the calvarias are often used, and not only the jawbones. Similarly, in studying inflammation of relevance for the oral cavity, often more general models are used. This of course makes the demarcation of relevant animal models for dental and other OHS somewhat artificial. Nevertheless, for this review, we have in essence limited the inclusion criteria to literature that is classified as “models, animal and dental.” This is by no means a precise method. Relevant information and articles may well be excluded, but this review is not intended to represent a total vacuum-cleaning of the literature. Rather, we have aimed at selecting a representative width of models used. For specific questions, we suggest a thorough literature search in relevant databases.

Today the value as evidence for treatment often follows strict criteria. Randomization, an adequately large number of study subjects, use of tests and controls, blinding or independent researchers, adequate follow-up time, and taking confounders into account are often among the criteria to be evaluated. In this review these and additional criteria are not necessarily discussed. We have instead diverged from the principles of “evidence based” to include subjective advice from staff and scientists at recognized laboratory animal facilities. One reason for this is that the detailed background for selecting certain methods cannot often be found in the “materials and methods” section of the resulting scientific articles. This often-critical knowledge can be classified as being part of the important, so-called professional silent knowledge. We have therefore deliberately allowed ourselves to include small pieces of practical advice here and there, based on our own experience and on that of our respected colleagues.

ANIMAL MODELS IN DENTAL AND MAXILLOFACIAL RESEARCH

The use of animal models in OHS has increased significantly over the past 20 years. In 1972, around 370 articles were published according to our search criteria using the National Library of Medicine database PubMed. Using the same criteria for 2001, more than 1000 articles were found. The distribution of articles over the past 20 years is presented in Figure 12.1. Interestingly, the rat model was used in about one third of the publications at both time points, 20 years apart. The distribution of different animal species is presented in Figure 12.2.

Figure 12.1 Animal models in oral health sciences: number of publications in the National Library of Medicine (1972–2001).
Oral health, like general health, has obviously improved in recent decades. The percentage of young children and adolescents who have never experienced dental caries in their permanent teeth continues to increase. In the age group of 18 to 34 years, these adults have less decay and fewer fillings than ever before. The percentage of people who have lost all their teeth has declined dramatically in the past 30 years. In the period 1971 to 1974, around 45% of American adults aged 65 to 74 years were edentulous. In the period 1988 to 1994, the percent edentulous was reduced to approximately 28% in this age group.1 It is more difficult to track trends for other oral health conditions, like periodontal diseases. The majority of the adult population will have gingival inflammation of varying magnitude. About 40% of all adults above the age of 40 years will have tissue-destructive periodontal disease at single teeth. Fewer than 10% are calculated to have more generalized periodontal disease affecting most teeth and eventually leading to the loss of teeth. The genetic background of periodontal diseases has recently become more of a focus area.

Overall oral cancer rates are declining. However, certain site-specific oral cancers are on the rise. The incidence of tongue cancers among young males is climbing. The 5-year survival rate for oral cancers has remained the same for the past 25 years.

Human immunodeficiency virus–acquired immune deficiency syndrome (HIV-AIDS) and other infectious diseases having oral manifestations and other systemic diseases or conditions associated with oral pathogens are also of concern. In addition, other genetically and environmentally triggered oral diseases and disorders, such as craniofacial birth defects, are of great significance. Systemic conditions, such as diabetes, have long been known to affect oral diseases. More recently, the results from epidemiologic studies have shown an association between oral infections, especially periodontal diseases, and general health problems such as atherosclerosis, other cardiovascular diseases, stroke, chronic pulmonary disease, and additional diseases and disorders. These early findings will also require confirmation by experimental animal studies to determine whether the association between general conditions and oral diseases is actually causative in nature. In trying to understand the onset and dissemination of these diseases and in identifying and developing proper dental materials and methods to restore the damaged tissues, animal experiments are of fundamental significance.

**DEVELOPING RAT TEETH**

The rat incisor is the most commonly used model in the investigation of the development of dental hard tissues. This relates to its continuous growth that allows studying the whole life cycle
of the ameloblasts and odontoblasts in the same tooth. In contrast to the rat incisor, the rat molar has limited growth and similar orientation of the outer prism layer to the human tooth. The molar has three major cusps, each with an enamel-free area at the tip. At day 2 of age, dentin formation has started on both the mesial and distal sides of the cusps of the first molar. After a thin layer of dentin has been deposited, the ameloblasts begin enamel deposition. Amelogenesis includes several stages of cellular activity. The secretory ameloblasts start to produce enamel matrix in the occlusal region of the cusps. The enamel matrix mineralizes to some extent immediately after deposition. In the 5- to 6-day-old rat, enamel matrix formation is almost complete at the tip of the cusps, and the ameloblasts are reduced in height. At 7 to 9 days of age, the enamel has reached its final thickness except in the cervical areas. Maturation begins at the tip of the central cusp, and a secondary stage of mineralization starts, with an increase in the mineral content of the enamel, whereas matrix production continues in the cervical part of the tooth. Between these two stages, there is a transitional stage when the ameloblasts change from tall and secretory to short and engaged in enamel maturation. This transitional zone moves from the occlusal region toward the growing end of the tooth. At 12 days of age, an increase in the mineral content is seen in the enamel of all cusps. This process proceeds cervically to involve about half of the cusp height. At this stage, the tip of the central cusp of the erupting molar reaches the overlying oral epithelium. At the age of 20 d, the enamel attains a high degree of mineralization with an even pattern. The enamel is more mineralized than the dentin along the entire height of the cusps, and the maxillary first molar is fully erupted.  

**TOOTH ERUPTION**

At 8 days of age, the first maxillary molar in the rat shows early signs of root development and begins to erupt through the alveolus. The tooth does not penetrate the submucosal and epithelial tissues until day 15. This region is therefore well suited for the study of tooth eruption and actively resorbing osteoclasts. The surrounding alveolar bone is being physiologically resorbed to accommodate the movement of the teeth throughout the alveolus.

**CRANIOFACIAL MALFORMATIONS**

Orofacial clefting is the second-most common birth defect in humans and the most frequent of all birth defects affecting the craniofacial region. The use of animal model systems for developmental genetics has resulted in remarkable scientific advances. The evolutionary conservation of morphoregulatory pathways has revealed the homology of genes associated with human craniofacial malformations and their counterparts that regulate the morphogenesis of fruit flies. Extensive research and training supported by the National Institute of Dental and Craniofacial Research (the NIDCR of the National Institutes of Health) have led to the identification and characterization of more than 100 human and animal genes and to the interrelations of the products of these genes in the signal transduction pathways that regulate the development of the form and function of the craniofacial-oral-dental complex. Mutations in many of these genes cause characteristic defects in craniofacial development, as observed in human patients and in whole-animal assays such as transgenic mice. It deserves emphasizing that different mutations within a single gene can cause widely different clinical phenotypes. Hemifacial microsomia (HFM) is one such malformation complex with an extremely variable phenotype. The validity of the Hfm transgenic mouse as a model for hemifacial microsomia was presented by Cousley et al. They reported observations extending the Hfm phenotype beyond microtia and jaw asymmetry, to include structural and positional anomalies affecting the external auditory meatus, middle ear, cranial base, maxilla, and pharyngeal structures. Temporomandibular joint development and palatal shelf fusion were also
affected but in fewer cases. Human and animal studies indicate that cleft lips of multifactorial etiology may be generically susceptible because of small medial nasal prominences or other developmental alterations in medial nasal prominences, such as those found in A/J mice that make prominence contact more difficult. Another research area of immediate interest relates to cigarette smoking and developmental defects. Experimental maternal hypoxia in mice indicates that cigarette smoking may increase the incidence of cleft lip by interfering with morphogenetic movements. 8

ORTHODONTIC TOOTH MOVEMENT

Teeth are often moved for either or both functional or aesthetic reasons. Several animal models are used to explore this research area. The dog (Beagle dog) has been suggested as a suitable experimental animal when the model should mimic tooth movement across the midpalatal suture. The dog has a straight midpalatal suture with similar appearance to that in humans.

Rodents are not suitable for studies involving anterior teeth because of their continuously erupting incisors. Cats have very small incisor teeth, making it complicated to attach the orthodontic appliance. Monkeys have an extremely winding midpalatal suture. It is noteworthy that in young dogs with open suture, the suture becomes dislocated in front of the tooth moved. This is in contrast to the case of the old dog with a closed suture, in which orthodontic tooth movement was reported to be more easily performed. However, root resorption of the teeth occurred to a greater degree in the old dog with the closed suture than in the young dog with open suture. 9

The rabbit has been used as an experimental animal in investigating the transversal development of the dental arch and osseous remodeling at the lateral surfaces of the maxillary alveolar process and in the midpalatal suture after stretching the bucca (cheek) by use of buccal shields in the vestibulum. 10 In designing experiments involving affection of growth areas, like the sutures, it is important to be aware of the normal growth parameters. The midpalatal suture has been reported to be closed in 3-month-old rabbits. The skeletal growth in male rabbits has been reported to end at the age of 7.5 months; the variation for different strains may need validation when this parameter is of critical importance.

Tetracycline hydrochloride and Alizarine complexone, both at a dosage of 30 mg per kilogram body weight, can be used to label the mineralizing tissues. In our experience, the Alizarine seems to be quite irritating when injected i.v. in the ear veins of rabbits. It is therefore suggested that the animals are anesthetized before injection. 10 In young animals, the bone-metabolic rate may be too high for extended (over weeks) labeling intervals.

Rats and monkeys are also used for orthodontic experiments. When using rats, it should be remembered that the incisors are continuously erupting, as contrasted to the case of the molar teeth.

In monkeys, the dental anatomy, as well as chewing behavior, has been referred to as more human-like than that of other models. The relevance of these factors, all other dissimilarities unaccounted for, is open for questions.

BONE HEALING

Heat-Induced Bone Injury

Bone is a highly differentiated tissue. After injury, there is a possibility that the bone tissue will not heal as bone but as fibrous connective tissue. Undue heat injury will increase this risk for disturbed bone healing. At surgical intervention of bone, frictional energy will generate heat and thus increase the risk for fibrous bone healing. This basic knowledge is of utmost significance for all animal experiments involving bone cutting or drilling procedures.
Figure 12.3  Fluorescent labeling of rabbit skull bone. The bone growth to the left appears more prominent than that to the right.

Figure 12.4  Titanium implant placed in dog jaw bone; notice cooling of the implant with profuse irrigation.

Figure 12.5  Twist drill preparation in mandibular bone for implant site.
By overheating the bone tissue, even at modest temperatures, healing may be drastically affected. This should also be taken into account when performing implant procedures. The heat sensitivity of mature bone tissue, the critical temperature for impaired bone regeneration, and temperature rise when drilling bone have all been reported.\textsuperscript{11}

In these experiments, adult Belgian hares and New Zealand white rabbits were used. The experimental model includes the use of a bone chamber for microscopic investigation of heat-injured bone. The chamber consists of an externally threaded, hollow titanium cylinder into which two glass rods are placed and separated by a 100-µm-wide space. This space is located at the same level as a transverse canal that penetrates the chamber. This narrow passage will become invaded by bone and blood vessels after insertion of the chamber into the rabbit tibia. After incorporation in the rabbit tibia for 8 to 10 weeks, the bone, which has grown through the chamber, is subjected to thermal injury. The progression of the heat injury is observed and registered at repeated observations, from hours to several weeks, after the heat injury. This model for vital microscopic registrations may of course also be used for several other applications.

After these thorough experiments and subsequent analysis of the data, the authors\textsuperscript{11} concluded that the blood vessels were irreversibly injured after heating to 53°C for 1 min. The morphological pattern of the vessels remained unchanged after heating to 47°C for 1 min. Bone regeneration was severely impaired after heating to 47°C, whereas a temperature of 44°C did not cause any significant adverse effect. It should thus be stressed that these findings indicate that relatively low temperatures are enough to impair bone regeneration.

Factors affecting the temperature rise in bone cutting included drill speed, drill diameter, drill geometry, drill wear, predrilling, pressure, cooling, penetration depth, blood flow, and type of bone. Drill speeds in the range of 1000 to 2000 rpm are recommended, provided that specific precautions for cooling are undertaken. Small drills give rise to lower temperatures than large drills. Twist drills are more suitable for drilling in bone than fissure burs. New or sharp drills should be used. Predrilling is an effective method for minimizing temperature fluctuation. Low pressure is recommended when drilling in vital bone. Cooling the drill is important; a cooling agent (sterile saline) should be used in combination with profuse irrigation. With increased penetration depth, the effect of the cooling agent decreases, and thus more heat is generated. The blood flow will likely affect the temperature rise when drilling in living bone tissue. Cortical bone is more likely to be injured by frictional heat than cancellous bone.

**Jawbone Healing in Rabbits**

An experimental rabbit model for jawbone healing was developed by Lundgren.\textsuperscript{12} Surgical defects were made in the maxillary edentulous area between the incisors and molars using 4-mm round bur under generous irrigation with saline. The defect was approximately 11 × 5 mm wide.
and 3 mm deep. No signs of oral infection were found for the healing period of 4 weeks. The contralateral side served as control. Radiographs and histological sections were obtained for analysis. An average loss of 17% of the total bone volume as compared to the case of the untreated control side was reported. This means that the rabbit jawbone has a considerable capacity for spontaneous healing. However, it was concluded that the surgically created defects do not show complete spontaneous healing. It was furthermore suggested that the test side could also serve as its own control because it was possible to redraw the original bone contour by interpolation between unaffected areas of bone, coronal and apical to the defect. The right and left sides of the maxilla were considered to be equivalent. This model can be used when testing different barrier materials and bone grafts and other bone substitutes.

**Management of Craniotomy in Young Rabbits**

In studies of cranial growth aberrations, intramembraneous bone regeneration, and bone-healing capacity, young rabbits have often been used. Young animals have an intensive craniofacial growth period. Experimental procedures, which include craniotomy, are often reported to be associated with complications. Local infections and hemorrhages after injury to the sinus system are the most often noted complications. A simple and safe procedure for craniotomy in young rabbits was reported by Alberius et al.\textsuperscript{13}

Each mother with offspring was housed in a large plastic cage sized $1.05 \times 0.55 \times 0.45$ m (Scanbur ApS, Denmark). Mothers with six or fewer offspring were selected. The perforated cage floor was covered with autoclaved hay bedding. The cages were thoroughly cleaned on a daily basis. Standard pelleted diet with no antibiotics added and tap water were provided *ad libitum.*

**Figure 12.7** A circular drill is used to create a standardized skull bone defect.

**Figure 12.8** Circular skull bone defect; note vessels under the dura.
At age 7 to 8 weeks, the young rabbits were separated from their mother and placed in cages half the size of those above. One or two rabbits were housed together. The rabbits were anesthetized by i.m. neuroleptanalgesia (fluanisone, 10 mg/ml, and fentanyl, 0.2 mg/ml; 0.6 ml per kilogram body weight). No premedication was administered. After the onset of analgesia, that is, after about 10 min, the head was shaved with a high-quality electric shaver, and the surgical field was carefully cleaned with an antiseptic solution (alcoholic chlorhexidine, 5mg/ml). The animal was placed prone on a thermal blanket on the operating table. The body caudal to the occipital region was draped, allowing exposure of the craniofacial region.

Bone defects were created both in the calvarial bone plate and in the sutural areas using a diamond wheel (to produce $4 \times 6$-mm defects) or a trephine (6-mm diameter) mounted on a low-speed dental drill. To reduce thermal damage during the drilling procedure, the surgical field was continuously irrigated with cooled sterile saline. Hemostasis was secured by sterile bone wax. After suturing, the wound was finally covered with plastic spray (Nobecutan spray, Astra Meditec, Sweden). This latter procedure is essential to avoid having the mothers (or siblings) lick the wound, which is otherwise a natural behavior supposed to promote wound healing.

To compensate for dehydration, immediately after surgery, 10 ml saline was injected dorsally s.c. Antibiotic (Streptocillin vet., Novo Industry A/S, Denmark) was given i.m. in a 0.1-ml dose. The antibiotic administration was continued once daily for 1 week. The animals were left to recover on a thermostatically controlled electric blanket, and a towel covered them to maintain normal body temperature.

With this procedure used for craniotomy operations on 90 young rabbits, one animal died perioperatively from hemorrhage caused by a sagittal sinus rift. The mortality and morbidity is thus extremely low.

**Skull Bone Defects in Rats and Rabbits**

A calvarial wound model bears many similarities to the maxillofacial region. Both calvarial and midfacial bones develop from a membrane precursor, and the calvaria and the mandible consist of two cortical tables with regions of intervening cancellous bone. It contains only modest amounts of bone marrow, which generally facilitates bone formation, although the marrow is not necessary for bone formation to occur. When the aim is to investigate the pattern of bone regeneration in growth areas, like the sutural region and the calvarial bone plate proper, young animals having an intense craniofacial growth period are preferably used.

In adult animals, the regenerative capacity of the calvarium is reduced, and therefore it constitutes a suitable site for research work on agents for enhancement of bone repair.\textsuperscript{14}

Small defects (5-mm diameter) that would correspond to a typical operative defect between bony segments in clinical maxillofacial surgery have been produced and used in rats and rabbits.
That defect size makes spontaneous bone regeneration possible, allows evaluation of the regenerative influence stemming from the implant material and of the maturation of the newly formed bone tissue, and enables experimental testing of several implant materials in each animal.\textsuperscript{14,15} A critical defect size is a defect that will not heal during the lifetime of the animal.

When using a defect large enough to preclude spontaneous healing, the osteogenic potential of an implant or graft may be considered unambiguous. The critical-size model allows assessment of whether enhancement of bony regeneration occurs.\textsuperscript{16}

**Bone Growth Chamber**

At the laboratories of Experimental Biology, Department of Anatomy, University of Gothenburg, and the Institute for Applied Biotechnology, Gothenburg, several methods to study living bone tissue have been developed and evaluated. These methods can be adapted to various experiments and to different animals. The bone growth chamber (BGC) is a dividable titanium implant that is inserted in the proximal tibial metaphysis of the rabbit using a very gentle surgical technique.\textsuperscript{17} Blood vessels and bone tissue will grow through two implant pores. After various healing periods, the implant is removed and taken apart. The tissue that has invaded the pores can be collected and analyzed.

**Bone Harvest Chamber**

The bone harvest chamber (BHC) builds on principles similar to the BGC. The important difference is that the animals need not be killed for the collection of the bone samples. This allows for repeated tissue harvests from the same animal at different time intervals.\textsuperscript{18} The Vital Microscopic Chamber, BGC, and BHC were used to study bone behavior after irradiation using rabbits as experimental animals.\textsuperscript{17} It was concluded that mature bone and vessels are relatively resistant to irradiation trauma up to 40 Gy, whereas the bone-healing response is severely disturbed after similar doses. Irradiation of 15 Gy caused a significant early depression of the osteogenesis with a clear tendency to recovery after 1 year. The minimal irradiation dose that caused a temporary depression in bone healing was 5 Gy.

**GINGIVITIS AND PERIODONTITIS**

Gingivitis (gingival inflammation) and periodontitis (destructive inflammation of the supporting tissues of the teeth) are diseases initiated by bacterial infection. The mouth provides an optimal environment for bacterial growth, which is why bacteria are seen in great numbers in the saliva, mucosa, and tooth surfaces. When bacteria along the tooth surfaces grow to large numbers, they form an adhesive plaque around the edge of the gingival (the gingival margin). These bacteria release toxins that irritate and injure the gingiva and result in inflammation of the gingival tissues (gingivitis). If this bacterial plaque is left undisturbed, it can spread down into and infect the gingival pocket. The host responds with an inflammatory reaction to the infectious challenge. The tooth-supporting tissues, gingival connective tissue, and bone are destroyed as a result of the inflammatory process, and the tooth will eventually become loose and may be lost. Periodontal diseases, including gingivitis and periodontitis, are naturally of frequent occurrence in humans and animal species.\textsuperscript{19} Unlike many other diseases with infectious background, periodontitis is widespread both in humans and in the animal kingdom. To study the etiopathology of periodontal diseases and to assess various treatment modalities, a multitude of animal models have been developed, including mouse, rat, hamster, ferret, cat, dog, and various non-human primates, among others.
Figure 12.10  Histological section (undecalcified ground section) of gingiva with dental plaque and calculus in gingival pocket next to enamel; dentin appears darker.

Figure 12.11  Gingiva perfused with ink after induction of gingival inflammation.

Figure 12.12  Corresponding healthy gingiva; notice difference in presence of blood vessels.
Periodontal Disease in Rats

The rat bears much resemblance to the human with respect to periodontal anatomy, development and composition of dental plaque, histopathology of periodontal lesions, and basic immunology. Experimental studies in germ-free rats have confirmed the pathogenicity of several suspected periodontal pathogens (Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans, Porphyromonas gingivalis, Capnocytophaga sputigena, Eikenella corrodens, and Fusobacterium nucleatum).

The incisors of rats are rootless and continuously growing teeth; therefore, they are unsuitable as model organs for human periodontal disease. The molar teeth are similar in humans and rats in relation to the structure and organization of the periodontal tissues (i.e., oral sulcular epithelium, junctional epithelium, periodontal collagen fibers, cementum, and alveolar bone). One major difference is that the gingival sulcular epithelium of the rat is keratinized, in contrast to the corresponding human structure. The clinical and histological findings in experimental periodontal disease in rats are similar to findings in humans. Clinically, gingival bleeding on gentle probing can be observed in rats a few days after the introduction of periodontal microbial pathogens. Histologically, the junctional epithelium gradually undergoes pathologic changes, including rete peg formation, ulceration, and apical migration of epithelium.

Periodontal Disease in the House Musk Shrew

Rodents such as mice, rats, and hamsters have been widely used for periodontal research. However, the differences in anatomical structures (keratinized oral sulcular epithelium in rodents) and some histopathological features of periodontal disease in rodents are different from those of humans. Neutrophils appear to be the only infiltrating cells in periodontal lesions of rodents. This is in contrast to periodontally involved human tissues showing a more complex infiltrate of inflammatory cells like lymphocytes, plasma cells, macrophages, and neutrophils.

In the house musk shrew (Suncus murinus), a large number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes have been observed in areas in which bacterial plaque have accumulated. Neutrophils have been observed in the pocket epithelium and in the connective tissue. Dense infiltration of plasma cells and lymphocytes are contained in deeper connective tissue layers. Chronic periodontal lesions, similar to those in humans, have thus been demonstrated, suggesting the utility of Suncus murinus as a novel, interesting model for human periodontal diseases.

Gingivitis and Periodontitis in the Dog

The anatomy of the free-gingival and the supracrestal portion of the periodontium of the permanent dentition in the human and the mandibular premolar region of the dog have many features in common. In both species, dental plaque accumulation results in inflammatory reactions that are

Figure 12.13  Right mandibular premolar area of a beagle dog.
initially confined to the gingiva but subsequently may develop to include all components of the periodontium proper. The location and composition of the subgingival plaque and the associated inflammatory lesions differ in some aspects between the human and the dog; but despite this, the dog (especially the Beagle) has been frequently used as a model in the study of fundamental aspects of the development, treatment and prevention of periodontal disease.22–29 One reason for selecting larger animals like the dog is the physical dimensions of the tissues, which resemble those of human tissues, and the possibility of using all the special dental instruments that have been developed for use in humans.

Figure 12.14  A full-thickness flap has been lifted.

Figure 12.15  Alveolar bone has been surgically removed.

Figure 12.16  The bacterial plaque is visualized using disclosing solution.
The most commonly used method for studying gingival tissue reaction to dental plaque formation is the model originally described by Löe et al.\(^30\) In those investigators' experiment, it was demonstrated that undisturbed plaque formation resulted in clinically detectable gingivitis within a period of 3 weeks. Gingivitis was established sooner in some individuals than in others. The onset of the gingival inflammation was related to the rate of plaque formation and to the establishment of a complex microbiota. The human model has thus been transferred to experimental animal studies. The local effect of the diet on plaque formation and development of gingivitis has been

![Figure 12.17](image1.png) **Figure 12.17** Right mandible first molar and fourth premolar; plaque accumulation after 4 weeks of soft diet without tooth cleaning.

![Figure 12.18](image2.png) **Figure 12.18** The bacterial plaque is visualized using disclosing solution.

![Figure 12.19](image3.png) **Figure 12.19** Left mandible first molar and fourth premolar; plaque accumulation after 4 weeks of hard diet without tooth cleaning.
found to be of great significance in experimental studies. A soft diet is more consistent with plaque accumulation and subsequent inflammatory reaction, as contrasted to the more healthy gingival conditions resulting from the use of a hard diet.\textsuperscript{31} To establish more pronounced periodontal tissue destruction, a ligature of silk or cotton can be attached around the neck of the experimental tooth.\textsuperscript{32} In studies designed to evaluate periodontal tissue regeneration, the experimental model includes surgically removing the tooth-supporting structures, including the periodontal ligament and the alveolar bone.\textsuperscript{33} The chronic background to the destructive periodontal disease is of course lost in these more acute models. However, with the apparent variation in the defect baseline of naturally occurring periodontal disease, it is suggested that natural disease defects have limited potential in discerning treatment effects after periodontal reconstructive therapy.\textsuperscript{34}

**Periodontal Research in the Ferret**

The first reports of the use of the ferret as an experimental animal in periodontal research were those made by King.\textsuperscript{35} More recently, gingival hyperplasia has also been studied in ferrets. Periodontal disease in ferrets was found to be similar to that in humans. The lesions appear first around the carnassial teeth, normally related to the presence of calculus deposits. It may be of significance that the salivary glands of the ferret, as in the dog and cat, open into the carnassial regions of the upper jaw. Clinically, the first sign of periodontal disease is redness of the gum margin. Hyperemia, hemorrhage, hypertrophy, ulceration, involvement of the alveolar bone, and loosening of the teeth may follow. Silk ligatures have been used to promote tissue destruction. The ligature-induced periodontal breakdown has been shown to be similar in ferrets and dogs. In studying the role of pharmaceuticals on the development of periodontal lesions, the ferret may be used, being a smaller animal that requires more limited doses of the drugs than does the dog.\textsuperscript{36}

![Figure 12.20 Upper left maxillary quadrant of the ferret.](image)

**GUIDED TISSUE REGENERATION**

The histological healing outcome after periodontal surgery has been suggested to depend on the kinds of cells that repopulate the detached root surface during healing.

The tissues that repopulate the instrumented root surface may be epithelium, gingival connective tissue, bone, and periodontal ligament cells. It was suggested that the result of healing would predictably be new periodontal ligament attachment to the root surface, provided that the cells derived from the periodontal ligament were allowed to repopulate the root surface in an undisturbed fashion. The ingrowth of epithelium and gingival connective tissue onto the root surface was precluded during healing by means of a cell-occlusive membrane acting as a mechanical barrier.
This surgical technique is termed *guided tissue regeneration* (GTR).\(^{37}\) Models to study the effect of GTR have been developed in dogs, monkeys, rats, and rabbits.

*Guided bone regeneration* (GBR) is a refinement of the originally developed GTR technique in situations in which, selectively, only bone healing should be promoted.\(^{38}\)

**The Capsule Model**

The capsule model is based on the principles of GTR and allows for the evaluation of various grafting materials on bone formation. A rigid hemispherical capsule made of polytetrafluoroethylene is placed on the lateral surface of the mandibular ramus in rats. The open part of the capsule is facing the bone surface. A peripheral collar allows for a close adaptation of the device onto the bone surface. By this procedure, a secluded space is created adjacent to an essentially uninjured bone surface. At the same time, the surrounding soft connective tissue and muscles are excluded from participating in the healing process.

The capsule may be grafted (filled) with various graft materials or bioactive substances. Subsequently, the amount of bone formation is compared with that in empty control capsules placed on the contralateral side of the jaw in the same animal. It has been shown that such empty capsules will eventually be filled with newly formed bone after a period of 6 to 12 months. When choosing a shorter observation period, the bioactivity of a material regarding the formation of bone tissue can be readily discriminated. The amount of bone formed in the empty capsules during a given observation period reflects the intrinsic bone-forming potential of the model for this specific time period and may in this way serve as comparison for the evaluation of the results. Capsules with material that favors bone regeneration become filled earlier or present larger amounts of newly formed bone tissue at a given time point than do the originally empty control capsules. Conversely, capsules filled with material that inhibits bone formation become filled later or with less newly formed bone, as compared with the empty control capsules.\(^{39,40}\)

Other investigators who have studied the formation of intramembraneous skull bone have used a titanium dome. Experimental studies using rats and rabbits have shown the augmentation of intramembraneous bone beyond the skeletal envelope using an occlusive titanium barrier.\(^{12}\)

Wound stability seems to be critical to all tissue regeneration procedures.\(^{41,42}\) When using various flap procedures, membranes, capsules, or domes, the stability of the device will most likely determine the outcome of the healing process. Micromovements of the devices have been suggested to jeopardize the regenerative event. Thus, control of the factors possibly affecting the movement of the devices is critical and will involve the creative imagination of all parties involved in these experiments, not the least of which are the animal technicians. Just lifting the animal in an inappropriate way may create unintentional movement of the tissues and related devices. As always, it is important to inform and involve all engaged staff. Do not forget to inform stand-ins or substitute staff.

**Dental Implants**

On the basis of animal research, dental implants for human clinical use have been developed. This is a significant contribution to restoring the human body and improving health and the quality of life. The original contributions by the Swedish scientist Brånemark are of unparalleled importance in this context.

During the 1950s, Brånemark was engaged in searching for ways to better carry out his own studies on blood microcirculation in rabbit bone and marrow. This work involved vital microscopy. Brånemark\(^{43}\) developed and refined techniques of looking into living bone tissue and of studying the mechanisms by which bone repairs after damage. Chambers carrying optical equipment were inserted into the tibia of rabbits. Because of difficulties in obtaining tantalum, which was the original material for tissue chambers, an alternative design was made of titanium.\(^{43,44}\) The chambers
eventually became so strongly rooted in living bone that the bone would break before the titanium device could be removed.

New sets of experiments were then carried out to study the hypothesis that titanium could be successfully used over a long period of time in living bone, something that had never before been achieved. Work on inserting titanium components in living bone and other tissues has revolutionized the treatment of a wide range of dental and other medical problems, ranging from replacing lost teeth to providing high-quality facial prostheses for cancer patients, improved replacement joints for arthritis patients, and a totally new approach to attaching artificial limbs and hearing aids.

**Vital Microscopy and Microcirculation**

The initial concept of osseo-integration stemmed from vital microscopic studies of the bone marrow of rabbit fibula. The bone marrow and the microcirculation were uncovered for visual inspection by carefully grinding down the covering bone to a thickness of only 10 to 20 µm. Using direct microscopy of the illuminated tissue with the aid of a intravital microscope, the marrow and microcirculation could thus be studied *in vivo*. Brånemark found that the blood circulation was maintained in this thin layer of bone. Very few signs of microvascular damage were recorded after the surgical procedures; such damage is an early and sensitive indication of tissue injury. This atraumatic technique of dealing with bone, marrow, and circulating blood has since proven to be critical for the achievement of osseo-integration.

**Tissue Integration**

The vital microscopy technique was further improved when a titanium chamber of screw-shaped design was used. Long-term *in vivo* microscopic studies of bone and marrow were performed. Brånemark discovered that the optical titanium chambers could not be removed from the adjacent bone once they had healed in. It was found that the titanium chambers were inseparably incorporated within the bone tissue. The appliances were inserted by specially devised microsurgical methods involving a minimum of trauma to the tissues. The findings were considered to justify experimental
investigation of the possibility of using titanium appliances for bridging experimental long-bone defects and to stabilize defective jawbones in dogs. A series of experiments were carried out with resection of mandible and tibia of the dog, followed by reconstruction with transplants of trabecular bone and marrow reinforced with titanium framework. The results showed new formation of bone without any demonstrable undesired tissue reaction to the implanted titanium metal.

**Intra-osseous Anchorage of Dental Prostheses**

There have been several attempts to devise a method for permanently anchoring artificial teeth. A number of models and methods have been tried without achieving permanent retention of the attached dental appliances. Two main groups of implants have been tried: subperiostal and intra-osseous. The subperiostal type is made of a meshed framework. The implant is inserted between the jawbone and the periosteum. From this framework, abutments project into the oral cavity, where they serve as anchors for the artificial appliance.

In the intra-osseous group, various types of screws, posts, or pins are anchored in the bone and project through the mucoperiosteum to the appliance. Implants used until 1969 consisted mainly of stainless steel, chromium-cobalt-molybdenum alloys, tantalum, or titanium.

Objections were raised against the investigations performed until that time. Many scientists criticized the use of animal models. The major critique was related to the fact that basically all implants had been unloaded and that the observation period was too short. Most methods used in evaluation of the results of experimental investigations were the same as those used in clinical studies, such as radiography, examination of gingival conditions, mobility testing, and histology. At the time, most studies showed that the tissues in contact with the metal implant showed histologic changes resembling those seen in common chronic unspecific inflammation, including gingivitis and chronic osteitis. The metal was rarely seen in direct contact with the bone but was separated from the bone by a connective tissue capsule. Mack interpreted the tissue phenomenon after insertion of implants as indicating a moderate inflammatory reaction of the tissues when the implants are inserted. This is followed by the formation of fibrous tissue around the metal framework and by epithelial downgrowth that at the time was considered part of the healing process. The epithelial reaction will eventually enclose the entire framework in a bed of epithelium surrounded by fibrous tissue, so that the metal, in effect, is external to the body. Cherchève claimed that every break of the continuity of the epithelium is against nature's law. Consequently, there would be no success in trying to achieve implants that penetrate skin or mucosa.

It is in this context that the discovery of osseo-integration and subsequent critical research by Brånemark and co-workers should be interpreted. The older implant technologies often left a person with worse dental problems than before. It was this serious shortcoming of existing implant technologies that led to the majority of the dental profession regarding all implant techniques with scorn and that explains why any new technology relating to implants was treated with similar contempt and disbelief. Until the studies by Brånemark et al. in 1969, no objective experimental analysis had been made on the biological prerequisites for permanent anchorage of a dental prosthesis in the jawbone. Brånemark stated that “if implantation is to be applied clinically, the method should first be studied experimentally on animals and not, as now appears to be the rule, by trial and error in homo.”

In their remarkable study, the purpose of the experimental investigation was to find the factors liable to influence the stability of anchorage of an implant. Thereby, the possibility of successful clinical use of a prostheses anchored in skeletal tissue could be determined. The investigation was designed to evaluate early and late reactions to the surgical insertion of an appliance, the tissue reaction to the implant, the effect of loading, and oral hygiene measurements.

Special implants of titanium were designed; these types of implants were, at the time, called fixtures. This nomenclature has since been used in the context of Brånemark-designed screw-shaped implants. The results from this study for the first time showed excellent stability of the anchorage
of implants. It was concluded that atraumatic preparation of the bed for the implant was critical, as were inert, mechanically, and chemically clean titanium implants. Primary closure of the implant site from the oral cavity until the barrier functions of the tissue had recovered after the operation also seems critical, and loading of the implant by prostheses results in the remodeling of the jawbone.

On the basis of these findings, a series of clinical investigations was performed by Brånemark et al.\textsuperscript{51} and other international research teams,\textsuperscript{52,53} and the successful data from animal experiments were confirmed.
Treatment with tissue-integrated implants is now a routine clinical procedure used globally. In current research on dental implants, the following animal models are most frequently used: rat tibiae, rabbit tibiae, and dog mandibular jaw. Rat and rabbit models are used to study tissue reactions to specially designed miniature implants, whereas the dog mandible can be used for the evaluation of standard-size clinical implants. Animal models are, however, less than ideal for measurements of clinical function and for evaluating the effects of various forces on tissue reactions to the loaded implant.

**BIOSCOMPATIBILITY TESTING OF DENTAL MATERIALS**

Biocompatibility bears reference to the capacity of a material to respond in a biologically appropriate way in a specific application. It is clear that many materials react differently in different test sites in the body. Dental restoration materials provide a good example of this site specificity. Zinc oxide eugenol-based cements are well tolerated when placed in intracoronal cavities but are irritants if implanted directly into connective tissue. It is therefore important that any test designed to assess the biocompatibility of a dental material must reproduce as closely as possible the conditions of its planned clinical use.

The tests for the biocompatibility of dental materials are often referred to as usage tests, dependent on the similarity to routine clinical procedures. In the international standard (ISO DIS 7405, “Preclinical Evaluation of Biocompatibility Medical Devices Used in Dentistry,” 1994), three usage tests are recommended: the pulp and dentine usage test, the pulpotomy test, and the endodontic usage test. These tests are designed to mimic the clinical usage of current materials as liners and fillers, pulp capping, and root canal filling materials.

Often, the teeth of ferrets, dogs, or monkeys are used for these studies to allow for the physical dimension of cavities resembling human defects. A cavity is prepared in the crown of the tooth using traditional cavity preparation techniques. The test material is inserted into the experimental sites and left for intervals of time, often 3 to 6 months. Thereafter, the tooth is removed and the specimens are examined histologically. The occurrence of reactions in the pulpodentinal tissues is evaluated. A great deal of attention has been paid to the limitations to this testing method. In preparing the cavity, a so-called smear layer is formed. This layer consists of hard and soft tissue remnants and proteins and is often contaminated by saliva. The outcome of the test may vary significantly, depending on whether this smear layer is present, or partly or fully removed. There is no clinical method to detect the presence or absence of this layer. Furthermore, the pulpal reaction may be evoked by overheating the dental hard tissues in the drilling procedure. Microleakage of microbiota at the material–cavity interface is another concern. The details of the test methodologies
are not always standardized between different testing centers; thus, it is difficult to compare the outcome of tests between different laboratories.

Despite the controversies in the design and interpretation of the biocompatibility testing of dental materials, animal usage tests remain the only generally recommended way of testing. In addition, human adverse reactions to dental materials are a matter of increasing concern. It is therefore essential that independent laboratories are encouraged and supported to further develop and refine adequate animal models.

DENTAL CARIES ANIMAL MODELS

Dental caries remain a major global public health problem. Despite the decline in the prevalence of coronal caries in certain age groups in most Western countries, the risk of developing caries is greatly enhanced because life expectancy is increasing and teeth are being retained longer.

In a classical study, Keyes\textsuperscript{55} reported on the distribution of carious lesions in the molar teeth of several hundred rats maintained on various high-carbohydrate, low-fat diets. Keyes found that almost all strains of rats develop active caries on occlusal and circumferential surfaces of the molar teeth when fed the special diet. The incidence of caries lesions and the pattern of the lesions varied for each type of rat and diet used. An accurate appraisal of the caries pattern required grinding or sectioning of the teeth so that sulcal and proximal caries lesions could be diagnosed, as well as lesions on the buccal and lingual surfaces.\textsuperscript{55}

Caries development in rats of different ages was studied.\textsuperscript{56} The molar dentition of the rats was shown to become less susceptible to the carious process with increasing age.

A test of an animal caries model in the hands of different investigators was performed, and the results were compared. Several factors that contributed to the similarity of the results were reported. These factors included the same source of animals, same diet and drinking water, as well as the same procedures for feeding, watering, and infecting the animals. Only one investigator performed scoring of the carious lesions. This was reported to be critical in that the application of scoring criteria may vary widely among investigators. The highest number of carious lesions was always found in the sulci, and the lowest on the buccal–lingual surfaces. The animals infected with \textit{Streptococcus mutans} showed increased lesions, largely on the proximal surfaces. Caries levels in rats seem to be influenced more by differences in bacterial challenge than by genetic differences.

Results from several studies using various rat strains as the experimental model have shown that removal of salivary glands results in more enhanced susceptibility to coronal dental caries.\textsuperscript{57}

The influence of removal of salivary glands on coronal caries and root surface caries in rats was determined.\textsuperscript{58} Susceptibility to coronal caries has been shown to decrease in older animals; therefore, rats aged 36 d at the start of the experiment were used. The submandibular and sublingual salivary glands were removed. The animals were fed a diet including 28% sucrose and 28% glucose, and the drinking water was sweetened with 10% sucrose. The rats were infected on two successive days with a culture of \textit{Actinomyces viscosus} OMZ105E and \textit{Streptococcus mutans (sobrinus)} 6715-17 (Bratthall serotype \textit{d/g}). In addition, 0.2 ml culture was added to the drinking water for 2 d. The experiment included observations at 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 weeks after exposure to the caries-promoting diet.

Smooth-surface caries developed rapidly; lesions were observed within days of the experiment. It was concluded that continuation of the investigation beyond 2 to 3 weeks in desalivated animals is undesirable because of excessive lesion development if the focus of interest is on smooth-surface caries only. Early root-surface caries lesions were also detected within days of commencing the experiment. It appears that sufficient root-surface caries lesions develop in 4 to 5 weeks. The results demonstrated the critical importance of saliva in maintaining the integrity of the oral cavity; susceptibility to caries was greatly enhanced after removal of salivary glands.
In vivo immunotherapy has recently been used as a new tool for the treatment of experimental caries in rats. Lactobacilli were used for delivery of vaccine components for active immunization in vivo. A marked reduction both in the number of S. mutans bacteria and caries scores was reported after administration of scFv-expressing bacteria.

SALIVARY GLANDS

The major salivary glands consist of the paired parotid, submandibular, and sublingual glands, which together produce 95% of all saliva. The parotid glands primarily contain serous cells, whereas the submandibular gland contains a mix of serous and mucinous cells and the sublingual gland is predominantly mucinous.

The fundamentals of salivary gland physiology are largely based on experiments in dogs and cats. Today, the rat is a common laboratory animal for studies on salivary glands.

The importance of nerves in the regulation of salivary secretion was first demonstrated by Ludwig in 1850. He stimulated the chordalingual nerve and found that it caused a copious flow of saliva from the submandibular gland of the dog. A few years later, in 1858, Bernard, using the same preparation, found the blood flow through the gland to increase markedly in response to stimulation of the nerve. In 1878, Heidenhain made the observation that the flow of saliva from the mandibular gland in the dog occurring on chorda stimulation was abolished by atropine, whereas the vascular response was not. The observation in dogs by Heidenhain was confirmed in cats by Langley in 1878 (for review, see Månsson).

A nonadrenergic, noncholinergic secretion of saliva in response to stimulation of the parasympathetic nerve was shown to occur in all three of the major salivary glands of the rat. The rat is not the only species showing a nonadrenergic, noncholinergic secretion of saliva in response to parasympathetic nerve stimulation. It has also been demonstrated in ferrets and sheep. The method for dissection and stimulation of autonomic parotid and submandibular gland nerves in ferrets, cats, dogs, and rats is described in detail.

Experimental Autoimmune Sialadenitis in the Mouse

Experimental autoimmune sialadenitis (EAS), an animal model for Sjögren’s syndrome (SS) in humans, develops spontaneously in certain mouse strains. A major feature of EAS and SS is infiltration of exocrine glands by mononuclear cells and functional impairment of predominantly salivary and lachrymal glands leading to mouth and eye dryness.

One of the several murine models available for the study of systemic autoimmune diseases is that of MRL/lpr mice (lpr = lymphoproliferation). These mice were the first example of a single gene-accelerating locus, converting the relatively mild SLE-like syndrome of the congenic partner MRL/+ mice to a rapid-onset autoimmune syndrome associated with lymphoid hyperplasia, high accumulation of double-negative T cells, and high titers of autoantibodies specific for a variety of nuclear and surface antigens. The lpr mutation results in an altered Fas protein and defective lymphocyte apoptosis, and appears to cause defective clonal deletion of autoreactive T cells after response to antigen. MRL/lpr mice spontaneously develop inflammatory lesions of salivary and lacrimal glands.

In situ hybridization with synthetic radiolabeled oligonucleotide probes was used to examine expression of mRNA encoding pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokines in submandibular glands of 2-, 3-, 4-, and 5-month-old MRL/lpr mice. A major role of the proinflammatory cytokines in initiation and perpetuation of autoimmune sialoadenitis in MRL/lpr was suggested.
Salivary Gland Transplantation in Rats

Radiation tends to result in rapid and permanent destruction of serous salivary cells more than of mucinous cells. The effects of xerostomia (dry mouth) are devastating. In addition to dry mouth, the patients experience severe difficulty with speech and swallowing and often report a burning sensation in the oral cavity. Animal models have been developed to assess the possibility of transplantation of the salivary glands.

A technique for microvascular transplantation of the rat mandibular gland has been reported. The microvascular techniques were shown to be applicable to the transplantation of submandibular gland salivary tissue.

Rat Model Gene Transfer to Salivary Glands

Transferring foreign genes to different tissues in vivo has met with evident progress; salivary gland gene transfer has been used for the repair of hypofunctional glands and for the production of secretory transgene products. In addition, it has been suggested that salivary glands could also secrete proteins in an endocrine manner into the bloodstream. An excellent review on, above all, the rat model gene transfer to salivary glands was recently published by the Gene Therapy and Therapeutics Branch, NIDCR of the U.S. National Institutes of Health. Access to the major salivary glands is relatively easy. The ductal orifices of the glands open into the mouth and can be cannulated. Intraductal retrograde infusion or direct intracapsular injection are methods used for the transfer of the vector-encoding transgene. The majority of studies reporting on transferring genes to salivary glands have used recombinant adenoviral vectors. Nonviral in vivo methods include cationic liposomes, plasmids, and molaromolecular conjugates. A problem related to the use of recombinant adenoviral vectors in vivo involves the induction of an inflammatory response. This inflammation, evoked by a potent immune response, seems to resolve after 1 week. The application of gene transfer technology to salivary glands seems to be valuable for clinical salivary gland disorders as well as for addressing fundamental issues of salivary gland biology.

REFERENCES


Index

A

Acoustic-startle response 116
Pre-pulse inhibition 117
Acute Toxic Class Method 23
Acute renal failure 63
Acute toxicity 17, 22
Acute tubular necrosis 63
Adjuvant-induced arthritis 205
Adjunct feeding 22
AIDS (Acquired Immuno Deficiency Syndrome) 3
(see also HIV-AIDS)
Alcoholic rats 62
Algoses 139
Alimentary antigens 57
Allergic contact dermatitis 25
Alzheimer’s disease 95, 100
Amnesia 101
Anacritic stress 114
Angiotensin 69
Anhedonia 113
Animal consciousness 111
Animal Model
Acute renal failure 63
Acute toxicity 17, 22
Adjuvant-induced arthritis 205
Algoses 139
Allergic contact dermatitis 25
Alzheimer’s disease 95, 100
Amnesia 101
Anacritic stress 114
Anhedonia 113
Antifungal drugs, evaluation of 144
Antipsychotic drug screening 14
Anxiety 115
Aspergillosis 132
Autoimmune sialadenitis 258
Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease
67–68
Berger’s disease 56
Blastomycosis 130
Body size 6
Bone healing 241
Bueller test 25
Candidosis 134
Carcinogenicity 27
Cartilage defects 210
Cartilage injury 203
Cerebral ischemia 15
Chemically induced tumor 65
Chromomycosis 128
Chronic mild stress 114
Chronic unpredictable stress 113
Coccidioidomycosis 130
Cognition 100
Colitis 118
Collagen-induced arthritis 205
Congenital anomalies 70
Congenital urinary tract obstruction 70
Construct validity 4, 102
Cryptococcosis 135
Definition 2, 55, 102, 112
Dental caries 257
Dental research 238
Depression 112
Dermatophytosis 126
Developmental 114
Developmental neurotoxicity 30, 32
Developmental toxicity 20, 33
Diabetes 15, 61, 154
Type 1, 155
Type 2, 167
Discriminative ability 3, 143
Draize test 24
Endocrine diseases 15
Evidential 112
Exercise 194–5
Experimental 3
Exploratory 2
Exploratory 2
Eye irritation 24
Fetal growth restriction 49
Fidelity 3
Focal ischemia 15
INDEX

Tubular carcinoma 65
Virally induced diabetes 164–6
Virally induced tumor 67
Wernicke–Korsakoff syndrome 99
Xenotransplantation 81
Zygomycosis 138
Animal well-being 4
Antifungal drugs, evaluation of 144
Anti-microbial screening model 142
Anti-oncogenes 228
Antipsychotic drug screening 14
Anxiety 115
Arthritis 203
Aspergillosis 132
atg mice 71
Audiogenic immobility reaction 115
Autoimmune disease 157
Autoimmune sialadenitis 258
Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease 67
Aversive stimulation 116
Avoidance behavior 100

B

Bauplan (brain) 96
BB rats 155
  Disease etiology 155
  Disease mechanisms 156
Genetics 155
B-cell modulation 229
Behavioural tests 99, 115
Beige mice 230
Berger’s disease 56
Biocompatibility testing 256
Blastomycosis 130
Blood volume 7
Body size 6
Body weight 19
Bone 184
Bone chamber 243
Bone growth chamber 246
Bone harvest chamber 246
Bone healing 241
B.10.D2/oSn mice
Buerel test 25
Burkitt’s lymphoma 227

C

Calvarial would model 245
Cancer 226
  Transgenic models 232
Candidosis 134
Capsule models 252
Carcinogenicity 27
Carcinoma 226
Cartilage defects 210
Cartilage injury 203
Carunclectomy 49
Castration 158, 159
Cerebral ischemia 15
C4D guinea pigs 141
CFW mice 68
Chemical carcinogenesis 226
Chemically induced tumor 65
Chromomycosis 128
Chromosomal aberration 35
Chronic mild stress 114
Chronic renal failure 56
Chronic unpredictable stress 113
Closed-fracture models
Coccidioidomycosis 130
Cognition 100
Coisogen strain 4
Cold ischemia-reflow model 63
Colitis 118
Collagen-induced arthritis 205
Collagen-sensitization model 205
Comparative neuroscience 97
Computerized tomography 198
Concordance (with human clinical data) 6
Conditioned avoidance response 14
Congenic strain 4
Congenital anomalies 70
Congenital urinary tract obstruction 70
Construct validity 4, 102
cph mice
cpk mutation 67
Craniofacial birth defects 239
Craniotomy 244
Cre recombinase 43, 191
Cross fostering 32
Cryptococcosis 135
Cytostatic treatment 228

D

DBA/ZN mice 141
Db/db mice 61
Defensive burying test 115
Dental caries 239, 257
Dental implants 252
Dental prostheses, anchorage 254
Dental research 238
Depression 112
Dermatophytosis 126
Developmental neurotoxicity 30, 32
Developmental toxicity 20, 33
Diabetes
  Type 1, 155
  Type 2, 167
Diabetic (db/db) mice 168–70
Diet
  Chow 21
  High-fat 174
  Restriction 22, 50, 174
  Semipurified 21
  Semisynthetic 21
  Synthetic 21
Dimethylnitrosamine (DMN) 65
Disease Model (See also Animal Model)
  Classification 3
  Experimental 3
  Genetic 3
  Induced 3,
  Negative 3
  Orphan 3
  Spontaneous 3, 4
  Transgenic 3, 4
Distraction osteogenesis models 198
DMBA (7,12-dimethylbenz(a)anthracene 227
Dose range finding 23
Draize test 24
Dystonia 14

E
ED sub 50 143
Elevated plus maze 115
EMC virus 164
Endocrine diseases 15
Endpoint (humane) 12
EPA (US Environmental Protection Agency)
  guidelines 29
Epidemiology 18
Epstein–Barr virus 227
Estrus (synchronization) 45
Ethics 19, 90, 96
Extrapolation 5, 18
Ex vivo model 87, 143
Eye irritation 24

F
Fecundity index 30
Feeding 22
Feline immunodeficiency virus 3
Female fertility index 29
Fertility assessment 31
Fetal growth restriction 49
Fixed-dose procedure 23
Focal ischemia
Food intake 7
Fracture healing 196
Freund’s adjuvant 16, 58
Gastric ulcer 118
Gene-manipulated organisms 18
Generation studies 29
Gene targeting 42
Genetic toxicology 34
Genome map 5
Genomics 5
Gingivitis 248
Glomerulonephritis 56
Glucocorticoids 50
Glucosuria 154
Goldblatt renal hypertensive model 70
Gonadectomy 189
Goto Kakizaki (GK) rats 61, 170–4
Graft versus host disease 60
Guided bone regeneration 252
Guided tissue regeneration 252
Guinea pig maximization test 25

H
Han:SPRD cy rats 67
Heart
  Frequency 7
  Stroke volume 7
  Transplantation 85
  Weights 7
Helicobacter pylori 118
Hemarthrosis 209
Hemifacial microsomia 240
Hemolytic anemia 59
Hemorrhagic arthritis 207
Heritable translocation test 35
Heterotransplantation (tumors) 228, 231
  Age dependence 232
  Growth 231, 232
  Metastases 231
  Techniques 231
  Tumorogenicity 232
Hfm transgenic mice 240
Histoplasmosis 131
HIV-AIDS 239
Homozygosity 21
Hormone induced tumor 66
Hot-plate test 16
Humane endpoint 23
Huntington’s disease 89, 100
Hypertension 69
Hypophysectomy 158
Hypoxia 51

I

IgA Nephropathy 56
Immunodeficiency 229
Immunomodulation 228
Inbred animals 20, 226
Infectious diseases 13
Inflammatory bowel disease 118
In vitro methods 141, 191, 227
In vitro tests 34
In vivo bone chamber model
In Vivo Teratology Screening Test 34
Irradiation (See X-ray)
Ischemia 63

J

Jackson Laboratory 233
Jawbone healing 243

K

KAT mice 68
KK mice 61, 68
Knock-out (conditional) 43

L

Laboratory Animal Medicine 1
Laboratory Animal Model (See Animal Model)
Laboratory Animal Science
  Basic 1
  Definition 1
LC_{50} 23
LD_{50} 22, 142
Learned helplessness 112
Limb immobilization 192
Live birth index 30
 Lobomycosis 129
Localized aspergillosis model 133
Local lymph node assay 25
LoxP site 43, 191
Lucke’s tumor 67

M

Male fertility index 30
MAM (methylazoxymethanol) model 99
Mating index 30
Maxillofacial research 238
Maximum tolerated dose 28
Melanoma 226
Mental disorders 13
Metabolic rate 7
Metabolism
  Inborn errors 4
  Microarray technology 45
  Microbiological status 21
  Mi/mi mice 187
  MKT-CD1 (Soloway’s) model 66
  Monocytic-lineage osteoclasts 185
  Monoparametric model 143
  Morris’ water maze 14 (See also water maze)
  Mouse ear swelling test 25
  Mouse Spot Test 35
  MRL/lpr mice 259
  MPTP model 101
  Mycetoma 129
  Mycodiagnostic tool 143
  Mycology 125
  Mycotic placentitis 134
  Mycotic vaginitis 134
  Mycotic mastitis 134

N

Nanotechnology 52
National Toxicology Program (US) 21
Nephroblastoma 65
Nephrological disorders 55, 173
Nephropathy 154, 173
Nephrosis 58
Nephrotoxicosis 63
Neurodegenerative diseases 15
Neurogenic inflammation 16
Neuropathy 173
Neurotoxicity 34
NIH 240
NOAEL (no observed adverse effect level) 19, 30, 35
NOD mice 159
  Disease etiology 159
  Disease mechanisms 160
  Genetics 160
  Histopathology 159
  Immunotherapy 161
Nude mice 134, 141, 226, 228, 230
Nude rats 226, 228, 230
NZB mice 141
NZO mice 170

Obese diabetic (ob/ob) mice 167–8
Obstructive hydronephrosis 71
oc/oc mice 187
OECD test guidelines 23–35
Oncogenes 227
Oophorectomy 159
Open field test 115
op/op mice 187
Oral cancer 239
Oral immunization 57, 62
Orchidectomy 189
Organ size 6
Orofacial clefting 240
Orthodontic tooth movement 241
os/os rabbits 187
Osteoarthritis 203
Osteoblasts 184
Osteochondrodysplasia 200
Osteogenesis imperfecta 191
Osteopenia 187
Osteopetrosis 185, 187–8
Osteoporosis 187, 189–90
Outbred animals 20
Ovariectomy 189

Paget’s disease 185, 187
Pain 16
Papilloma virus 227
Paracoccidioidomycosis 131
Parkinson’s disease 89, 100–1
Parturition incidence 30
Paw-pressure test 16
pcy mutation 68
Periodontal disease 248
Periodontitis 248
Peritoneal dialysis 64
Pharmacodynamics 13, 16
Placentitis 132
Pneumocystis 139
Polycystic kidney disease 67
Predictive value 2, 6, 20, 102
Prefrontal cortex 96
Prepulse acoustic startle paradigm 98
Proteinuria 58
Proteomics 5
Proto-oncogenes 227

Psychological disorders 111
Psychosomatic disorders 118
PTSD (post-traumatic stress disorder) 116
Pulmonary aspergilloma model 133
Puromycin aminonucleoside 58

Q fever 48

RAG model 66
Rat vertebral loading model 196
Reactive arthritis 205
Regulatory Toxicology 35
Renal artery occlusion 63
Renal cell carcinoma 64
Renal neoplasia 66
RENCA model 67
Renin–angiotensin system 70
Repeated-dose toxicity 25, 33
Reproductive toxicity test 28, 33
Respiration 7
Retinopathy 154
Rheumatoid arthritis 16, 205–7
Rhinosporidiosis 129
Rodent dominant lethal test 35

Safety pharmacology 17
Salivary glands
removal of 257
transplantation 259
SAMP6 mouse model
Sarcoma 226
Scaling (animal) 7
Scedosporiosis 138
Schistosomiasis 3
Schizophrenia 95, 98, 116
SCID mice 134, 141, 226, 228, 230
Sclerosteosis 185
Self-tolerance 157
Septic arthritis 207
Sighting study 23
Sjögren’s syndrome 258
Skeletal diseases 183
Skin corrosion test 25
Skin irritation 24
Skin sensitization 25
Skin xenograft model 86
Skull bone defects 245
SLE (Systemic Lupus Erythematosus) 59
Spontaneous adenocarcinoma 66
Spontaneous tumors 66, 227
Sporotrichosis 129
Streptozotocin 61, 65, 162–4
Subchronic toxicity 17
Subcutaneous mycoses 128
Survival index 30

T

Tail-flick test 16
Tail-pinch test 16
T-cell mediated arteriosclerosis 84
T-cell modulation 229
Test battery 32
Test guidelines 19
Tetracycline transcriptional activator 43
Three Rs 12, 20
Tissue integration 253
Tl/tl rats 187
Tooth development 239
Toxicokinetics 19
Transgene expression (conditional) 43
Transgenic animals 42, 68, 70, 184, 189, 200, 205, 211–12, 227, 232, 240
Transgenic pigs 83
Transplantation,(marrow) 187 (See also xenotransplantation and heterotransplantation)
Traumatic aphasias 96
Tubular adenoma 65
Tubular carcinoma 65
Tumor-suppressor genes 228

U

Ulnar axial-loading model
US FDA 188
Uterine Artery Ligation 51

V

Vagotomy 158
Ventral hippocampal lesion model 99
Viral carcinogens 227
Virally induced diabetes 164
Virally induced tumors 67
Vital microscopy 253

W

Water maze 14, 99–100
Wernicke–Korsakoff syndrome 99
White tumor model 66
Whole-body vibration model

X

Xenoreactive antibodies 82
Xenotransplantation
  Acute rejection 84
  Acute vascular rejection 86
  Cellular 89
  Chronic rejection 84, 87–88
  Hepatocytes 89
  Hyperacute rejection 85
  Neural tissue 89
  Organ rejection 82
  Pancreatic islet cells 89
  T-cell mediated rejection 84
  xid mice 230
  X-ray treatment 228, 246

Z

Zoonoses 48, 90